National Marine Fisheries Service

Northwest Fisheries Science Center

Nonfishing Impacts on Essential Fish Habitat

NOAA White Paper NMFS-NWFSC-WP-2022-01

December 2022

https://doi.org/10.25923/zxz1-m712

U.S. Department of Commerce | National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration | National Marine Fisheries Service

NOAA White Paper Series NMFS-NWFSC

Reference this document as follows:

Kiffney, P., J. Thompson, B. Blaud, and L. Hoberecht. 2022. Nonfishing Impacts on Essential Fish Habitat. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA White Paper NMFS-NWFSC-WP-2022-01.

https://doi.org/10.25923/zxz1-m712

Nonfishing Impacts on Essential Fish Habitat

Peter Kiffney,[1] Jamie Thompson,[2] Brianna Blaud,[3] and Laura Hoberecht[4]

https://doi.org/10.25923/zxz1-m712

December 2022

[1]Fish Ecology Division
Northwest Fisheries Science Center
2725 Montlake Boulevard East
Seattle, Washington 98112

[2]Seattle Public Utilities
Watershed Management Division
19901 Cedar Falls Road Southeast
North Bend, Washington 98045

[3]Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc.
2200 6th Avenue
Seattle, Washington 98121

[4]Operations, Management, and Information Division
Alaska Fisheries Science Center
7600 Sand Point Way Northeast
Seattle, Washington 98115

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
National Marine Fisheries Service
Northwest Fisheries Science Center

Contents

Plain Language Summary v
Abstract vi
Glossary vii
Acknowledgments viii
Introduction 1
  Background on Essential Fish Habitat 1
  Essential Fish Habitat Characterization 2
  Nonfishing Impacts 4
  Purpose of Document 4
  References 6
1. Climate Change 8
  Climate Change Impacts on EFH 8
  References 11
2. Upland and Urban Development 14
  Commercial and Domestic Water Use 14
  Floodplain Development 17
  Land Clearing and Impervious Surfaces 19
  Stormwater and Urban Runoff 23
  References 26
3. Road Construction and Operation 37
  Potential Adverse Impacts of Road Construction and Operation 37
  Potential Conservation Measures for Road Construction and Operation 40
  References 42
4. Stormwater and Urban Runoff 50
  Potential Adverse Impacts of Stormwater and Urban Runoff 50
  Potential Conservation Measures for Stormwater and Urban Runoff 52
  References 53
5. Silviculture 58
  Potential Adverse Impacts of Silviculture 58
  Potential Conservation Measures for Silviculture 61
  References 63

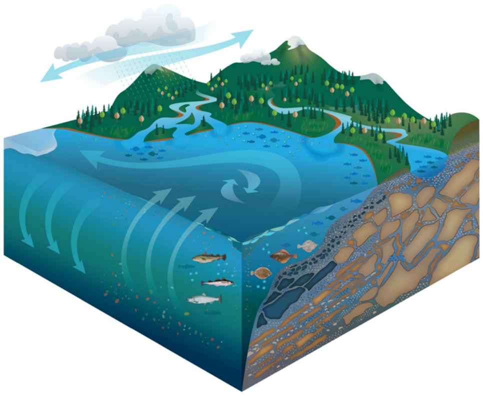
6. Dam Operations and Removal....70
Dam Operations....71
Dam Removal....74
References....76
7. Mineral Mining....85
Potential Adverse Impacts of Mineral Mining....85
Potential Conservation Measures for Mineral Mining....88
References....90
8. Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production....96
Potential Adverse Impacts of Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production....96
Potential Conservation Measures for Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production....98
References....99
9. Energy-Related Activities....104
Wave and Tidal Energy Facilities....104
Cables and Pipelines....109
Offshore Wind Facilities....114
Liquefied Natural Gas....117
References....123
10. Agriculture and Grazing....134
Potential Adverse Impacts of Agriculture and Grazing....134
Potential Conservation Measures for Agriculture and Grazing....136
References....139
11. Shoreline and Bank Stabilization....146
Potential Adverse Impacts of Shoreline and Bank Stabilization....146
Potential Conservation Measures for Shoreline and Bank Stabilization....148
References....149
12. Marine and Freshwater Transportation....153
Ports and Marinas....153
Vessel Operation and Maintenance....158
Navigational Dredging and Disposal....162
References....167

13. Coastal Development 179
Beach Nourishment 179
Shoreline and Bank Stabilization 182
Aquatic Fill 185
Marine Debris 187
References 189
14. Dredging 198
Potential Adverse Impacts of Dredging 198
Potential Conservation Measures for Dredging 200
References 202
15. Aquaculture 208
Potential Adverse Impacts of Aquaculture 208
Potential Conservation Measures for Aquaculture 211
References 213
16. Overwater Structures 218
Potential Adverse Impacts of Overwater Structures 218
Potential Conservation Measures for Overwater Structures 220
References 223
17. Water Intake and Discharge Facilities 229
Desalination Facilities 229
Cooling-Water Intake Facilities 232
Sewage Discharge Facilities 235
Combined Sewage Overflow 237
Industrial Discharge Facilities 238
References 239
18. Pile Driving and Removal 246
Potential Adverse Impacts of Pile Driving and Removal 246
Potential Conservation Measures for Pile Driving and Removal 249
References 250
19. Noise Pollution 253
Potential Adverse Impacts of Noise Pollution 253
Potential Conservation Measures for Noise Pollution 254
References 256

Figures

Figure 1. Conceptual model showing the hypothesized influence of landscape-level characteristics (regional climate and hydrology, riparian vegetation, lithology and geomorphology, and stream network structure) and disturbance regime on catchment-level processes 11

Plain Language Summary



In order to survive and thrive, fish and other marine species need access to clean, healthy habitats. From streams and tributaries to large rivers, lakes and reservoirs—from estuaries to the coast and the open ocean—marine fish, shellfish, mammals, and birds depend on these habitats for every stage of their life cycles. Essential fish habitat, or EFH, refers to the water and substrate that fish require in order to successfully spawn, breed, feed, and grow to maturity.

In the United States, the Magnuson–Stevens Act governs marine fishery management. In addition to establishing and defining EFH, the act requires federal agencies to consult with NOAA Fisheries on all actions or proposals that a) are permitted, funded, or undertaken by the agency, and b) may negatively impact EFH.

Whenever NOAA Fisheries learns of an action by a federal or state agency that may adversely affect EFH, it is required to provide conservation recommendations on how to avoid, minimize, or otherwise offset the effects of the action. State agencies are not required to respond to these recommendations, though federal agencies must do so within 30 days.

This document serves several purposes. Its main goal is to assist NOAA Fisheries biologists in providing appropriate EFH conservation recommendations. However, federal action agencies can also use it in preparing EFH assessments. We hope that this advice may help prevent habitat damage before it occurs, rather than having to restore it after the fact. Ideally, this will save American taxpayers millions of dollars in habitat restoration funds.

EFH can be harmed by a wide variety of human activities that are unrelated to fishing. This document examines 19 non-fishing impacts to EFH—from climate change and aquaculture to road construction, mining, dredging, noise pollution, and many more. For each activity, we describe the known and potential impacts to EFH, and provide proactive conservation measures designed to minimize or avoid them.

Links used in this section:

- Essential fish habitat: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/habitat-conservation/essential-fish-habitat
- Thumbnail image: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/resource/document/essential-fish-habitat-ecosystem-approach
- Magnuson–Stevens Act: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/topic/laws-policies/magnuson-stevens-act
- Consult with NOAA Fisheries: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/national/habitat-conservation/consultations-essential-fish-habitat
- Habitat restoration: https://www.fisheries.noaa.gov/video/habitat-restoration-noaa

Abstract

The Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976 (MSA; amended 1996 and 2007) mandated the identification of essential fish habitat (EFH) for federally managed species and consideration of measures to conserve and enhance the habitat necessary for these species to carry out their life cycles.

The MSA also requires federal agencies to consult with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries) on all actions or proposed actions permitted, funded, or undertaken by the agency that may adversely affect EFH—such as EFH necessary for anadromous salmonids—which use both fresh- and saltwater habitats. Federal agencies do this by preparing and submitting EFH assessments to NOAA Fisheries.

NOAA Fisheries' biologists review proposed projects under the EFH provisions to ensure that they provide appropriate EFH conservation recommendations. It is challenging during the consultation phase to consider all potential non-fishing impacts to EFH so that the appropriate mix of recommendations can be made. Because impacts that may adversely affect EFH can be direct, indirect, and cumulative, the biologists must consider and analyze these interrelated impacts. This reference document was prepared to assist NOAA Fisheries biologists in reviewing proposed projects and considering potential impacts (e.g., barriers, stormwater runoff) that may adversely affect EFH, and to provide consistent and substantiated EFH conservation recommendations.

This document provides an update and reorganization to Hanson et al. (2003), including new chapters and updated reference lists.

References

Hanson, J., M. Helvey, and R. Strach, editors. 2003. Non-Fishing Impacts to Essential Fish Habitat and Recommended Conservation Measures. National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle.

Glossary

EFH	essential fish habitat
entrainment	The passage of fish through fish screens at water diversions.
ESA	Endangered Species Act of 1973
impingement	Prolonged whole-body contact with a fish screen.
marine vibroseis	A sound-generating system that uses a large oscillating mass to emit a range of frequencies. Offers an alternative to air-gun seismic sources and may have fewer environmental effects on marine biota.
MSA	Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976
TMDL	total maximum daily load

Acknowledgments

We would like to acknowledge the valuable contributions of our NOAA colleagues who wrote the earlier version of this report, as well as the reviewers of this update, including: Jennifer Ruesink, University of Washington; Jim Laughlin, Washington State Department of Transportation; Chris Mebane, United States Geological Survey; and Lisa Abernathy, Morgan Bond, Correigh Greene, Britta Timpane-Padgham, Eric Shott, Gretchen Hanshew, Matt Goldsworthy, Rosalie del Rosario, Mike Kelly, Eric Chavez, Stephanie Ehinger, Laura Hoberecht, Lyndal Johnson, Mike Grady, Gayle Kreitman, Beth Sanderson, Johnathan Schram, Steven Smith, Tim Beechie, and Michael Pollock, National Marine Fisheries Service.

We acknowledge the foundational contributions of the original writers of this document, including the editors—Jeanne Hanson, Mark Helvey, and Russ Strach—and the contributors: Lt. Mark Boland, Tracy Collier, Bob Donnelly, Jeanne Hanson, Mark Helvey, Ron A. Heintz, Thom Hooper, DeAnee Kirkpatrick, Brian Lance, Marc Liverman, Matt Longenbaugh, Kristin McCully, Nancy Munn, Ben Meyer, Ken Phippen, Nat Scholz, John Stadler, Dan Tonnes, and Susan Walker.

Introduction

Background on Essential Fish Habitat

In 1996, the United States Congress added new habitat conservation provisions to the Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA), the federal law that governs U.S. marine fisheries management. The renamed Magnuson–Stevens Act mandated the identification of essential fish habitat (EFH)[1] for federally managed species, and consideration of measures to conserve and enhance the habitat necessary for these species to carry out their life cycles.

The act also requires federal agencies to consult with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries) on all actions, or proposed actions, permitted, funded, or undertaken by the agency, that may adversely affect EFH.[2] Federal agencies do this by preparing and submitting an EFH Assessment to NOAA Fisheries. The EFH Assessment is a written assessment of the effects of any proposed federal action(s) on EFH. Regardless of federal agency compliance to this directive, the act requires NOAA Fisheries to provide conservation recommendations to federal as well as state agencies once it receives information or determines from other sources that EFH may be adversely affected. These EFH conservation recommendations are provided to conserve and enhance EFH by avoiding, minimizing, mitigating, or otherwise offsetting the adverse effects to EFH.

By providing EFH conservation recommendations before an activity begins, NOAA Fisheries may help prevent habitat damage before it occurs, rather than restoring it after the fact—which is less efficient, unpredictable, and often more costly. This could ultimately save American taxpayers millions of dollars in habitat restoration funds, and could save industries from having to remedy environmental problems down the road. Furthermore, EFH conservation will lead to more robust fisheries, providing benefits to coastal communities and commercial and recreational fishers alike (Benaka 1999).

Activities proposed to occur in EFH areas do not automatically require consultation. Consultations are triggered only when the proposed action may adversely affect EFH, and then, only federal actions require consultation.

This consultation process is usually integrated into existing environmental review procedures in accordance with the

---

[1] *EFH* is defined as "those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity." *Waters* include aquatic areas and their associated physical, chemical, and biological properties. *Substrate* includes sediment underlying the waters. *Necessary* means the habitat required to support a sustainable fishery and the managed species' contribution to a healthy ecosystem. *Spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity* covers all habitat types utilized by a species throughout its life cycle.

[2] *Adverse effect* is any impact which reduces the quality and/or quantity of EFH. Adverse effects may include direct or indirect physical, chemical, or biological alterations of the waters or substrate, and loss of, or injury to, benthic organisms, prey species, and their habitat, and other ecosystem components. Adverse effects may be site-specific or habitatwide impacts, including individual, cumulative, or synergistic consequences of actions [50 CFR 600.910(a)].

National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), the Endangered Species Act (ESA), or the Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act (FWCA), for instance, to provide the greatest level of efficiency.

Within 30 days of receiving NOAA Fisheries' conservation recommendations, federal action agencies must provide a detailed response in writing to NOAA Fisheries. The response must include measures proposed for avoiding, mitigating, or offsetting the impact of a proposed activity on EFH. State agencies are not required to respond to EFH conservation recommendations. If the federal action agency chooses not to adopt NOAA Fisheries' conservation recommendations, it must provide an explanation, including the scientific justification for any disagreements with NOAA Fisheries over the anticipated effects of the action and the measures needed to avoid, minimize, mitigate, or offset such effects. Examples of federal action agencies that permit or undertake activities that may trigger the EFH consultation process include, but are not limited to, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and the Department of the Navy (DoN). Fishery Management Councils (FMCs) may also choose to comment on proposed actions that may adversely impact EFH, and must do so for any activity that is likely to substantially affect the habitat, including EFH, of an anadromous fishery resource under FMC authority. The waters and substrate that comprise EFH designations under the jurisdiction of the FMCs are diverse and widely distributed. They are also closely interconnected with other aquatic and terrestrial environments.

From a broad perspective, EFH typically encompasses the geographic area where the species occurs at any time during its life. This area can be described in terms of ecological characteristics, location, and time. Ecologically, EFH includes waters and substrate that focus distribution (e.g., migration corridors, spawning and rearing areas, rocky reefs, intertidal salt marshes, or submerged aquatic vegetation) and other characteristics that are less distinct (e.g., turbidity zones, salinity gradients). Spatially, habitats are dynamic and shift with seasons and hydrologic events, and EFH may comprise multiple habitat types to form a habitat mosaic. The importance and use of EFH may shift over time due to climate change, human activities, and geologic events. The type of habitat available, its attributes, and its functions are important to species productivity, diversity, health, and survival.

Essential Fish Habitat Characterization

Essential fish habitat includes uplands—river or riverine, estuary or estuarine, and coastal or marine. Riverine habitats provide important habitat that serves multiple purposes for anadromous species such as salmon. These purposes include migration, feeding, spawning, nursery, and rearing functions. Protecting these functions is vital to providing for a productive system and a healthy fishery. Important components of a river system also include the riparian corridor and floodplain. *Riparian* refers to the land directly adjacent to a stream, lake, or estuary. A healthy riparian area has vegetation harboring prey items (e.g., insects), contributes necessary nutrients, provides large woody debris (LWD) that creates channel structure and covers for fish, and provides shade, which controls stream temperatures (Bilby and Ward 1991). When vegetation is removed from riparian areas, waters are heated, and LWD is less common. This results in less refuge for fish, fundamental changes in channel structure (e.g., loss of pool habitats), instability of streambanks, and alteration of nutrient and prey sources within the river system. *Floodplain* refers to the land adjacent to the stream channel, composed of unconsolidated alluvial sediments, extending laterally to the base of the valley wall, which is periodically flooded during high discharge. When floodplains are constrained or damaged by human activities, river hydrology is altered, leading to a variety of biophysical changes in freshwater EFH, including reductions in important rearing and spawning habitat (Sedell and Frogatt 1986, Hein et al. 2016).

Estuaries are the bays and inlets influenced by both the ocean and rivers, and they serve as the transition zone between fresh and saltwater (Botkin et al. 1995). Estuaries support a community of plants and animals that are adapted to the zone where fresh and salt waters mix (Zedler et al. 1992). Estuarine habitats fulfill fish and wildlife needs for reproduction, feeding, refuge, and other physiological necessities (Phillips 1984, Watson and Byrne 2009). Healthy estuaries include submerged aquatic vegetation, including eelgrass beds and kelp forests, which store carbon, protect young fish from predators, provide food and habitat for fish and wildlife including NOAA trust resources, improve water quality, and influence hydrology and sediments (Phillips 1984, Thayer et al. 1984, Hoss and Thayer 1993, Baeta et al. 2009, Lemons et al. 2011, Shelton et al. 2017). In addition, shorelines, mud flats, high salt marsh, and saltmarsh creeks and associated riparian vegetation and shorelines also provide productive shallow-water habitat for epibenthic fishes and decapods (Sogard and Able 1991, Currin et al. 2010). While large woody debris in streams provides a number of ecological functions important for healthy EFH, so does LWD along marine shorelines, where it provides a key biogenic habitat (Heerhartz et al. 2014).

Coastal or marine habitats comprise a variety of habitat types for EFH-managed species, including sandy bottoms, rocky reefs, and submarine canyons. When rocky reefs support kelp stands, they become exceptionally productive. Relative to other habitats, including wetlands, shallow and deep sandy bottoms, and rocky-bottom artificial reefs, giant kelp habitats are substantially more productive in the fish communities they support (Bond et al. 1999, Schaffer et al. 2020). In particular, their three-dimensional structure can provide exemplary marine habitat (Graham 2004). Foster and Schiel (1985) reported that the net primary productivity of kelp beds may be the highest of any marine community, and this theory has been continually supported by scientific research (Tegner and Dayton 2000, Deza and Anderson 2010). Lush kelp forest communities (e.g., giant kelp, bull kelp, elk kelp, and feather boa kelp) are found relatively close to shore along the open coast. These subtidal communities provide vertically structured habitat through the water column on the rocky shelf, made up of: a canopy of tangled stipes from the water line to a depth of 10 ft; a mid-kelp, water-column region; and the bottom, holdfast region. The stands provide nurseries, feeding grounds, and/or shelter to a variety of groundfish species and their prey (Feder et al. 1974, Ebeling et al. 1980, Bodkin 1988, Nelson 2000, Schroeder 2016). Furthermore, coastal and marine ecosystems are the most vulnerable to human impacts within the California Current, specifically mudflats, beach, salt marsh, and rocky intertidal habitats (Teck et al. 2010).

Nonfishing Impacts

The diversity, widespread distribution, and ecological linkages with other aquatic and terrestrial environments make the waters and substrates that comprise EFH susceptible to a wide array of human activities unrelated to fishing.

Nonfishing activities have the potential to adversely affect the quantity or quality of EFH-designated areas in riverine, estuarine, and marine systems. Broad categories of such activities include, but are not limited to, mining, dredging, fill, impoundment, discharge, water diversions, thermal additions, actions that contribute to non-point source pollution and sedimentation, introduction of potentially hazardous materials, introduction of exotic species, and the conversion of aquatic habitat that may eliminate, diminish, or disrupt the functions of EFH. For each activity, this document describes known and potential adverse impacts to EFH. The descriptions include an explanation of the potential mechanisms or processes that may cause the adverse effects on EFH and how these may affect habitat function.

The report also provides proactive conservation measures designed to minimize or avoid the adverse effects of these nonfishing activities on EFH. These measures should be viewed as options to avoid, minimize, or compensate for adverse impacts, and to promote the conservation and enhancement of EFH. However, it is worth noting that site-specific considerations are often important when evaluating nonfishing impacts and developing appropriate EFH conservation recommendations. The conservation measures presented in this report will likely need to be adjusted to suit site-specific needs.

Purpose of Document

It is of paramount importance that NOAA Fisheries' biologists review proposed projects under the EFH provisions to ensure that they provide appropriate EFH conservation recommendations. It is equally challenging during the consultation phase to consider all potential nonfishing impacts to EFH so that the appropriate mix of recommendations can be made. Because impacts that may adversely affect EFH can be direct, indirect, and cumulative, the biologist must consider and analyze these interrelated impacts. This reference document was prepared to assist NOAA Fisheries biologists in reviewing proposed projects and considering potential impacts that may adversely affect EFH, and to provide consistent and substantiated EFH conservation recommendations.

The document should also be useful for federal action agencies undertaking EFH consultations, and especially in preparing EFH assessments. For instance, action agencies can use this document for assistance in identifying and describing potential adverse effects associated with a particular activity type. In addition, incorporating appropriate conservation measures from this document into a project description could reduce the number of, or even obviate the need for, additional EFH conservation recommendations provided by NOAA Fisheries biologists during the consultation process.

Each chapter briefly describes the potential effects of nonfishing impacts on EFH and a list of potential conservation measures to minimize these impacts. Because a variety of nonfishing impacts are considered, it was not feasible to go into great detail on each activity. If more details on a particular activity are needed to complete an EFH consultation (e.g., for an action agency to accomplish the EFH assessment or a NOAA Fisheries biologist to develop an EFH response), the reference section of each chapter provides a list of key papers or reports on that topic. In addition, a number of chapters are linked, as some nonfishing activities have similar impacts on EFH. For example, Chapter 6 (Dam Operations and Removal) addresses the impacts of dams, etc., on EFH, including effects on fish migration, which are also addressed in Chapter 3 (Road Construction and Operation), as road crossings and culverts also constrain or sever fish migration. Therefore, it may be beneficial to consult multiple chapters when assessing impacts of nonfishing activities on EFH. Given the pervasive effects of climate change across all EFH (from uplands to the open ocean), assessment of the various nonfishing activities should explicitly consider how these activities might interact with climate change to impact EFH. A short chapter on climate change is included, providing some very simple examples of how these interactions might occur.

The EFH conservation recommendations included with each activity present a series of specific measures that can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, offset, or mitigate impacts to EFH. Our lists of recommendations are by no means complete, nor are all of these suggested measures necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information and project-specific considerations should be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process and communicated to the appropriate agency. The conservation recommendations provided represent a short menu of general types of conservation measures that can contribute to the conservation and enhancement of properly functioning EFH. As such, they can help form the starting point for the development of conservation measures.

Generally, non-water-dependent actions should not be located in EFH if such actions may have adverse impacts on EFH. Activities that may result in significant adverse impacts on EFH should be avoided where less environmentally harmful alternatives are available. If there are no alternatives, the impacts of these actions should be minimized. Environmentally sound engineering and management practices should be employed for all actions that may adversely affect EFH. If avoidance or minimization are not possible, or will not adequately protect EFH, compensatory mitigation to conserve and enhance EFH is recommended. To help inform managers on the effectiveness of conservation measures in protecting EFH from the adverse effects of nonfishing activities, an adaptive management approach is recommended (Walters 1986).

References

Baeta, A., I. Valiela, F. Rossi, R. Pinto, P. Richard, N. Niquil, and J. C. Marques. 2009. Eutrophication and trophic structure in response to the presence of the eelgrass *Zostera noltii*. Marine Biology 156:2107–2120.

Benaka, L. R, editor. 1999. Fish habitat. Essential fish habitat and rehabilitation: Proceedings of the Sea Grant Symposium, August 26–27, 1998, Hartford, CT (USA). American Fisheries Society Symposium 22. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Bilby, R. E., and J. W. Ward. 1991. Characteristics and Function of Large Woody Debris in Streams Draining Old-Growth, Clear-Cut, and Second-Growth Forests in Southwestern Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:2499–2508.

Bodkin, J. L. 1988. Effects of kelp forest removal on associated fish assemblages in central California. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 117:227–238.

Bond, A. B., and J. S. Stephens. 1999. A Method for Estimating Marine Habitat Values Based on Fish Guilds, with Comparisons Between Sites in the Southern California Bight. Bulletin of Marine Science 64:219–242.

Botkin, D., K. Cummins, T. Dunne, H. Regier, M. Sobel, L. Talbot, and L. Simpson. 1995. Status and future of salmon of western Oregon and northern California: Findings and options. The Center for the Study of the Environment, Santa Barbara, California.

Currin, C. A., W. S. Chappell, and A. Deaton. A., 2010. Developing alternative shoreline armoring strategies: The living shoreline approach in North Carolina. Pages 91–102 *in* H. Shipman, M. N. Dethier, G. Gelfenbaum, K. L. Fresh, and R. S. Dinicola, editors. Puget Sound Shorelines and the Impacts of Armoring—Proceedings of a State of the Science Workshop, May 2009: U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2010-5254. U.S. Geological Survey, Seattle.

Deza, A., and T. Anderson. 2010. Habitat fragmentation, patch size, and the recruitment and abundance of kelp forest fishes. Marine Ecology Progress Series 416:229–240.

Ebeling, A. W., R. J. Larson, and B. S. Alevizon. 1980. Habitat groups and island–mainland distribution of kelp-bed fishes off Santa Barbara, California. Pages 403–431 *in* D. M. Power, editor. The California Islands: Proceedings of a multidisciplinary symposium. Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History, Santa Barbara, California.

ESA (Endangered Species Act of 1973). 1973. U.S. Code, volume 16, sections 1531–1544.

Feder, H. M., C. H. Turner, and C. Limbaugh. 1974. Observations on fishes associated with kelp beds in Southern California. Fishery Bulletin 160:1–144.

Foster M. S., and D. R. Schiel. 1985. The ecology of giant kelp forests in California: A community profile. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 85:1–152.

FWCA (Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act). 1934. U.S. Code, volume 16, sections 661–666.

Graham, M. H. 2004. Effects of local deforestation on the diversity and structure of Southern California giant kelp forest food webs. Ecosystems 7:341–357.

Heerhartz, S. M., M. N. Dethier, J. D. Toft, J. R. Cordell, and A. S. Ogston. 2014. Effects of shoreline armoring on beach wrack subsidies to the nearshore ecotone in an estuarine fjord. Estuaries and Coasts 37:1256–1268.

Hein, T., U. Schwarz, H. Habersack, I. Nichersu, S. Preiner, N. Willby, and G. Weigelhofer. 2016. Current status and restoration options for floodplains along the Danube River. Science of The Total Environment 543:778–790.

Hoss D. E., and G. W. Thayer. 1993. The importance of habitat to the early life history of estuarine dependent fishes. American Fisheries Society Symposium 14:147–158.

Lemons, G., R. Lewison, L. Komoroske, A. Gaos, C. T. Lai, P. Dutton, T. Eguchi, R. LeRoux, and J. A. Seminoff. 2011. Trophic ecology of green sea turtles in a highly urbanized bay: Insights from stable isotopes and mixing models. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 405:25–32.

MSA (Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act of 1976). 2006. Magnuson–Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Reauthorizaton Act of 2006. U.S. Code, volume 16, section 1851.

Nelson, P. A. 2000. Behavioral ecology of young-of-the-year kelp rockfish, *Sebastes atrovirens* Jordan and Gilbert (Pisces: Scorpaenidae). Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 256:33–50.

NEPA (National Environmental Policy Act). 1970. U.S. Code, volume 42, sections 4321–4347.

Phillips, R. C. 1984. The ecology of eelgrass meadows in the Pacific Northwest: A community profile. FWS/OBS Report 84/24. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

Shaffer, J. A., S. H. Munsch, and J. R. Cordell. 2020. Kelp forest zooplankton, forage fishes, and juvenile salmonids of the Northeast Pacific nearshore. Marine and Coastal Fisheries 12:4–20.

Schroeder, S. B. 2016. Satellite Remote Sensing of *Nereocystis luetkeana* (Bull Kelp) and the Use of Kelp by Juvenile Salmon in the Salish Sea. Master's thesis. University of Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

Sedell, J. R., and J. L. Froggatt. 1984. Importance of streamside forests to large rivers: The isolation of the Willamette River, Oregon, U.S.A., from its floodplain by snagging and streamside forest removal: With 2 figures and 1 table in the text. SIL Proceedings, 1922–2010 22:1828–1834.

Shelton, A. O., T. B. Francis, B. E. Feist, G. D. Williams, A. Lindquist, and P. S. Levin. 2017. Forty years of seagrass population stability and resilience in an urbanizing estuary. Journal of Ecology 105:458–470.

Sogard, S. M., and K. W. Able. 1991. A comparison of eelgrass, sea lettuce macroalgae, and marsh creeks as habitats for epibenthic fishes and decapods. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 33:501–519.

Teck, S. J., B. S. Halpern, C. V. Kappel, F. Micheli, K. A. Selkoe, C. M. Crain, R. Martone, C. Shearer, J. Arvai, B. Fischhoff, G. Murray, R. Neslo, and R. Cooke. 2010. Using expert judgment to estimate marine ecosystem vulnerability in the California Current. Ecological Applications 20:1402–1416.

Tegner, M., and P. K. Dayton. 2000. Ecosystem effects of fishing in kelp forest communities. ICES Journal of Marine Science 57:579–589.

Thayer, G. W., W. J. Kenworthy, and M. S. Fonseca. 1984. The ecology of eelgrass meadows of the Atlantic coast: A community profile. FWS/OBS Report 84/02. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

USOFR (U.S. Office of the Federal Register). 2002. Definitions and word usage. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 50, Part 600, Section 910(a). U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.

Walters, C. J. 1986. Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources. MacMillan, New York.

Watson, E. B., and R. Byrne. 2009. Abundance and diversity of tidal marsh plants along the salinity gradient of the San Francisco Estuary: Implications for global change ecology. Plant Ecology 205:113–128.

Zedler, J. B., J. C. Callaway, J. S. Desmond, G. Vivian-Smith, G. D. Williams, G. Sullivan, A. E. Brewster, and B. K. Bradshaw. 1999. Californian Salt-Marsh Vegetation: An Improved Model of Spatial Pattern. Ecosystems 2(1):19–35.

1. Climate Change

Human activities (e.g., burning of fossil fuels, clearing of forests, and development of land) that emit greenhouse gases (GHG) such as carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), nitrous oxide (N_2O), and fluorinated gases contribute to a rapidly changing global climate (Oreskes 2004, Hansen et al. 2006, Rosenzweig et al. 2008) that is and will continue to impact EFH from headwaters to the open ocean. Thus, those tasked with the conservation and management of EFH will need to consider the multiple pathways by which climate change will impact marine, freshwater, and terrestrial ecosystems. First, current and projected changes in global climate have wide-ranging effects on a variety of environmental conditions (water chemistry, temperature, water flow, precipitation, disturbance regimes, etc.) that will directly affect EFH and associated food webs (Beechie et al. 2010, Davis et al. 2013). Climate models predict that the region supporting Pacific coastal EFH is expected to warm in all seasons, but the greatest warming, 1.9–5.2°C (3.4–4.9°F), is projected for summer 2041–70 (Miller et al. 2003, Marcarelli et al. 2010). Warmer water temperatures will increase metabolic demands of aquatic ectotherms, potentially leading to changes in life history (e.g., delayed migration) and making them more susceptible to other stressors (e.g., Gale et al. 2013). Second, changes in these environmental conditions and processes will interact with climate-induced changes on land (e.g., reductions in forest cover due to changes in precipitation and temperature patterns) and in oceans (e.g., circulation) to affect EFH possibly in a synergistic manner (Doney et al. 2012, Gale et al. 2013). For instance, climate warming has increased water temperature of marine and freshwater EFH habitats, especially in summer, which is stressful for a variety of NOAA trust species and their prey base (e.g., Roessig et al. 2004). These increases in temperature as a result of global climate change may be exacerbated by human conversion of riparian forests that shade aquatic habitats from solar insolation and conversion of riparian forests east of the Cascade mountains to shrub-steppe and grasslands due to changes in precipitation patterns and disturbance regime (e.g., increased fire frequency and severity; Westerling et al. 2011, Davis et al. 2013). Third, we should expect that the complex ecological and environmental modifications resulting from climate change will interact with EFH nonfishing activities and other stressors to affect trust species and their ecosystems. Finally, we should expect that marine and freshwater species that are already threatened or endangered to be most vulnerable to climate change (e.g.,Williams et al. 2015), and thus to potential land-use activities that affect EFH used by these sensitive species, warrant a high level of scrutiny.

Climate Change Impacts on EFH

As of 2009, air temperatures in the region supporting Pacific salmon EFH had increased by about 0.8°C over the past century, and models project warming of 2.0°C by the 2040s and 3.3°C by the 2080s (e.g., Mote and Salathé 2010). Regional models predict increased water temperatures throughout EFH along the U.S. West Coast (ISAB 2007). In EFH that already experiences seasonally elevated water temperatures, warmer water could shift species composition via increasing mortality of cool-water species by exceeding thermal tolerances, increasing susceptibility to disease and contaminants, and shifting the distribution and abundance of both prey that support higher trophic levels, as well as invasive species (e.g., Sydeman et al. 2015). Climate change-associated increases in water temperature could also increase the frequency and duration of low dissolved oxygen events leading to the persistence of ecological dead zones (e.g., Praetorious et al. 2015). In the marine environment, increased water temperatures could promote stratification between warmer surface waters and cooler, nutrient-rich deep waters. The resulting thermocline could prevent nutrient cycling, reducing growth of phytoplankton that form the base of marine food webs (CIG 2004, Scheuerell and Williams 2005). Increased marine and freshwater temperatures (as well as changes in freshwater flow) may also increase the establishment and spread of non-native species (Hoegh-Guldberg and Bruno 2010, Lawrence et al. 2015, Sydeman et al. 2015).

Precipitation patterns, including the frequency of extreme precipitation events, are also projected to change with climate change. For example, climate models predict increased variability in precipitation, with more falling as rain in winter, especially at high elevations, and less in summer, resulting in more extreme seasonal cycles and a variety of changes in terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, including changes in discharge regime (Cayan et al. 2008, Davis et al. 2013). For example, in western Washington, autumns and winters are predicted to be warmer and wetter, summers drier, and a higher proportion of overall precipitation to fall as rain, which would reduce snowpack in the Cascade Range and water available to maintain adequate summer flows for fish populations (Mote and Salathé 2010). As the climate warms and regional snowpack is reduced, flow regimes in some snow-fed streams are expected to shift toward regimes dominated more by rainfall, which could impact EFH in a variety of ways, including altering river food web composition and productivity, phenology and life-history diversity of some salmonid species, and downstream habitats, including estuarine habitats (Mote et al. 2003, CIG 2004). For example, a warmer climate is expected to lead to less snow in the Cascade mountains and smaller snowpacks, which melt earlier and produce lower flow levels. These changes could alter flow or temperature-mediated behavioral cues in fish, such as migration timing (ISAB 2007). Changes in snowpack could also alter flow regimes such that summer low flows are reduced, decreasing habitat for rearing and migrating juvenile salmonids, thereby increasing the probability of stranding, negative biotic interactions (e.g., predation), and susceptibility to disease (Stewart 2004, Battin et al. 2007, Luce and Holden 2009).

The eastern Pacific Ocean has and will experience large changes in water temperature, pH, circulation, and sea level that will lead to major changes in EFH (Roessig et al. 2004, Hoegh-Guldberg and Bruno 2010, Nicholls and Cazenave 2010, Doney et al. 2012, Moore et al. 2015, Sydeman et al. 2015). The impacts of climate change on the oceans so far include decreased ocean productivity, altered food web dynamics, reduced abundance of habitat-forming species, shifting species distributions, loss of nearshore habitat, and a greater incidence of disease (e.g., Hoegh-Guldberg and Bruno 2010, Haigh et al. 2015). For example, the ocean is a major sink for atmospheric CO_2, and as the level of CO_2 in the atmosphere increases it will dissolve more readily in the ocean, increasing the concentration of carbonic acid and lowering the pH of seawater. Planktonic organisms that form the base of many marine food webs secrete $CaCO_3$ shells necessary for their survival. Lower pH will dissolve or prevent the formation of these shells, leading to increased mortality rates (Orr et al. 2005). These changes in ocean acidification may have profound implications for marine EFH (Haigh et al. 2015). Juvenile salmonids foraging in the ocean rely on plankton as a food source, so decreased plankton abundance could reduce salmonid growth and survival rates.

Future climate scenarios also predict changes in disturbance regimes (fire, landslides, floods, droughts, insect outbreaks, extreme events) that impact EFH (e.g., Davis et al. 2013). Reduced snowpack, reduced rainfall, and earlier snowmelt have increased summer drought, and the frequency and severity of extreme weather events, wildfire, and fire-related debris flows (Pierce et al. 2004, Westerling et al. 2006, Westerling and Bryant 2008, Cai et al. 2015). Models predict that the amount of land impacted by wildfire in the western United States will increase 54% due to climate change by 2050, and increased fire will likely coincide with increased incidence of debris flows (Davis et al. 2013). Debris flows also occur in unburned areas, but the magnitude of impact and probability of occurrence are larger in burned watersheds (May and Gresswell 2003). Increased drought and insect damage associated with climate change will also lead to changes in forest composition and structure, thereby increasing susceptibility to forest fires that impact EFH (e.g., Davis et al. 2013).

As climate change continues, the resultant effects on EFH through changes in water chemistry, temperature, precipitation, and stream-flow regimes will have large effects on aquatic organisms, including development, phenology, metabolism, growth, survival, reproduction, and movement, ultimately leading to changes in population dynamics, species composition, and food-web processes (Roessig et al. 2004, Crozier and Zabel 2006, Zabel et al. 2006, Battin et al. 2007, Crozier et al. 2008, Doney et al. 2012). Changes in global climate will also alter terrestrial (e.g., plant production, nutrient and organic matter flux) and ocean processes (e.g., biogeochemical cycles) that may interact with climate-induced changes in temperature, precipitation, and flow, to affect EFH and the organisms it supports (Doney et al. 2012, Davis et al. 2013). For example, drier summers could further reduce salmonid spawning habitat already reduced by anthropogenic fish passage barriers. Extreme rainfall events during winter and spring could increase flooding after the Pacific salmon spawning period, scouring redds and increasing mortality of eggs and larvae. Adult salmon use pools to rest during the pre-spawn stage, and this habitat could be reduced in some streams as flow and sediment regimes are altered. One consequence of the increased frequency of climate-induced forest fires is increased inputs of fine sediment to streams (e.g., Rhoades et al. 2011), which can reduce habitat quality for spawning and stream-rearing salmonids. Higher winter flows could also degrade valuable estuarine zones through pollution, variable freshwater influx, and physical disturbance.

Given the current and predicted future impact of climate change on terrestrial and aquatic habitats, the assessment of nonfishing activities on EFH must consider how any particular activity will interact with current landscape conditions and processes, as well as projected changes in environmental conditions (e.g., temperature, flow, pH, nutrients, contaminants; see Figure 1) resulting from climate change. Humans will be affected by the same climatic changes and reductions in suitable habitat, including the availability of water, which will likely lead to increased public conflict when making decisions about the use and protection of increasingly limited natural resources (Vicuna et al. 2007). Thus, it will be increasingly important that anthropogenic activities become progressively less intrusive on EFH, to account for the increased pressure on EFH due to climate change, so that valuable resources, such as naturally produced fisheries, remain sustainable for future generations.

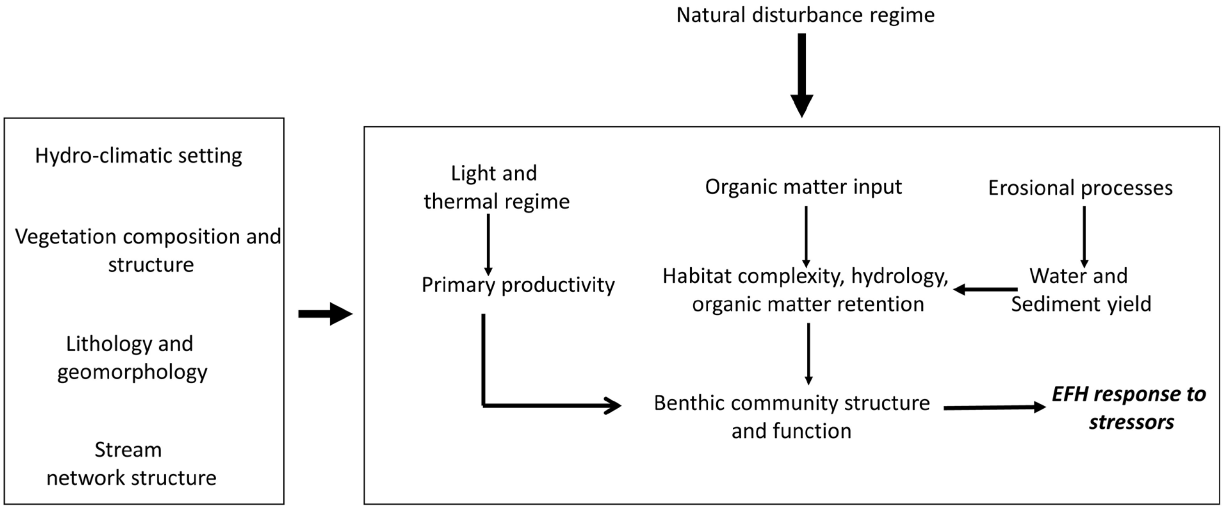


Figure 1. Conceptual model showing the hypothesized influence of landscape-level characteristics (regional climate and hydrology, riparian vegetation, lithology and geomorphology, and stream network structure) and disturbance regime on catchment-level processes. We hypothesize that how EFH responds to anthropogenic change will depend on environmental context determined by these landscape-level drivers and the local natural disturbance (e.g., fire, insects) regime. Modified from Figure 2 in Clements et al. 2015.

References

Battin, J., M. W. Wiley, M. H. Ruckelshaus, R. N. Palmer, E. Korb, K. K. Bartz, and H. Imaki. 2007. Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 104:6720–6725.

Beechie, T. J., D. A. Sear, J. D. Olden, G. R. Pess, J. M. Buffington, H. Moir, P. Roni, and M. M. Pollock. 2010. Process-based Principles for Restoring River Ecosystems. BioScience 60(3):209–222.

Cai, W., G. Wang, A. Santoso, M. J. McPhaden, L. Wu, F.-F. Jin, A. Timmermann, M. Collins, G. Vecchi, M. Lengaigne, M. H. England, D. Dommenget, K. Takahashi, and E. Guilyardi. 2015. Increased frequency of extreme La Niña events under greenhouse warming. Nature Climate Change 5:132–137.

Cayan, D. R., E. P. Maurer, M. D. Dettinger, M. Tyree, and K. Hayhoe. 2008. Climate change scenarios for the California region. Climatic Change 87:21–42.

CIG (Climate Impacts Group). 2004. Overview of climate change impacts in the U.S. Pacific Northwest. Prepared by the Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle.

Clements, W. H., D. Kashian, P. Kiffney, and R. Zuellig. 2015. Perspectives on context-dependent response of stream benthic communities to contaminants and other anthropogenic stressors. Freshwater Biology DOI: 10.1111/fwb.12599.

Crozier, L. G., and R. W. Zabel. 2006. Climate impacts at multiple scales: Evidence for differential population responses in juvenile Chinook salmon. Journal of Animal Ecology 75:1100–1109.

Crozier, L. G., R. W. Zabel, and A. F. Hamlet. 2008. Predicting differential effects of climate change at the population level with life-cycle models of spring Chinook salmon. Global Change Biology 14:236–249.

Davis, J. M., C. V. Baxter, E. J. Rosi-Marshall, J. L. Pierce, and B. T. Crosby. 2013. Anticipating stream ecosystem responses to climate change: Toward predictions that incorporate effects via land–water linkages. Ecosystems 16:909–922.

Doney, S. C., M. Ruckelshaus, J. E. Duffy, J. P. Barry, F. Chan, C. A. English, H. M. Galindo, J. M. Grebmeier, A. B. Hollowed, N. Knowlton, J. Polovina, N. N. Rabalais, W. J. Sydeman, and L. D. Talley. 2012. Climate change impacts on marine ecosystems. Annual Review of Marine Science 4:11–37.

Gale, M. K., S. G. Hinch, and M. R. Donaldson. 2013. The role of temperature in the capture and release of fish. Fish and Fisheries 14:1–33.

Haigh, R., D. Ianson, C. A. Holt, H. E. Neate, and A. M. Edwards. 2015. Effects of ocean acidification on temperate coastal marine ecosystems and fisheries in the Northeast Pacific. PLOS ONE 10:e0117533.

Hansen, J., M. Sato, R. Ruedy, K. Lo, D. W. Lea, and M. Medina-Elizade. 2006. Global temperature change. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 103:14288–14294.

Hoegh-Guldberg, O., and J. F. Bruno. 2010. The impact of climate change on the world's marine ecosystems. Science 328:1523–1528.

ISAB (Independent Scientific Advisory Board). 2007. Climate Change Impacts on the Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife. ISAB 2007-2. Available: www.nwcouncil.org/sites/default/files/isab2007_2.pdf (September 2022).

Lawrence, D., D. Beauchamp, and J. Olden. 2015. Life-stage specific physiology defines invasion extent of a riverine fish. Journal of Animal Ecology 84:879–888.

Luce, C. H., and Z. A. Holden. 2009. Declining annual streamflow distributions in the Pacific Northwest United States, 1948–2006. Hydrology and Land Surface Studies 36:L16401.

Marcarelli, A. M., R. W. V. Kirk, and C. V. Baxter. 2010. Predicting effects of hydrologic alteration and climate change on ecosystem metabolism in a western U.S. river. Ecological Applications 20:2081–2088.

May, C. L., and R. E. Gresswell. 2004. Spatial and temporal patterns of debris-flow deposition in the Oregon Coast Range, USA. Geomorphology 57(3-4):135–149.

Miller, N. L., K. E. Bashford, and E. Strem. 2003. Potential Impacts of Climate Change on California Hydrology. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 39:771–784.

Moore, S. K., J. J. Johnstone, N. S. Banas, and E. P. Salathé, Jr. 2015. Present-day and future climatic pathways affecting *Alexandrium* blooms in Puget Sound, WA, USA. Harmful Algae 38:1–11.

Mote, P. W., E. A. Parson, A. F. Hamlet, W. S. Keeton, D. Lettenmaier, N. Mantua, E. L. Miles, D. W. Peterson, D. L. Peterson, R. Slaughter, and A. K. Snover. 2003. Preparing for climatic change: The water, salmon, and forests of the Pacific Northwest. Climate Change 61:45–88.

Mote, P. W., and E. P. Salathé. 2010. Future climate in the Pacific Northwest. Climatic Change 102(1-2):29–50.

Nicholls, R. J., and A. Cazenave. 2010. Sea-level rise and its impact on coastal zones. Science 328:1517–1520.

Oreskes, N. 2004. The scientific consensus on climate change. Science 306:1686.

Orr, J. C., V. J. Fabry, O. Aumont, L. Bopp, S. C. Doney, R. A. Feely, A. Gnanadesikan, N. Gruber, A. Ishida, F. Joos, R. M. Key, K. Lindsay, and 15 others. 2005. Anthropogenic ocean acidification over the twenty-first century and its impact on calcifying organisms. Nature 437:681–686.

Pierce, J. L., G. A. Meyer, and A. J. T. Jull. 2004. Fire-induced erosion and millennial scale climate change in northern ponderosa pine forests. Nature 432:87–90.

Praetorius, S. K., A. C. Mix, M. H. Walczak, M. D. Wolhowe, J. A. Addison, and F. G. Prahl. 2015. North Pacific deglacial hypoxic events linked to abrupt ocean warming. Nature 527:362–366.

Rhoades, C. C., D. Entwistle, and D. Butler. 2011. The influence of wildfire extent and severity on streamwater chemistry, sediment and temperature following the Hayman Fire, Colorado. International Journal of Wildland Fire 20:430.

Roessig, J. M., C. M. Woodley, J. J. Cech, Jr., and L. J. Hansen. 2004. Effects of global climate change on marine and estuarine fishes and fisheries. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 14:251–275.

Rosenzweig, C., D. Karoly, M. Vicarelli, P. Neofotis, Q. Wu, G. Casassa, A. Menzel, T. L. Root, N. Estrella, B. Seguin, P. Tryjanowski, C. Liu, S. Rawlins and A. Imeson. 2008. Attributing physical and biological impacts to anthropogenic climate change. Nature 453:353–357.

Scheuerell, M. D., and J. G. Williams. 2005. Forecasting climate-induced changes in the survival of Snake River spring/summer Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Fisheries Oceanography 14(6):448–457.

Stewart, I. T., D. R. Cayan, and M. D. Dettinger. 2004. Changes in snowmelt runoff timing in western North America under a "business as usual" climate change scenario. Climatic Change 62:217–232.

Sydeman, W., E. Poloczanska, T. Reed, and S. Thompson. 2015. Climate change and marine vertebrates. Science 350:772–777.

Vicuna, S., and J. A. Dracup. 2007. The evolution of climate change impact studies on hydrology and water resources in California. Climatic Change 82(3-4):327–350.

Westerling, A. L., H. G. Hidalgo, D. R. Cayan, and T. W. Swetnam. 2006. Warming and earlier spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. Science 313(5789):940–943.

Westerling, A. L., and B. P. Bryant. 2008. Climate change and wildfire in California. Climatic Change 87:231–249.

Westerling, A. L., M. G. Turner, E. A. H. Smithwick, W. H. Romme, and M. G. Ryan. 2011. Continued warming could transform Greater Yellowstone fire regimes by mid-21st century. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 108:13165–13170.

Williams, J. E., D. J. Isaak, J. Imhof, D. A. Hendrickson, and J. R. McMillan. 2015. Cold-water fishes and climate change in North America. Reference Module for Earth Systems and Environmental Sciences. DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-409548-9.09505-1

Zabel, R. W., M. D. Scheuerell, M. M. McClure, and J. G. Williams. 2006. The interplay between climate variability and density dependence in the population viability of Chinook salmon. Conservation Biology 20:190–200.

2. Upland and Urban Development

A majority of land within the United States is rural; however, a growing segment of the population resides in expanding urban areas, resulting in the increased development of upland habitats and loss of open areas (Miller and Hobbs 2002, Brown et al. 2014). Globally, building activity and urbanization could be the single most important factor impacting EFH (Gregory 2006). Upland habitat is transformed from open, forested, and riparian floodplain areas containing ecologically functioning EFH into residential, urban, agricultural, or commercial areas, where functionality of EFH is generally compromised, resulting in large, quantifiable losses in EFH (Walsh et al. 2005, Lohse et al. 2008, Violin et al. 2011, Yeakley et al. 2014, Göthe et al. 2015). Remaining EFH is ecologically degraded through human activities and structures that homogenize, block, contaminate, and functionally impair hydrologic and geomorphologic processes (Booth and Jackson 1987, Beechie et al. 1994, Allan 2004, Konrad and Booth 2005, Konrad et al. 2005, Walsh et al. 2005, Chang 2007, McClure et al. 2008, Segura and Booth 2010). Water withdrawals and appropriation and urban runoff directly and indirectly impact hydrology, water chemistry, habitat, and organisms (USEPA 2002, Booth et al. 2004, McCarthy et al. 2008, Weiss et al. 2008, USEPA 2014). The area of impervious surface often increases over time (Arnold and Gibbons 1996), exacerbating impaired hydrologic and geomorphologic processes (May et al. 1997, Allan 2004, DeGasperi et al. 2009), and leading to increased concentration of contaminants in marine (Fitch et al. 2009) and freshwater (Allan 2004, Sandahl et al. 2007) EFH. Thus, landform and hydrologic changes and uses associated with upland and urban development can degrade EFH, and lead to reduced fish abundance and survival (Scott et al. 1986, Beechie et al. 1994, Bradford and Irvine 2000, Paulsen and Fisher 2001, Pess et al. 2002, Bilby and Mollot 2008, Yeakley et al. 2014).

This chapter is divided into four sections that outline some of the adverse impacts of upland and urban development on EFH, including factors associated with Commercial and Domestic Water Use, Floodplain Development, Land Clearing and Impervious Surfaces, and Stormwater and Urban Runoff. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these impacts on EFH are provided in each section.

Commercial and Domestic Water Use

Potential adverse impacts of commercial and domestic water use

The following factors associated with commercial and domestic water use can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, and entrainment and impingement. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Commercial and domestic water uses associated with upland and urban development can lead to the loss and alteration of EFH. Stream water flowing through developed areas can be relatively high in nutrients and contaminants (Bischel et al. 2013, Feist et al. 2017), which can lead to eutrophication and other water-quality impacts to downstream habitats. For example, eutrophication reduces the oxygen concentration in water, decreasing suitability of EFH (Rice 2005), which can be exacerbated by increased water temperatures (Kaushal et al. 2012). Water withdrawals for nonurban upland development purposes (e.g., agriculture) can also increase sedimentation, reducing habitat suitability for spawning salmon (Lohse et al. 2008), and associated reduced stream flows can diminish or desiccate downstream EFH (Labbe and Fausch 2000), impacting biodiversity, abundance, and size structure of invertebrate and fish populations (Lake 2003, Kanno and Vokoun 2010).

Excessive nutrients and contaminants in runoff from upland and urban development can also lead to degradation of water quality in downstream marine EFH (Schiff and Bay 2003). For example, eutrophication of nearshore habitats can reduce the functionality of critical EFH features by altering the spatial distribution (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005) and physical structure of seagrass (MacKenzie 2005). Freshwater fluxes to nearshore zones are also impacted by commercial and domestic water use. Loss of freshwater influx in estuaries can lead to the loss of vegetation along banks and coastlines, decreasing refuge, bank stability, and food sources for fish (Christie et al. 1993, Kimmerer 2002a).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Instream and riparian habitat (Tabacchi et al. 1998), and survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005) can be negatively affected by anthropogenic changes in volume and timing of stream discharge resulting from land use change. Commercial and domestic water uses associated with upland and urban development can alter hydrologic and geomorphologic processes in EFH. Upstream water use can decrease river flows (Caldwell et al. 2012), alter the transport of sediments and organic matter (Christie et al. 1993, Fajen and Layzer 1993), reduce water depths, modify water chemistry (NPPC 1986), and exacerbate extreme diel temperature patterns (Zale et al. 1993). Alterations to instream habitat and sediment transport caused by upstream water use can lead to decreases in survival of fish embryos (Lohse et al. 2008, Deitch et al. 2009), impediments to fish migration (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005), and reduction of invertebrate populations (McKay and King 2006) that support fish production (Deitch et al. 2009). Water withdrawals during low flow periods can lead to longitudinal and lateral disconnection of habitat, isolating fish and impairing migrations. Withdrawals can also lead to elevated stream temperatures due to loss of hyporheic or groundwater flow. In addition to physiological stress, increased temperatures can also increase colonization and contact time with invasive species (Lawrence et al. 2012).

The volume and timing of freshwater delivery to estuary EFH is also impacted by upstream water use, affecting water residence time, temperature, salinity, delivery of sediment and organic matter, water chemistry, and stratification of the water column (Kimmerer 2002a,b, Flemer and Champ 2006). Such degradation of estuary EFH can reduce the survival of estuarine-dependent species that are adapted to more dynamic freshwater influxes (Nichols et al. 1986).

Entrainment and impingement

Water diversions located in or connected to EFH can entrain (i.e., the passage of fish through fish screens at water diversions) and impinge (i.e., prolonged whole-body contact with a fish screen) fish (Zydlewski and Johnson 2002, Ellsworth et al. 2010). Entrainment can subject juvenile fish to physical abrasion and rapid pressure changes (Mussen et al. 2014, Zeug and Cavallo 2014). Intake pipes at diversions can stress or disorient fish through impingement or entrainment, and can also create conditions that favor predators such as larger fish and birds (Moyle and Israel 2005). Entrainment and impingement often result in the death of fish, and may have cumulative adverse impacts on fish populations (Swanson et al. 2005, Kimmerer 2008, Grimaldo et al. 2009).

Potential conservation measures for commercial and domestic water use

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of commercial and domestic water use on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of commercial and domestic water use on EFH.

General guidelines

- Work with water trust organizations to acquire water rights or establish water banks.
- Establish conservation guidelines for water use permits, and encourage the purchase or lease of water rights and the use of water to conserve or augment instream flows in accordance with state and federal water laws.
- Ensure that mitigation is provided for unavoidable impacts to fish and their habitat. Mitigation can include water conservation measures that reduce the volume of water diverted or impounded.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Maintain and restore channel, floodplain, riparian, groundwater, and estuarine conditions.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Conduct water availability analyses for watersheds to determine unimpaired and current baseline flows. Determine water volumes and flows (including the range of flows) needed to achieve or maintain EFH functions that support viable invertebrate and fish populations.
- Incentivize projects, practices, and laws or regulations that result in water conservation and reduced water demand.
- Maintain appropriate flow velocity, water levels, and flow variability to support continued stream functions.
- Mimic the "pulsed" nature of rivers and estuaries in order to maintain their natural state as dynamic systems.
- Maintain water quality in source waterbodies necessary to support fish populations by monitoring water flows and temperature, sediment loads, and pollution levels.
- Avoid low water levels that strand juveniles and dewater redds. Incorporate juvenile and adult fish passage facilities on all water diversion projects (e.g., fish bypass systems; CDFG and NMFS 2002).

Entrainment and impingement

- Design or modify existing water diversion and impoundment projects to create flow conditions that provide for adequate fish passage, particularly during critical life-history stages.
- Install screens at water diversions in fish-bearing areas, as needed. Please see the NMFS guidelines on fish screening to protect salmonids (WDFW 2000).
- Where predation is an issue, add protective refuge for fish at water diversions.
- Consolidate existing and planned diversions for facility cost savings, including fish protection facilities.

Floodplain Development

Potential adverse impacts of floodplain development

The following factors associated with floodplain development can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, and altered hydrology and geomorphology. Suggested conservation measures related to these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Floodplains are among the world's most altered habitats (Tockner and Stanford 2002) as they are transformed from diverse, broadly interconnected networks of EFH (Junk et al. 1989) into simplified, confined, armored channels, leading to degradation of EFH and subsequent reductions in invertebrate and fish populations and diversity (Sedell and Froggatt 1984, Beechie et al. 1994, Gregory and Bisson 1997, Li and Eddleman 2002). Floodplain development includes diking, draining, and filling to create agricultural fields, pastures, ports, cities, and residential and industrial lands (Sedell and Froggatt 1984, Tomlinson et al. 2011). The construction of dikes, levees, roads, and other infrastructure in floodplains can constrict channel migration and reduce interconnectivity between floodplain and main channel EFH, and among discrete EFH units within main channels (Niering 1988, Furniss et al. 1991, Mitsch and Gosselink 1993, Jones et al. 2000, Beechie et al. 2001, Rapp and Abbe 2003, Tomlinson et al. 2011). Noise from roads and other anthropogenic activities may also impact fish behavior (Holt and Johnston 2015).

Riparian floodplain habitats contribute to the formation and diversity of instream EFH (Bilby and Ward 1991, Chamberlin et al. 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Naiman et al. 1998), buffer water temperatures (Beschta et al. 1987, Clinton 2011), and can stabilize banks, reducing erosion and improving water quality (Hicks et al. 1991, Beschta et al. 2000, Tabacchi et al. 2000). Development and use of the floodplain can disturb these functions, reducing the quality and quantity of EFH (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Beechie et al. 1994).

Large woody debris (LWD) plays an important role in formation and availability of EFH (Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Beechie and Sibley 1997, McHenry et al. 1998, Roni and Quinn 2001), and helps control sediment and flow routing, nutrient cycling, and substrate availability for algae and invertebrates (Bilby 1981, Bilby and Ward 1989, Montgomery et al. 1995, Young 2000, Coe et al. 2009, Clinton 2011, Hodson et al. 2014). Development of floodplains and removal of dead and living wood can reduce the flux of wood into EFH, impairing these functions (Allan 2004, Konrad and Booth 2005, Latterell et al. 2006). Reductions in riverine LWD recruitment can also result in less LWD in the marine nearshore, and such LWD could help moderate microhabitat temperatures and increase abundance of macroinvertebrates (Tonnes 2008).

Riparian wetlands serve as a critical element of EFH (Quinn and Peterson 1996, Feist et al. 2003), and, although laws have been enacted to protect them, these wetlands continue to be lost during floodplain development (Masonis and Bodi 1998, Van Asselen et al. 2013). Loss of wetlands to development can impact water quality, flow regime, habitat structure, and food sources that support fish living in EFH (Knight 2009).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

The integrity of flowing water systems depends largely on the dynamic character of the flow regime and subsequent geomorphic processes (Poff et al. 1997, Poff et al. 2010). Floodplain development and associated flood control and erosion control structures reduce hydrologic and geomorphic processes, resulting in impacts to connectivity, sediment dynamics, vegetation patterns, organic matter recruitment, and hyporheic exchange in EFH (Allan 2004).

Floodplain development can restrict important geomorphic processes that influence channel migration and the creation or maintenance of alcoves, groundwater channels, and side channels. Loss of such habitat functionality and features can reduce the productivity of fish populations (Beechie et al. 1994). Development of the floodplain could alter the frequency and magnitude of peak flows (Stover and Montgomery 2001, White and Greer 2006, Lane 2008) by reducing absorption of floodwater laterally into the now degraded or lost floodplain. Increased flood frequency and magnitude lead to additional demands for flood control projects, such as dams, dredging, or the building of dikes and levees (Rasmussen 1994). Increased peak flows can also mobilize sediments and increase scour depths, reducing embryo survival. Consequently, reduction of floodplain habitat decreases the availability of off-channel refuge habitat, while simultaneously increasing the need for such habitats by exacerbating high flow events. Such developments are costly, as they can compound the negative impacts of floodplain development on EFH (Beechie et al. 2010), and impacts to EFH must be mitigated for.

Potential conservation measures for floodplain development

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of floodplain development on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. These guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of floodplain development on EFH.

General guidelines

- Work with water trust organizations to acquire water rights or establish water banks.
- Minimize adverse effects on floodplains and wetlands from water-dependent uses.
- Complete compensation mitigation for unavoidable floodplain or wetland loss prior to conducting activities that may adversely affect floodplains or wetlands, and perform such mitigation only in areas that have been identified as having long-term viability and functionality.

- Design floodplain and wetland mitigation to meet specific performance objectives for function and value, and monitor to assure these objectives are achieved. Use mitigation and enhancement ratios that are sufficient to attain a net gain in acreage, as well as in function and value.
- Focus resources on conservation and restoration of upland or urban habitats on private and public lands (Burnett et al. 2007).

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Determine cumulative effects of all past and current floodplain and wetland alterations before planning activities that further alter wetlands and floodplains.
- Promote awareness and use of USDA's wetland and conservation reserve programs (also, any local conservation programs) to conserve and restore wetland and floodplain habitat.
- Incentivize restoration of degraded floodplains and wetlands, including reconnecting rivers with their associated floodplains and wetlands, and invasive species management.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Avoid floodplain development, and mitigate unavoidable floodplain losses to existing floodplain functions and processes, including water quality, water storage capacity, and lateral channel movement.
- Minimize alteration of floodplains and wetlands for non-water-dependent uses.

Land Clearing and Impervious Surfaces

Potential adverse impacts of land clearing and impervious surfaces

The following factors associated with land clearing and impervious surfaces can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, and release of contaminants. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Riparian habitats contribute to the formation and diversity of instream EFH (Bilby and Ward 1991, Chamberlin et al. 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Naiman et al. 1998), buffer water temperatures (Beschta et al. 1987, Clinton 2011), and can stabilize banks, reducing erosion and improving water quality in EFH (Hicks et al. 1991, Beschta et al. 2000, Tabacchi et al. 2000). Loss and alteration of riparian habitats can disturb these functions, reducing the availability and functionality of EFH (Beechie et al. 1994; Lawrence et al. 2014). Land clearing and impervious surfaces eliminate or impair EFH by altering hydrology, increasing sedimentation and pollution, causing bank destabilization, increasing channelization, and reducing or eliminating floodplain interconnectivity (Allan 2004). Factors associated with land clearing and impervious surfaces can reduce fish production (Regetz 2003), alter fish assemblages (May et al. 1997, Wang et al. 2001), and decrease invertebrate abundance (Morley and Karr 2002).

LWD plays an important role in formation and availability of EFH (Bilby and Ward 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Beechie and Sibley 1997, McHenry et al. 1998, Roni and Quinn 2001), and helps control sediment and flow routing, nutrient cycling, and substrate habitat availability for algae and invertebrates (Bilby 1981, Bilby and Ward 1991, Montgomery et al. 1995, Young 2000, Coe et al. 2009, Clinton 2011, Hodson et al. 2014). Activities such as land clearing and development of impervious surfaces near freshwater and nearshore ecosystems can reduce the flux of wood into EFH, thereby impairing these important functions (Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Allan 2004, Coe et al. 2009). Reductions in riverine LWD recruitment can also result in less LWD in the nearshore. LWD in nearshore EFH could help moderate microhabitat temperatures and increase abundance of macroinvertebrates (Tonnes 2008).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Land clearing and construction of impervious surfaces can restrict important geomorphic and hydrologic processes (Poff et al. 2010) that influence channel migration and the creation or maintenance of alcoves, groundwater channels, and side channels. Loss of such habitat functionality and features can reduce the productivity of fish populations (Beechie et al. 1994). Land clearing and impervious surfaces alter the frequency and magnitude of peak flows and floods (Stover and Montgomery 2001, White and Greer 2006) by reducing absorption of floodwater laterally into the floodplain. Increased flood frequency and magnitude lead to further demand for flood-control projects, such as dams, dredging, or the building of dikes and levees (Rasmussen 1994). Such developments are costly, as they can compound the negative impacts of land clearing and impervious surfaces on EFH (Beechie et al. 2010), and impacts to EFH must be mitigated for.

Instream and riparian habitat morphology (Tabacchi et al. 1998) and survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005) can be affected by volume and timing of stream discharge. Presence of riparian vegetation influences hydrological processes by controlling runoff, increasing water uptake and storage, and improving water quality (Hicks et al. 1991, Tabacchi et al. 2000). Canopy interception and transpiration reduces the total volume of water infiltrating topsoil, reducing runoff during small storms (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Rinaldi and Nardi 2013). During land-clearing activities, riparian forests are often removed, reducing or eliminating these functions (Allan 2004), and impervious infrastructure is often built, including roads, bridges, buildings, and parking lots. Increases in urban and residential land cover are correlated closely with decreases in forest cover (Gray et al. 2013), and impervious surfaces, such as parking lots and other infrastructure, can cover up to 100% of the land in urban areas (Whiley 2009).

Impervious surfaces affect hydrologic and geomorphic processes (Furniss et al. 1991) and lead to increased frequency and intensity of floods, erosion of streambeds, impacts to water quality, and displacement of sediments, impacting organisms inhabiting EFH (Allan 2004). CWP (2003) found that impervious surfaces associated with urbanization: a) caused increased runoff volume, peak discharge, and magnitude, frequency, and duration of bankfull flows; b) rendered flashier and less predictable flows; and c) decreased base flows. Hydrologic functioning can be significantly degraded when impervious surfaces cover 10% of the watershed (Arnold and Gibbons 1996, Paul and Meyer 2001), while impervious coverage ≥25% results in severe degradation of EFH (CWP 2003). Across a range of watersheds in the United States, Caldwell et al. (2012) found that the presence of impervious cover increased stream flows by about 10%. Impacts of impervious surfaces on hydrology and geomorphology may be most pronounced in urban areas because of the vast area of land covered by these surfaces (Konrad et al. 2005, White and Greer 2006).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Land clearing and impervious surfaces increase the amount of fine sediments that are transported and deposited in downstream EFH, impacting fish and their prey (Wood and Armitage 1997, Kemp et al. 2011). Excessive transport or deposition of fine sediment fills interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damages or clogs gill membranes of aquatic organisms, reduces benthic production, and decreases the area of available EFH (Wagener and LaPerriere 1985, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Brown et al. 1998, Smith and Wegner 2001). Increased sedimentation can alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995), and increased turbidity can impair predator avoidance of fish. Conversely, feeding may increase (Gregory 1993) while predation by piscivores could decrease (Gregory and Levings 1998) in moderately turbid water. It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on invertebrates and fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Release of contaminants

Runoff from impervious surfaces is the most widespread source of water pollution in the United States (USEPA 1995). Pollutants associated with land clearing and impervious surfaces include sediment from construction, oil and heavy metals from vehicles, road salts, bacteria from failing septic systems, and fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides (Groefman et al. 2002, Walsh et al. 2005). The release of such chemicals affects water quality in EFH (Norris et al. 1991, Collier et al. 1998, Allan 2004) and physiology and survival of fish (Heintz et al. 2000, Sandahl et al. 2007). Use of fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides, and spill or leaching of petroleum products, can harm EFH and food web processes (ASMFC 1992, Stehr et al. 2009, Macneale et al. 2010). While pesticides and herbicides currently in use may not be released at levels that are acutely harmful to fish (Lisker et al. 2011, King et al. 2013), they may have chronic or indirect effects that ultimately impact fish populations (Macneale et al. 2010). Moreover, those chemicals used in the past, such as dichlorodiphenyl trichloroethane (DDT), are highly deleterious and can persist in the environment for years after application (Gould et al. 1994). Petroleum-based products (e.g., fuel, oil, hydraulic fluids) are toxic to fish and their food webs, but toxicity depends on concentration, exposure time, and other stressors (e.g., Neff 1985). It is important to note that contaminant concentrations vary widely among land types with similar amounts of impervious surface coverage (Allan 2004).

Potential conservation measures for land clearing and impervious surfaces

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of land clearing and impervious surfaces on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. These guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of land clearing and impervious surfaces on EFH.

General guidelines

- Work with water trust organizations to acquire water rights or establish water banks.
- Implement comprehensive planning for watershed protection, and avoid or minimize filling and building in coastal and riparian areas affecting EFH. Development sites should be planned to minimize clearing and grading, cut-and-fill, and new impervious surfaces.
- Focus resources on conservation and restoration of upland or urban habitats on private and public lands (Burnett et al. 2007).
- Implement widespread application of innovative approaches to drainage design (Walsh et al. 2005).

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Protect and restore vegetated buffer zones of appropriate width along streams, lakes, and wetlands that include or influence EFH (Wang et al. 2001).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Remove obsolete impervious surfaces, such as abandoned parking lots and buildings, from riparian and shoreline areas, and reestablish water regime, wetlands, and native vegetation.
- Use pervious, not impervious, materials.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Implement best management practices (BMPs) for sediment control during construction and maintenance operations. These can include: avoiding ground-disturbing activities during the wet season; minimizing exposure time of disturbed lands; using erosion prevention and sediment control methods; minimizing the spatial extent of vegetation disturbance; maintaining buffers of vegetation around wetlands, streams, and drainageways; and avoiding building activities in areas with steep slopes and areas prone to mass wasting events with highly erodible soils. Use of structural BMPs (e.g., sediment ponds, sediment traps, vegetated swales) or other facilities designed to slow water runoff and trap sediment and nutrients is recommended.

Release of contaminants

- Increase requirements or incentives for use of biofiltration features to prevent lethal stormwater impacts to fish (e.g., coho salmon). These must increasingly be installed along roads and road drainage systems (Spromberg et al. 2015). Possible features include permeable pavers, bioretention swales, silt fencing, impervious containment areas, stormwater wet ponds, rain gardens, and check dams, among others (WDOE 2012).
- Allow zero net increase in annual loading of stormwater pollutants into EFH (i.e., TSS, total and dissolved Cu and Zn). This can be accomplished by retrofitting approximately 3–4 times as much existing impervious surface (IS) as the proposed new IS. Pollutant concentrations below the biological effects thresholds:
    - Dissolved Cu: 2.0 µg/L (Sandahl et al. 2007) over background levels of 3.0 µg/L or less (Baldwin et al. 2003).
    - Dissolved Zn: 5.6 µg/L over background zinc concentrations between 3.0 µg/L and 13 µg/L (Sprague 1968).

  Zero net increase can be accomplished by infiltrating or dispersing the majority of the treated stormwater such that the volume and frequency of discharges affect only a few feet of in-water habitat in the vicinity of the point of discharge. This must be demonstrated via dilution analysis, utilizing flow and discharge assumptions that are conservative for listed fish.

Stormwater and Urban Runoff

Potential adverse impacts of stormwater and urban runoff

The following factors associated with stormwater and urban runoff can impact EFH and are described briefly below: altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, and release of contaminants. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

The ecological integrity of flowing water systems depends largely on the dynamic character of the flow regime and subsequent geomorphic processes (Poff et al. 1997, Poff et al. 2010). Instream and riparian habitat morphology (Tabacchi et al. 1998), and survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005) can be affected by volume and timing of stream discharge. Stormwater and urban runoff are characterized by increased frequency and magnitude in peak flows (Furniss et al. 1991, Luchetti and Feurstenburg 1993, Allan 2004, White and Greer 2006), and in combination with habitat alterations (i.e., levees), lateral absorption of floodwater into the floodplain can be reduced, compounding the impacts of increased magnitude and frequency of flood events (Stover and Montgomery 2001). Such negative feedbacks lead to increased demand for costly flood-control projects (Rasmussen 1994), including dams, dredging, or the building of additional dikes and levees. These projects further compound the negative impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH (Beechie et al. 2010), and these impacts must be mitigated for.

Presence of riparian vegetation influences hydrological processes by controlling runoff, increasing water uptake and storage, and improving water quality (Hicks et al. 1991, Tabacchi et al. 2000). Canopy interception and transpiration reduces the total volume of water infiltrating the topsoil, reducing runoff during small storms (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Rinaldi and Nardi 2013). Increases in urban and residential land cover are correlated with decreases in forest cover (Gray et al. 2013) and increases in stormwater and urban runoff contributions to EFH (Allan 2004; Whiley 2009). Much urban and residential land is often covered by impervious surfaces; water flows along roads and other infrastructure, ultimately flowing into EFH. Hydrologic functioning can be significantly degraded when land is 10% covered by impervious material (Arnold and Gibbons 1996; Paul and Meyer 2001), and impervious coverage of 25% or more results in severe degradation of EFH (CWP 2003). Across a range of watersheds in the United States, Caldwell et al. (2012) found that the presence of impervious cover increased stream flows by about 10%. Impacts of impervious surfaces on hydrology and geomorphology may be most pronounced in urban areas because of the vast area of land covered by impervious surfaces (Konrad and Booth 2005, White and Greer 2006).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Stormwater and urban runoff can cause increased sedimentation in EFH (Corbett et al. 1997). Excessive transport or deposition of fine sediment can fill interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damage or clog gill membranes of aquatic organisms, reduce benthic production, and decrease the area of available EFH

(Wagener and LaPerriere 1985, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Brown et al. 1998, Smith and Wegner 2001, Suttle et al. 2004). Increased sedimentation can alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995); impact fish emergence, juvenile densities, and winter carrying capacity; and increase predation on fish (Koski 1981, Chapman 1988, Scrivener and Brownlee 1989, Young et al. 1991). Increased turbidity can impair predator avoidance of fish; however, feeding may increase (Gregory 1993) while predation by piscivores could decrease in moderately turbid water (Gregory and Levings 1998). It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Release of contaminants

Contaminants flow into EFH during rainfall and storm events through runoff and stormwater systems (Schueler et al. 2009; for more complete review see Foster et al. 2014). Pavement and many paving compounds used in road construction and surfacing contain high levels of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, which can be toxic to aquatic life, that can persist in the environment for decades. Friction between road and tire causes surface erosion that releases asphalt, rubber material, automotive fluids and fuel, and metals from brake linings, which concentrate on or near road surfaces and are eventually flushed into stream and marine EFH (Grosenheider 2005, Simon and Sobieraj 2006, Weiss et al. 2008, Tian et al. 2021). Other pollutants commonly found in stormwater and urban runoff can impact water chemistry, and include sediment from construction, oil and metals from vehicles, road salts, bacteria from failing septic systems, and fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides (Neff 1985, Groefman et al. 2002, Walsh et al. 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007).

The release of such chemicals impacts water quality in EFH (Norris et al. 1991, Collier et al. 1998, Allan 2004, Grosenheider 2005), impairing physiology and survival of aquatic organisms (Dethloff et al. 2001, Meador et al. 2010, Feist et al. 2011, Scholz et al. 2011) and altering food webs (ASMFC 1992, USEPA 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007, Stehr et al. 2009, Macneale et al. 2010). Stormwater and urban runoff contamination can lead to reduced primary production (Johnston et al. 2014) and alteration of cellular function and biochemical mechanisms (Poston 2001, Sethajintanin et al. 2004, Meador et al. 2010, Scholz et al. 2011, Jenkins et al. 2014, Melwani et al. 2014). For example, copper found in auto brake pads disrupts neurotoxic and olfactory receptors that control homing, predator avoidance, and spawning behavior in fish (Baldwin et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014).

Potential conservation measures for stormwater and urban runoff

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. These guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH.

General guidelines

- Work with water trust organizations to acquire water rights or establish water banks.
- Incentivize allocation of resources to conservation and restoration of upland or urban habitats on private and public lands (Burnett et al. 2007).
- Implement widespread application of innovative approaches to drainage design (Walsh et al. 2005).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Monitor water-quality discharges following National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System requirements from all discharge points (including municipal stormwater systems, desalinization plants, and irrigation ditches).
- Establish conservation guidelines for water-use permits, and encourage the purchase or lease of water rights and the use of water to conserve or augment instream flows in accordance with state and federal water law.
- Manage stormwater to replicate the natural hydrologic cycle, maintaining natural infiltration and runoff rates to the maximum extent practicable.

Release of contaminants

- Bioinfiltration features prevent lethal stormwater impacts to fish (e.g., coho salmon), and should be installed along roads and road drainage systems (Spromberg et al. 2015). Possible features include permeable pavers, bioretention swales, silt fencing, impervious containment areas, stormwater wetponds, raingardens, and check dams, among others (WDOE 2012).
- Allow zero net increase in annual loading of stormwater pollutants into EFH (i.e., TSS, total and dissolved Cu and Zn). This can be accomplished by retrofitting approximately 3 to 4 times as much existing impervious surface (IS) as the proposed new IS. Pollutant concentrations below the biological effects thresholds:
    - Dissolved Cu: 2.0 µg/L (Sandahl et al. 2007) over background levels of 3.0 µg/L or less (Baldwin et al. 2003).
    - Dissolved Zn: 5.6 µg/L over background zinc concentrations between 3.0 µg/L and 13 µg/L (Sprague 1968).

  This can be accomplished by infiltrating or dispersing the majority of the treated stormwater such that the volume and frequency of discharges affect only a few feet of in-water habitat in the vicinity of the point of discharge. This must be demonstrated via dilution analysis, utilizing flow and discharge assumptions that are conservative for listed fish.
- Implement management measures developed for controlling pollution from runoff in coastal areas to all watersheds affecting salmon EFH.
- Establish total maximum daily loads and develop appropriate management plans to attain management goals.
- Allocate increasing amounts of resources to complete existing and future total maximum daily loads (TMDLs) established on waterbodies designated as water quality-limited in EFH habitat.
- Establish and update pollution prevention plans, spill control practices, and spill control equipment for the handling or transporting of toxic substances in EFH. Consider bonds or other damage compensation mechanisms to cover clean-up, restoration, and mitigation costs.
- Actively reduce the size of mixing zones that discharge to coastal areas and watersheds.

- Utilize biological effects thresholds (e.g., those recently established for dissolved copper) for transportation facilities that discharge to EFH habitat.
- Design and install proper wastewater treatment systems. Locate them away from open waters, wetlands, and floodplains.
- Use the best available technologies in upgrading wastewater systems to avoid combined sewer overflow problems and chlorinated sewage discharges into rivers, estuaries, and the ocean.
- Where vegetated swales are not feasible, install oil/water separators to treat runoff from impervious surfaces in areas adjacent to EFH. Ensure that oil/water separators are regularly maintained such that they do not become clogged and function properly on a continuing basis.

References

Abbe, T. B., and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Large woody debris jams, channel hydraulics and habitat formation in large rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 12:201–221.

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Arnold, C. L., and C. J. Gibbons. 1996. Impervious surface coverage: The emergence of a key environmental indicator. Journal of American Planning Association 62:243–258.

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 1992. Fishery management plan for inshore stocks of winter flounder. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Baldwin, D. H., J. F. Sandahl, J. S. Labenia, and N. L. Scholz. 2003. Sublethal effects of copper on coho salmon: Impacts on non-overlapping receptor pathways in the peripheral olfactory nervous system. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 22:2266–2274.

Baldwin, D. H., C. P. Tatara, and N. L. Scholz. 2011. Copper-induced olfactory toxicity in salmon and steelhead: Extrapolation across species and rearing environments. Aquatic Toxicology 101:295–297.

Beechie, T., E. Beamer, and L. Wasserman. 1994. Estimating coho salmon rearing habitat and smolt production losses in a large river basin, and implications for habitat restoration. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 14:797–811.

Beechie, T. J., B. D. Collins, and G. R. Pess. 2001. Holocene and recent geomorphic processes, land use and salmonids habitat in two north Puget Sound river basins. Pages 37–54 *in* J. B. Dorava, D. R. Montgomery, F. Fitzpatrick, and B. Palcsak, editors. Geomorphic processes and riverine habitat. Water Science and Application, volume 4. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

Beechie, T. J., D. A. Sear, J. D. Olden, G. R. Pess, J. M. Buffington, H. Moir, P. Roni, and M. M. Pollock. 2010. Process-based principles for restoring river ecosystems. BioScience 60:209–222.

Beechie, T. J., and T. H. Sibley. 1997. Relationships between channel characteristics, woody debris, and fish habitat in northwestern Washington streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:217–229.

Beschta, R. L., R. E. Bilby, G. W. Brown, L. B. Holtby, and T. D. Hofstra. 1987. Stream temperature and aquatic habitat: Fisheries and forestry interactions. Pages 191–232 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Beschta, R. L., M. R. Pyles, A. E. Skaugset, and C. G. Surfleet. 2000. Peakflow responses to forest practices in the western cascades of Oregon, USA. Journal of Hydrology 233:102–120.

Bilby, R. E. 1981. Role of organic debris dams in regulating the export of dissolved and particulate matter from a forested watershed. Ecology 62:1234–1243.

Bilby, R. E., and L. A. Mollot. 2008. Effect of changing land use patterns on the distribution of coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in the Puget Sound region. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 65:2138–2148.

Bilby, R. E., and J. W. Ward. 1989. Changes in characteristics and function of woody debris with increasing size of streams in Western Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 118:368–378.

Bilby, R. E., and J. W. Ward. 1991. Characteristics and function of large woody debris in streams draining old-growth, clear-cut, and second-growth forests in southwestern Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 48: 2499–2508.

Bischel, H. N., J. E. Lawrence, B. J. Halaburka, M. H. Plumlee, A. S. Bawazir, J. P. King, J. E. McCray, V. H. Resh, and R. G. Luthy. 2013. Renewing urban streams with recycled water for streamflow augmentation: Hydrologic, water quality, and ecosystem services management. Environmental Engineering Science 30:455–479.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Booth, D. B., and C. R. Jackson. 1987. Urbanization of aquatic systems: Degradation thresholds, stormwater detection, and the limits of mitigation. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 33:1077–1090.

Booth, D. B., J. R. Karr, S. Schauman, C. P. Konrad, S. A. Morley, M. G. Larson, and S. J. Burges. 2004. Reviving urban streams: Land use, hydrology, biology, and human behavior. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 40:1351–1364.

Bosch, J. M., and J. D. Hewlett. 1982. A review of catchment experiments to determine the effect of vegetation changes on water yield and evapotranspiration. Journal of Hydrology 55:3–23.

Bradford, M. J., and J. R. Irvine. 2000. Land use, fishing, climate change, and the decline of Thompson River, British Columbia, coho salmon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57:13–16.

Brown, A. V., M. M. Lyttle, and K. B. Brown. 1998. Impacts of gravel mining on gravel bed streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:979–994.

Brown, D. G., C. Polsky, P. Bolstad, S. D. Brody, D. Hulse, R. Kroh, T. R. Loveland, and A. Thomson. 2014. Chapter 13: Land Use and Land Cover Change. Pages 318–332 *in* J. M. Melillo, T. C. Richmond, and G. W. Yohe, editors. Climate Change Impacts in the United States: The Third National Climate Assessment. U.S. Global Change Research Program. DOI: 10.7930/J05Q4T1Q

Burnett, K. M., G. H. Reeves, D. J. Miller, S. Clarke, K. Vance-Borland, and K. Christiansen. 2007. Distribution of salmon-habitat potential relative to landscape characteristics and implications for conservation. Ecological Applications 17:66–80.

Caldwell, P. V., G. Sun, S. G. McNulty, E. C. Cohen, and J. A. Moore Myers. 2012. Impacts of impervious cover, water withdrawals, and climate change on river flows in the conterminous US. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 16:2839–2857.

CDFG (California Department of Fish and Game) and NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2002. Guidelines for maintaining instream flows to protect fisheries resources downstream of water diversion in mid-California coastal streams. California Department of Fish and Game and National Marine Fisheries Service, Sacramento, California.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chamberlin, T. W., R. D. Harr, and F. H. Everest. 1991. Timber harvest, silviculture, and watershed processes. Pages 181–296 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Chang, H. 2007. Comparative streamflow characteristics in urbanizing basins in the Portland metropolitan area, Oregon, USA. Hydrological Processes 21:211–222.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Christie, D., E. Allen, and G. J. Jobsis. 1993. Diversions. Pages 181–186 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Clinton, B. D. 2011. Stream water responses to timber harvest: Riparian buffer width effectiveness. Forest Ecology and Management 261:979–988.

Coe, H. J., P. M. Kiffney, G. R. Pess, K. K. Kloehn, and M. L. McHenry. 2009. Periphyton and invertebrate response to wood placement in large Pacific coastal rivers. River Research and Applications 25:1025–1035.

Collier, T. K., L. L. Johnson, C. M. Stehr, M. S. Myers, and J. E. Stein. 1998. A comprehensive assessment of the impacts of contaminants on fish from an urban waterway. Marine Environmental Research 46:243–247.

Corbett, C. W., M. Wahl, D. E. Porter, D. Edwards, and C. Moise. 1997. Nonpoint source runoff modeling: A comparison of a forested watershed and an urban watershed on the South Carolina coast. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 213:133–149.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

CWP (Center for Watershed Protection). 2003. Impacts of impervious cover on aquatic systems. Center for Watershed Protection, Elliott City, Maryland.

Deegan, L. A., and R. N. Buchsbaum. 2005. The effect of habitat loss and degradation on fisheries. Pages 67–96 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The Decline in Fisheries Resources in New England: Evaluating the Impact of Overfishing, Contamination, and Habitat Degradation. Publication No. MITSG 05–5. MIT Sea Grant College Program, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

DeGasperi, C. L., H. B. Berge, K. R. Whiting, J. J. Burkey, J. L. Cassin, and R. R. Fuerstenberg. 2009. Linking hydrologic alteration to biological impairment in urbanizing streams of the Puget lowland, Washington, USA. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 45:512–533.

Deitch, M. J., G. M. Kondolf, and A. M. Merenlender. 2009. Hydrologic impacts of small-scale instream diversions for frost and heat prevention in the California wine country. River Research and Applications 25:118–134.

Dethloff, G. M., H. C. Bailey, and K. J. Maier. 2001. Effects of dissolved copper on select hematological, biochemical, and immunological parameters of wild rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40:371–380.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Ellsworth, C. M., T. J. Tyler, and S. P. VanderKooi. 2010. Using spatial, seasonal, and diel drift patterns of larval Lost River suckers *Deltistes luxatus* (Cypriniformes: Catostomidae) and shortnose suckers *Chasmistes brevirostris* (Cypriniformes: Catostomidae) to help identify a site for water withdrawal structure on the Williamson River, Oregon. Environmental Biology of Fishes 89:47–57.

Fajen, O. F., and J. B. Layzer. 1993. Agricultural practices. Pages 257–267 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, P. Arnold, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholtz. 2011. Landscape ecotoxicology of coho salmon spawner mortality in urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e23424.

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, D. H. Baldwin, J. A. Spromberg, S. E. Damm, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2017. Roads to ruin: Conservation threats to a sentinel species across an urban gradient. Ecological Applications 27:2382–2396.

Feist, B. E., E. A. Steel, G .R. Pess, and R. E. Bilby. 2003. The influence of scale on salmon habitat restoration priorities. Animal Conservation 6:271–282.

Fitch, R., T. Theodose and M. Dionne. 2009. Relationships among upland development, nitrogen, and plant community composition in a Maine salt marsh. Wetlands 29:1179–1188.

Flemer, D. A., and M. A. Champ. 2006. What is the future fate of estuaries given nutrient over-enrichment, freshwater diversion and low flows? Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:247–258.

Foster, E., L. R. Curtis, and D. Gundersen. 2014. Toxic contaminants in the urban aquatic environment. Pages 123–144 *in* J. A. Yeakley, K. G. Maas-Hebner, and R. M. Hughes, editors. Wild salmonids in the urbanizing Pacific Northwest. Springer, New York.

Furniss, M. J., T. D. Roelofs, and C. S. Kee. 1991. Road construction and maintenance. Pages 297–323 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Göthe, E., P. Wiberg-Larsen, E. A. Kristensen, A. Baattrup-Pedersen, L. Sandin, and N. Friberg. 2015. Impacts of habitat degradation and stream spatial location on biodiversity in a disturbed riverine landscape. Biodiversity and Conservation 24:1423–1441.

Gould, E., P. E. Clark, and F. P. Thurberg. 1994. Pollutant effects on demersal fishes. Pages 30–41 *in* R. W. Langton, J. B. Pearce, and J. A. Gibson, editors. Selected living resources, habitat conditions, and human perturbations of the Gulf of Maine: Environmental and ecological considerations for fishery management. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-106.

Gray, A. N., A. A. Herstrom, G. J. Lettman, N. McKay, and J. L. Thompson. 2013. Land use change on non-federal land in Oregon and Washington. Oregon Department of Forestry, Salem, Oregon.

Gregory, K. J. 2006. The human role in changing river channels. Geomorphology 79:172–191.

Gregory, R. S. 1993. Effect of turbidity on the predator avoidance behavior of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:241–246.

Gregory, R. S., and C. D. Levings. 1998. Turbidity reduces predation on migrating juvenile Pacific salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:275–285.

Gregory, S. V., and P. A. Bisson. 1997. Degradation and loss of anadromous salmonid habitat in the Pacific Northwest. Pages 277–314 *in* D. J. Stouder, P. A. Bisson, and R. J. Naiman, editors. Pacific Salmon & their Ecosystems. Springer, Boston. DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4615-6375-4

Grimaldo, L. F., T. Sommer, N. Van Ark, G. Jones, E. Holland, P. B. Moyle, B. Herbold, and P. Smith. 2009. Factors affecting fish entrainment into massive water diversions in a tidal freshwater estuary: Can fish losses be managed? North American Journal of Fisheries Management 29:1253–1270.

Groefman, P. M., N. J. Boulware, W. C. Zipperer, R. V. Pouyat, L. E. Band, and M. F. Colosimo. 2002. Soil nitrogen cycle processes in urban riparian zones. Environmental Science & Technology 36:4547–4552.

Grosenheider, K. E., P. R. Bloom, T. R. Halbach, and M. R. Johnson. 2005. A review of the current literature regarding polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in asphalt pavement. MN/DOT Contract No. 81655. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Heintz, R. A., S. D. Rice, A. C. Wertheimer, R. F. Bradshaw, F. P. Thrower, J. E. Joyce, and J. W. Short. 2000. Delayed effects on growth and marine survival of pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* after exposure to crude oil during embryonic development. Marine Ecology Progress Series 208:205–216.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hodson, A. K., H. Ferris, A. D. Hollander, and L. E. Jackson. 2014. Nematode food webs associated with native perennial plant species and soil nutrient pools in California riparian oak woodlands. Geoderma 228–229:182–191.

Holt, D. E., and C. E. Johnston. 2015. Traffic noise masks acoustic signals of freshwater stream fish. Biological Conservation 187:27–33.

Jenkins, J. A., H. M. Olivier, R. O. Draugelis-Dale, B. E. Eilts, L. Torres, R. Patino, E. Nilsen, and S. L. Goodbred. 2014. Assessing reproductive and endocrine parameters in male largescale suckers (*Catostomus macrocheilus*) along a contaminant gradient in the lower Columbia River, USA. Science of the Total Environment 484:365–378.

Johnston, E. L., M. Mayer-Pinto, and T. P. Crowe. 2014. Chemical contaminant effects on marine ecosystem functioning. Journal of Applied Ecology 52:140–149.

Jones, J. A., F. J. Swanson, B. C. Wemple, and K. U. Snyder. 2000. Effects of roads on hydrology, geomorphology, and disturbance patches in stream networks. Conservation Biology 14:76–85.

Junk, W. J., P. B. Bayley, and R. E. Sparks. 1989. The flood pulse concept in river-floodplain systems. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, Proceedings of the International Large River Symposium 106:110–127.

Kanno, Y., and J. C. Vokoun. 2010. Evaluating effects of water withdrawals and impoundments on fish assemblages in southern New England streams, USA. Fisheries Management and Ecology 17:272–283.

Kaushal, S. S., G. E. Likens, N. A. Jaworski, M. L. Pace, A. M. Sides, D. Seekell, K. T. Belt, D. H. Secor, and R. L. Wingate. 2012. Rising stream and river temperatures in the United States. Frontiers in Ecology and Environment 8:461–466.

Kemp, P., D. Sear, A. Collins, P. Naden, and I. Jones. 2011. Impacts of fine sediment on riverine fish. Hydrological Processes 25:1800–1821.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2002a. Effects of freshwater flow on abundance of estuarine organisms: Physical effects or trophic linkages? Marine Ecology Progress Series 243:39–55.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2002b. Physical, biological, and management responses to variable freshwater flow into the San Francisco Estuary. Estuaries 25:1275–1290.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2008. Losses of Sacramento River Chinook salmon and delta smelt to entrainment in water diversions in the Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science 6(2):1–27.

King, K. A., C. E. Grue, J. M. Grassley, and R. J. Fisk. 2013. Pesticides in urban streams and early life stages of Pacific coho salmon. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 32: 920–931.

Knight, K. 2009. Land use planning for salmon, steelhead and trout. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Konrad, C. P., and D. B. Booth. 2005. Hydrologic changes in urban streams and their ecological significance. American Fisheries Society Symposium 47:157–177.

Konrad, C. P., D. B. Booth, and S. J. Burges. 2005. Effects of urban development in the Puget Sound lowland, Washington, on interannual streamflow patterns: Consequences for channel form and streambed disturbance. Water Resources Research 41(7):W07009. DOI: 10.1029/2005WR004097

Koski, K. V. 1981. Survival and quality of two stocks of chum salmon *Oncorhynchus keta* from egg deposition to emergence. 2nd ICES (International Council for the Exploration of the Sea) Symposium on the Early Life History of Fish: Recent Studies, 2–5 April 1979. Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Labbe, T. R., and K. D. Fausch. 2000. Dynamics of intermittent stream habitat regulate persistence of a threatened fish at multiple scales. Ecological Applications 10:1774–1791.

Lake, P. S. 2003. Ecological effects of perturbation by drought in flowing waters. Freshwater Biology 48:1161–1172.

Lane, S. N. 2008. Climate change and the summer 2007 floods in the U.K. Geography 93:91–97.

Latterell, J. J., J. S. Bechtold, T. C. O'Keefe, R. Van Pelt, and R. J. Naiman. 2006. Dynamic patch mosaics and channel movement in an unconfined river valley of the Olympic Mountains. Freshwater Biology 51:523–544.

Lawrence, D. J., J. D. Olden, and C. E. Torgersen. 2012. Spatiotemporal patterns and habitat associations of smallmouth bass (*Micropterus dolomieu*) invading salmon-rearing habitat. Freshwater Biology 57:1929–1946.

Lawrence, D. J., B. Stewart-Koster, J. D. Olden, A. S. Ruesch, C. E. Torgersen, J. J. Lawler, D. P. Butcher, and J. K. Crown. 2014. The interactive effects of climate change, riparian management, and a nonnative predator on stream-rearing salmon. Ecological Applications 24:895–912.

Li, M. H., and K. E. Eddleman. 2002. Biotechnical engineering as an alternative to traditional engineering methods: A biotechnical streambank stabilization design approach. Landscape and Urban Planning 60:225–242.

Lisker, E. B., M. P. Ensminger, S. L. Gill, and K. S. Goh. 2011. Detections of eleven organophosphorus insecticides and one herbicide threatening Pacific salmonids, *Oncorhynchus* spp., in California, 1991–2010. Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 87:355–360.

Lohse, K. A., D. A. Newburn, J. J. Opperman, and A. M. Merenlender. 2008. Forecasting relative impacts of land use on anadromous fish habitat to guide conservation planning. Ecological Applications 18:467–482.

Lucchetti, G., and R. Fuerstenberg. 1993. Management of coho salmon habitat in urbanizing landscapes of King County, Washington, U.S.A. Pages 308–317 *in* L. Berg and P. W. Delaney, editors. Proceedingsof the 1992 Coho Workshop, Nanaimo, British Columbia. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, Canada.

MacKenzie, C. L., Jr. 2005. Removal of sea lettuce, *Ulva* spp., in estuaries to improve the environments for invertebrates, fish, wading birds, and eelgrass, *Zostera marina*. Marine Fisheries Review 67:1–8.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

Masonis, R. J., and F. L. Bodi. 1998. River law. Pages 553–571 *in* R. J. Naiman and R.E. Bilby, editors. River ecology and management: Lessons from the Pacific coastal ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, New York.

May, C., R. Horner, J. Karr, B. Mar, and E. Welch. 1997. Effects of urbanization on small streams in the Puget Sound lowland ecoregion. Watershed Protection Techniques 2:483–494.

McCarthy, S. G., J. P. Incardona, and N. L. Scholz. 2008. Coastal storms, toxic runoff, and the sustainable conservation of fish and fisheries. American Fisheries Society Symposium 64:7–27.

McClure, M. M., S. M. Carlson, T. J. Beechie, G. R. Pess, J. C. Jorgensen, S. M. Sogard, S. E. Sultan, D. M. Holzer, J. Travis, B. L. Sanderson, M. E. Power, and R. W. Carmichael. 2008. Evolutionary consequences of habitat loss for Pacific anadromous salmonids. Evolutionary Applications 1:300–318.

McHenry, M. L., E. Schott, R. H. Conrad, and G. B. Grette. 1998. Changes in the quantity and characteristics of large woody debris in streams of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington, USA. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55:1395–1407.

McIntyre, J. K., D. H. Baldwin, D. A. Beauchamp, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Low-level copper exposures increase visibility and vulnerability of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout predators. Ecological Applications 25:1460–1471.

McKay, S., and A. J. King. 2006. Potential ecological effects of water extraction in small, unregulated streams. River Research and Applications 22:1023–1037.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Melwani, A. R., D. Gregorio, Y. Jin, M. Stephenson, G. Ichikawa, E. Siegel, D. Crane, G. Lauenstein, and J. A. Davis. 2014. Mussel watch update: Long-term trends in selected contaminants from coastal California, 1977–2010. Marine Pollution Bulletin 81:291–302.

Miller, J. R., and R. J. Hobbs. 2002. Conservation where people live and work. Conservation Biology 16:330–337.

Mitsch, W. J., and J. G. Gosselink. 1993. Wetlands, second edition. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

Montgomery, D. R., J. M. Buffington, J. M. Smith and G. Pess. 1995. Pool spacing in forest channels. Water Resources Research 31:1097–1105.

Morley S. A., and J. R. Karr. 2002. Assessing and restoring the health of urban streams in the Puget Sound Basin. Conservation Biology 16:1498–1509.

Moyle, P. B., and J. A. Israel. 2005. Untested assumptions: Effectiveness of screening diversions for conservation of fish populations. Fisheries 30:20–28.

Mussen, T. D., D. Cocherell, J. B. Poletto, J. S. Reardon, Z. Hockett, A. Ercan, H. Bandeh, M. L. Kavvas, J. J. Chech, Jr., and N. A. Fangue. 2014. Unscreened water-diversion pipes pose an entrainment risk to the threatened green sturgeon, *Acipenser medirostris*. PLOS ONE 9:e86321.

Naiman, R. E., K. L. Fetherston, S. J. McKay, and J. Chen. 1998. Riparian forests. Pages 289–323 *in* R. J. Naiman and R. E. Bilby, editors. River ecology and management: Lessons from the Pacific coastal ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Neff, J. M. 1985. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 416–454 *in* G. M. Rand and S.R. Petrocelli, editors. Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. MacDonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:72–82.

Nichols, F. H., J. E. Cloern, and S. N. Luoma. 1986. The modification of an estuary. Science 231:567–573.

Niering, W. A. 1988. The Audubon Society nature guides: Wetlands. Alfred A. Knopf, New York.

Norris, L. A., H. W. Lorz, and S. V. Gregory. 1991. Forest chemicals. Pages 207–296 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

NPPC (Northwest Power Planning Council). 1986. Compilation of information on salmon and steelhead losses in the Columbia River Basin. Columbia River Basin and Wildlife Program. Northwest Power Planning Council, Portland, Oregon.

Paul, M. J., and J. L. Meyer. 2001. Streams in the urban landscape. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 32: 333–365.

Paulsen, C. M., and T. R. Fisher. 2001. Statistical relationship between parr-to-smolt survival of Snake River spring–summer Chinook salmon and indices of land use. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 130:347–358.

Pess, G. R., D. R. Montgomery, E. A. Steel, R. E. Bilby, B. E. Feist, and H. M. Greenberg. 2002. Landscape characteristics, land use, and coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) abundance, Snohomish River, Wash., U.S.A. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 59:613–623.

Poff, N. L., J. D. Allan, M. B. Bain, J. R. Karr, K. L. Prestegaard, B. D. Richter, R. E. Sparks, and J. C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime: A paradigm for river conservation and restoration. Bioscience 47:769–784.

Poff, N. L., B. D. Richter, A. H. Arthington, S. E. Bunn, R. J. Naiman, E. Kendy, M. Acreman, C. Apse, B. P. Bledsoe, M. C. Freeman, J. Henriksen, R. B. Jacobson, J. G. Kennen, D. M. Merritt, J. H. O'Keeffe, J. D. Olden, K. Rogers, R. E. Tharme, and A. Warner. 2010. The Ecological Limits of Hydrologic Alteration (ELOHA): A new framework for developing regional environmental flow standards. Freshwater Biology 55:147–170.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. White paper prepared for the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Quinn, T. P., and N. P. Peterson. 1996. The influence of habitat complexity and fish size on over-winter survival and growth of individually marked juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in Big Beef Creek, Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:1555–1564.

Rapp, C. F., and T. B. Abbe. 2003. A framework for delineating channel migration zones. Publication #03-06-027. Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington.

Rasmussen, J. L. 1994. Environmental restoration, flood plains vs. potholes. Water Resources Update 97:29–33.

Regetz, J. 2003. Landscape-level constraints on recruitment of Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) in the Columbia River basin, USA. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 13:35–49.

Rice, J. C. 2005. Understanding fish habitat ecology to achieve conservation. Journal of Fish Biology 67:1–22.

Rinaldi, M., and L. Nardi. 2013. Modeling interactions between riverbank hydrology and mass failures. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering 18:1231–1240.

Roni, P., and T. P. Quinn. 2001. Density and size of juvenile salmonids in response to placement of large woody debris in western Oregon and Washington streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:282–292.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2998–3004.

Schiff, K., and S. Bay. 2003. Impacts of stormwater discharges on the nearshore benthic environment of Santa Monica Bay. Marine Environmental Research 56:225–243.

Scholz, N. L., M. S. Myers, S. G. McCarthy, J. S. Labenia, J. K. McIntyre, G. M. Ylitalo, L. D. Rhodes, C. A. Laetz, C. M. Stehr, B. L. French, B. McMillan, D. Wilson, L. Reed, K. D. Lynch, S. Damm, J. W. Davis, and T. K. Collier. 2011. Recurrent die-offs of adult coho salmon returning to spawn in Puget Sound lowland urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e28013.

Schueler, T. R., L. Fraley-McNeal, and K. Cappiella. 2009. Is impervious cover still important? Review of recent research. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering 14:309–315.

Scott, J. B., C. R. Steward, and Q. J. Stober. 1986. Effects of urban development on fish population dynamics in Kelsey Creek, Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 115:555–567.

Scrivener, J. C., and M. J. Brownlee. 1989. Effects of forest harvesting on spawning gravel and incubation survival of chum (*Oncorhynchus keta*) and coho salmon (*O. kisutch*) in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 46:681–696.

Sedell, J. R., and J. L. Froggatt. 1984. Importance of streamside forests to large rivers: The isolation of the Willamette River, Oregon, USA, from its floodplain by snagging and streamside forest removal. Internationale Vereinigung für Theoretische und Angewandte Limnologie Verhandlugen 22:1828–1834.

Segura, C., and D. B. Booth. 2010. Effects of geomorphic setting and urbanization on wood, pools, sediment storage, and bank erosion in Puget Sound streams. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 46:972–986.

Sethajintanin, D., E. R. Johnson, B. R. Loper, and K. A. Anderson. 2004. Bioaccumulation profiles of chemical contaminants in fish from the lower Willamette River, Portland Harbor, Oregon. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 46:114–123.

Simon, J. A., and J. A. Sobieraj. 2006. Contributions of common sources of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons to soil contamination. Journal of Remediation 16:25–35.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Aberdeen, Washington.

Sovová, T., D. Boyle, K. A. Sloman, C. Vanegas Perez, and R. D. Handy. 2014. Impaired behavioural response to alarm substance in rainbow trout exposed to copper nanoparticles. Aquatic Toxicology 152:195–204.

Sprague, J. B. 1968. Avoidance reactions of rainbow trout to zinc sulphate solutions. Water Research 2:367–372.

Spromberg, J. A., D. H. Baldwin, S. E. Damm, J. K. McIntyre, M. Huff, C. A. Sloan, B. F. Anulacion, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2015. Coho salmon spawner mortality in western US urban watersheds: Bioinfiltration prevents lethal storm water impacts. Journal of Applied Ecology 53(2):398–407. DOI: 10.1111/1365-2664.12534

Stehr, C. M., T. L. Linbo, D. H. Baldwin, N. L. Scholz, and J. P. Incardona. 2009. Evaluating the effects of forestry herbicides on fish development using rapid phenotypic screens. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 29:975–984.

Stover, S. C., and D. R. Montgomery. 2001. Channel change and flooding, Skokomish River, Washington. Journal of Hydrology 243:272–286.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Swanson, C., P. S. Young, and J. J. Czech. 2005. Close encounters with a fish screen: Integrating physiological and behavioral results to protect endangered species in exploited ecosystems. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 134:1111–1123.

Tabacchi, E., D. L. Correll, R. Hauer, G. Pinay, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, and R. C. Wissmar. 1998. Development, maintenance and role of riparian vegetation in the river landscape. Freshwater Biology 40:497–516.

Tabacchi, E., L. Lambs, H. Guilloy, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, E. Muller, and H. Decamps. 2000. Impacts of riparian vegetation on hydrological processes. Hydrological Processes 14:2959–2976.

Tian, Z., H. Zhao, K. T. Peter, M. Gonzalez, J. Wetzel, C. Wu, X. Hu, J. Prat, E. Mudrock, R. Hettinger, A. E. Cortina, R. G. Biswas, F. V. C. Kock, R. Soong, A. Jenne, B. Du, F. Hou, H. He, R. Lundeen, A. Gilbreath, R. Sutton, N. L. Scholz, J. W. Davis, M. C. Dodd, A. Simpson, J. K. McIntyre, and E. P. Kolodziej. 2021. A ubiquitous tire rubber-derived chemical induces acute mortality in coho salmon. Science 371:185–189.

Tockner, K., and J. A. Stanford. 2002. Riverine flood plains: Present state and future trends. Environmental Conservation 29:308–330.

Tomlinson, M. J., S. E. Gergel, T. J. Beechie, and M. M. McClure. 2011. Long-term changes in river–floodplain dynamics: Implications for salmonid habitat in the Interior Columbia Basin, USA. Ecological Applications 21:1643–1658.

Tonnes, D. M. 2008. Ecological functions of marine riparian areas and driftwood along north Puget Sound shorelines. Master's thesis. University of Washington, Seattle.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 1995. National Water Quality Inventory: 1994 Report to Congress. EPA-841-R-95-005. EPA Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2002. National Water Quality Inventory: 2000 Report to Congress. EPA-841-R-02-001. EPA Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2005. National management measures to control nonpoint source pollution from urban areas. EPA-841-B-05-004. EPA Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). Watershed assessment, tracking and environmental results: National summary of impaired waters and TMDL information. EPA Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

Van Asselen, S., P. H. Verburg, J. E. Vermaat, and J. J. Janse. 2013. Drivers of wetland conversion: A global meta-analysis. PLOS ONE 8:e81292.

Violin, C. R., P. Cada, E. B. Sudduth, B. A. Hassett, D. L. Penrose, and E. S. Bernhardt. 2011. Effects of urbanization and urban stream restoration on the physical and biological structure of stream ecosystems. Ecological Applications 21:1932–1949.

Wagener, S. M., and J. D. LaPerriere. 1985. Effects of placer mining on the invertebrate communities of interior Alaska streams. Freshwater Invertebrate Biology 4:208–214.

Walsh, C. J., A. H. Roy, J. W. Feminella, P. D. Cottingham, P. M. Groffman, and R. P. Morgan. 2005. The urban stream syndrome: Current knowledge and the search for a cure. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 24:706–723.

Wang, L., J. Lyons, and P. Kanehl. 2001. Impacts of urbanization on stream habitat and fish across multiple spatial scales. Environmental Management 28:255–266.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2000. Fish protection screen guidelines for Washington State. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

WDOE (Washington Department of Ecology). 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington Volume V: Runoff Treatment BMPs. Publication No. 12-10-030. Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington.

Weiss, P. T., G. LeFevere, and J. S. Gulliver. 2008. Contamination of soil and groundwater due to stormwater infiltration practices: A literature review. Project Report No. 515. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Whiley, A. J. 2009. Land use, impervious surface, and water quality: City of Redmond. Publication No. 09-10-033. Washington Department of Ecology, Redmond, Washington.

White, M. D., and K. A. Greer. 2006. The effects of watershed urbanization of the stream hydrology and riparian vegetation of Los Peñasquitos Creek, California. Landscape and Urban Planning 74:125–138.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Yeakley, J. A., K. G. Maas-Hebner, and R. M. Hughes. 2014. Wild salmonids in the urbanizing Pacific Northwest. Springer, New York.

Young, K. A. 2000. Riparian zone management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's cutting what? Environmental Management 26:131–144.

Young, M. K., W. A. Hubert, and T. A. Wesche. 1991. Selection of measures of substrate composition to estimate survival to emergence of salmonids and to detect changes in stream substrates. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:339–346.

Zale, A. V., O. E. Maughan, D. J. Orth, and W. Layher. 1993. Withdrawals. Pages 271–281 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Zeug, S. C., and B. J. Cavallo. 2014. Controls on the entrainment of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) into large water diversions and estimates of population-level loss. PLOS ONE 9:e101479.

Zydlewski, G. B., and J. R. Johnson. 2002. Response of bull trout fry to four types of water diversion screens. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 22:1276–1282.

3. Road Construction and Operation

Potential Adverse Impacts of Road Construction and Operation

The following factors associated with road construction and operation can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, invasive organisms, impaired fish passage, and increased mass wasting. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Roads built alongside streams can prevent channel migration (Furniss et al. 1991), reducing important channel features and habitat connectivity (Niering 1988, Mitsch and Gosselink 1993, Pechenick et al. 2014). Roads located in the floodplain can reduce or eliminate connectivity to floodplain habitats, such as alcoves and groundwater channels (Rapp and Abbe 2003), and removal of vegetation for road construction can lead to increased sediment inputs and water temperatures, reducing the suitability of EFH (Beschta et al. 1987, Hicks et al. 1991). Furthermore, roads near stream channels are often armored to prevent road damage by bank erosion and channel migration, resulting in loss of important habitat-forming features such as large woody debris (LWD; Latterell et al. 2006) and the homogenization of otherwise heterogeneous EFH used by rearing and migrating fish (Li and Eddleman 2002).

Roads and crossings impair longitudinal and lateral connectivity, resulting in the isolation and decline of floodplain habitat and fish populations (Perkin et al. 2013). Poorly designed or improperly installed culverts degrade EFH (Evans and Johnston 1980, Belford and Gould 1989, Clancy and Reichmuth 1990, Furniss et al. 1991). For example, culverts can trap sediment and LWD that would otherwise enhance downstream habitat processes and diversity (Ralph et al. 1994, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Spence et al. 1996) and provide structure for lower-trophic organisms such as algae, bacteria, fungi, and invertebrates (Coe et al. 2009). Reduction of LWD inputs to estuaries, as a result of coastal road crossings, also reduces habitat for brackish or marine microorganisms, invertebrates, and fish (Tonnes 2008), and fragments watersheds by restricting the movement of organisms and matter between freshwater and marine ecosystems.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Roads can constrain floodplains and create impervious or semipervious surfaces that intercept rainfall, reduce water storage capacity, concentrate flows, and divert or reroute water from original flow paths (Furniss et al. 1991, Wickham et al. 2014). Such alterations can impact hydrologic (McKay et al. 2013) and geomorphologic regimes (Jones 2000) by destabilizing stream channels, altering runoff (Konrad and Booth 2005), and increasing the frequency and magnitude of flooding (NRC 1996, Spence et al. 1996). Adams and Ringer (1994) demonstrated a strong correlation between peak discharge and road coverage. Even road coverage densities as low as 4% of the drainage surface area can significantly alter hydrologic processes (King and Tennyson 1984). Increased cover of impervious surfaces and associated changes in hydrology are associated with reduction in fish diversity via the loss of sensitive species and replacement by tolerant species (Wenger et al. 2008).

Road crossings, such as bridges and culverts, can also alter stream hydrologic and geomorphic processes (Trombulak and Frissell 2000, Konrad 2003). For example, structures trap wood and sediment on the upstream side, while increasing erosion on the downstream side through downcutting (Castro 2003). Furthermore, undersized culverts increase water velocity, scouring, and erosion in downstream EFH (Vaughan 2002).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Streams, estuaries, and other EFH (e.g., riparian areas) located near roads may experience increased surface erosion and sedimentation (Beechie et al. 2008, Beechie et al. 2010). Semi- or unpaved roads can significantly increase surface erosion (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Bilby et al. 1989, MacDonald et al. 2001), which can result in increased transport and deposition of sediments to streams affecting rearing and spawning habitat for stream- and estuarine-associated salmonids (Bilby et al. 1989, MacDonald et al. 2001, Ziegler et al. 2011). Furniss et al. (1991) found that roads contributed more sediment than all other forest activities combined on a per-area basis. Roads also increase sedimentation over the long term as, over time, the surface breaks down into fine sediments that flow into EFH (Murphy 1995).

Excessive transport or deposition of fine sediment can fill interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damage or clog gill membranes of aquatic organisms, reduce benthic production, and reduce growth and survival of juvenile salmon (Suttle et al. 2004), resulting in a decrease in the quality and area of available EFH (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Smith and Wegner 2001). Increased sedimentation can alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995, Suttle et al. 2004), and increased turbidity can impair foraging ability and predator avoidance. Conversely, feeding may increase (Gregory 1993) while predation by piscivores could decrease (Gregory and Levings 1998) in moderately turbid water. It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Release of contaminants

Runoff from impervious surfaces such as roads is the most widespread source of water pollution in the United States (USEPA 1995). Pollutants from roads and impervious surfaces include sediment from eroding surface material, oil and heavy metals from vehicles, road salts, herbicides, and pesticides (Furniss et al. 1991, Groefman et al. 2002, Walsh et al. 2005, Cooper et al. 2014, Hintz and Reylea 2017). Road surfacing compounds such as asphalt, bitumen, pavement sealing, and repair products contain high levels of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs; Grosenheider 2005, Mahler et al. 2005, Teaf 2008). PAHs and metals are toxic to aquatic species such as fish and invertebrate populations (Rand 1995, Logan 2007), and accumulate in nearshore and marine food webs (Kennish 1997, Johnson 2002, Kennish 2001). The friction between road and tire surfaces erodes and releases asphalt, rubber material, and associated chemical compounds, and automotive fluids and brake lining metals concentrate on or near road surfaces and flow into EFH, leading to fish mortality, especially during high precipitation events following a prolonged dry period (Grosenheider 2005, Simon and Sobieraj 2006, Weiss et al. 2008, Feist et al. 2017). The release of such chemicals affect water quality in EFH (Collier et al. 1998, Allan 2004), and physiology and survival of fish (Sandahl et al. 2007). Use of herbicides and pesticides, and spill or leaching of petroleum products, can kill species directly, in addition to altering food web processes that support trust resources (ASMFC 1992, Stehr et al. 2009, Macneale et al. 2010). Petroleum-based products (e.g., fuel, oil, hydraulic fluids) are toxic to invertebrates and fish, but toxicity depends on concentration and exposure time (Neff 1985).

Invasive organisms

Roads are dispersal corridors for invasive species, and invasive species are sometimes planted along roadsides for erosion control (Trombulak and Frissell 2000). For example, roads can be the first point of entry for invasive, opportunistic plant or invertebrate species (e.g., the New Zealand mud snail; Davidson et al. 2008) that are seeded along road cuts or introduced from propagules transported by boats, tires, and shoes (Lonsdale and Lane 1994, Greenberg et al. 1997, Johnson et al. 2001, Davidson et al. 2008). Invasive plants and invertebrates may spread away from introduction sites, where they may out-compete native species and alter the structure and function of aquatic and riparian EFH (Trombulak and Frissell 2000, Zedler and Kercher 2004, Mortensen et al. 2009, Urgenson et al. 2009).

Impaired fish passage

Connectivity of complex EFH is critical to migratory fish (Fagan 2002, Hoffman and Dunham 2007), and inadequate road crossing structures can impair this connectivity (Pess et al. 2005, Sheer and Steel 2006).

Poorly designed or improperly installed or maintained crossing structures can impact EFH by blocking fish access to important spawning and rearing habitats and constraining the downstream movement of important habitat-forming materials (Evans and Johnston 1980, Belford and Gould 1989, Furniss et al. 1991, Eaglin and Hubert 1993, Taylor 2000, NMFS 2001, Castro 2003, Kiffney et al. 2009, McKay et al. 2013, Khodier and Tullis 2014). Blockage of fish migrations can also have negative impacts on aquatic and riparian EFH by reducing the exchange of ecologically important organic matter delivered by spawning adult salmon (Roni et al. 2002, Davis and Davis 2011, Kiffney et al. 2014, Morley et al. 2016).

The impacts of road crossing structures vary with the fish species, life stage, and phenotype, as some individuals may be better adapted to move upstream through hydrological obstructions, such as culverts and other types of road obstructions, than other species (e.g., pink salmon) and smaller individuals (Davis and Davis 2011, Peterson et al. 2013, Miyoshi et al. 2014). Smaller juveniles of some species can be blocked from moving upstream into EFH used for seasonal rearing (Peterson 1980, Davis and Davis 2011), reducing the productive capacity of EFH by nearly 60% in some studies (Beechie et al. 1994, Roni et al. 2002, Pess et al. 2003), and potentially limiting upstream spatial expansion of recolonizing salmonids (Anderson et al. 2013).

Increased surface erosion and mass wasting

Surface erosion and mass wasting can be exacerbated by road construction (Brardinoni et al. 2002). Roads built on steep or unstable slopes can increase the occurrence of mass wasting events (Furniss et al. 1991). Slopes can become unstable when tree roots are removed near roads

(Sidle et al. 1985, Montgomery et al. 1998, Montgomery et al. 2000, Sidle 2005). Diversion of subsurface flow paths can increase pore pressure on steep slopes (Dutton et al. 2005). Landslides can also occur as a result of debris dams that block the upstream side of culverts (Sidle et al. 1985). The sudden increase in sediment load following a mass wasting event degrades salmon spawning and rearing habitats (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Smith and Wegner 2001), and could have adverse impacts on fish physiology (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Bilby et al. 1989). Deep pools and other important habitat features that provide refuge may be filled or removed following such mass wasting events (Hicks et al. 1991). Climate change is predicted to change disturbance regimes, including increasing the abundance, frequency, and intensity of mass wasting events (Davis et al. 2013, Knapp 2018).

Increased surface erosion and mass wasting events can severely impact water quality in EFH (Anderson and Potts 1987, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Platts et al. 1989, Hicks et al. 1991, Reid 1993, Montgomery et al. 1998, Dhakal and Sidle 2004, Kreutzweiser et al. 2005). Mass wasting can increase the delivery of fine sediment loading in EFH, which can increase turbidity, decrease volume of EFH and delivery of dissolved oxygen, and alter behavior of invertebrates, causing reduced feeding, growth, and survival of juvenile salmonids (Hicks et al. 1991, Barrett et al. 1992, Smith and Wegner 2001, Suttle et al. 2004, Klein et al. 2011). Reduction of dissolved oxygen delivery to developing embryos and larval fish can lead to premature hatching, reduced size at emergence, and reduced viability (Chapman 1988, Hicks et al. 1991, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005). In juvenile and adult fishes, suspended sediments can abrade or clog gill membranes (Bilby et al. 1989, Cederholm and Reid 1987).

Potential Conservation Measures for Road Construction and Operation

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of road construction and operation on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of road construction and operation on EFH.

General guidelines

- Plan and design roads to minimize damage to, and loss of, EFH (Newman et al. 2012).
- Use seasonal work restrictions to avoid impacts to habitat during species-critical life-history stages (e.g., spawning and egg development periods). Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Properly maintain roadway ditches and associated stormwater collection systems.
- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present and foreseeable future

development activities on aquatic habitats by considering them in the review process for road construction projects.

- Plan road and infrastructure development within the context of climate change.
- Provide estimates for how development will impact stream hydrology (e.g., magnitude and frequency of floods).
- Conduct road maintenance using practices according to the requirements of existing NMFS rules—e.g., the July 2000 ESA 4(d) rule (Protective Regulations) for listed west coast salmon and steelhead (USOFR 2000; 10 July 2000), Limit 10, covering road maintenance. Implementing maintenance under these programs avoids exacerbating existing impacts, and protects EFH to the extent that it contributes to conserving species.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Design bridge abutments to minimize disturbances to EFH, and place abutments outside of the current and predicted floodplain habitat when built in streams and rivers.
- Reduce and eliminate riparian corridor damage during construction of roads (and bridges, culverts, and other crossings), and avoid locating roads in floodplains or wetlands.
- Mitigate on-site for all losses in aquatic EFH and the surrounding riparian zone.
- Ensure road crossings allow for the free movement of organisms, sediment, and water.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Design roadways to minimize the length of inboard ditches.
- Outslope roads for drainage, or use frequent rolling dips, waterbars, or ditch relief culverts so they do not concentrate flows and cause erosion.
- Use pipe extenders to bring flows from ditch relief culverts to grade before discharge; use T-spreaders to diffuse flows at the discharge points, or energy dissipaters to slow the initial flows at the discharge points.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Specify erosion control measures in road construction plans.
- Do not side-cast road materials into streams or places where they may make their way to aquatic habitats.
- Limit roadway sanding and the use of deicing chemicals during the winter to minimize sedimentation and introduction of contaminants into nearby aquatic habitats. Snowmelt disposal areas should be silt-fenced, and include a collection basin. Roads should be swept after break-up to reduce sediment loading in streams and wetlands.
- Revegetate cut banks, road fills, bare shoulders, disturbed streambanks, etc., after construction to prevent erosion and increase nutrient assimilation and adsorption. Check and maintain sediment control and retention structures throughout the rainy season.

Release of contaminants

- Biofiltration features prevent lethal stormwater impacts to fish (e.g., coho salmon), and must be installed along roads and road drainage systems (Spromberg et al. 2015). Possible features include permeable pavers, bioretention swales, silt fencing, impervious containment areas, stormwater wetponds, rain gardens, and check dams, among others (WDOE 2012).
- Limit roadway sanding and the use of deicing chemicals during the winter

to minimize sedimentation and introduction of contaminants into nearby aquatic habitats. Snowmelt disposal areas should be silt-fenced and include a collection basin. Roads should be swept after break-up to reduce sediment loading in streams and wetlands.

Invasive organisms

- Use only native vegetation in replantings.
- When necessary, implement invasive species monitoring to ensure road-construction activities do not accidentally introduce an invasive species. For example, if the activity involves construction activities in the water, control measures—such as placing the equipment in a freezer for 24 hr before using, or sterilizing with dilute bleach (Schisler et al. 2008)—should be taken, to prevent the spread of an invasive species attached to a boot or wader.

Impaired fish passage

- Design all road crossings for ecological connectivity, including the movement of water, sediment, organisms, and organic matter, and interactions with the riparian environment, while also accounting for anticipated changes in land use and hydrology resulting from climate change.
- Instead of utilizing culverts, build bridges for crossing aquatic environments.
- If culverts must be used, they must be sized, constructed, and maintained to match the gradient, flow characteristics, and width of the stream, so as to accommodate both current and future flood events.
- All new road crossing structures must accommodate future increased flows and changes in the disturbance regime. Climate change will alter hydraulic flow regimes (e.g., larger and more frequent high-flow events), with corresponding changes in the location, frequency, and size of debris flows; these changes will vary regionally with climate, vegetation, geology, and land use.
- Consult NMFS guidelines for stream crossings (NMFS 2001).
- Use state or federal culvert design guidelines for improved design and installations of culverts (e.g., NMFS 2001; Bates et al. 2003; Barnard et al. 2014; Gillespie et al. 2014). At a minimum, culvert diameter should be at least as wide as bankfull width (Nislow 2014).

Increased surface erosion and mass wasting

- Implement compaction techniques to reduce erosion (FAO 1998).
- Site roads to avoid sensitive areas such as riparian areas, streams, wetlands, and steep slopes.
- Abandon and remove road crossings when other existing road crossings are available, and on decommissioned roads.

References

Abbe, T. B., and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Large woody debris jams, channel hydraulics and habitat formation in large rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 12(2-3):201–221.

Adams, P., and J. Ringer. 1994. The effects of timber harvesting and forest roads on water quantity and quality in the Pacific Northwest: Summary and annotated bibliography. Oregon State University. Forest Engineering Department. Corvallis, Oregon.

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Anderson, B., and D. F. Potts. 1987. Suspended sediment and turbidity following road construction and logging in western Montana. Water Resources Bulletin 23:681–689.

Anderson, J. H., G. R. Pess, P. M. Kiffney, T. R. Bennett, P. L. Faulds, W. I. Atlas, and T. P. Quinn. 2013. Dispersal and tributary immigration by juvenile coho salmon contribute to spatial expansion during colonisation. Ecology of Freshwater Fish 22:30–42.

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 1992. Fishery management plan for inshore stocks of winter flounder. FMR No. 21. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Barnard, R. J., S. Yokers, A. Nagygyor, and T. Quinn. 2014. An evaluation of the stream simulation culvert design method in Washington state. River Research and Applications 31(10):1376–1387. DOI: 10.1002/rra.2837

Barrett, J. C., G. D. Grossman, and J. Rosenfeld. 1992. Turbidity-induced changes in reactive distance of rainbow trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 121:437–443.

Bates, K., B. Barnard, B. Heiner, J. P. Klavis, and P. D. Powers. 2003. Design of road culverts for fish passage. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Beechie, T., E. Beamer, and L. Wasserman. 1994. Estimating coho salmon rearing habitat and smolt production losses in a large river basin, and implications for habitat restoration. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 14:797–811.

Beechie, T., G. Pess, P. Roni, and G. Giannico. 2008. Setting river restoration priorities: A review of approaches and a general protocol for identifying and prioritizing actions. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:891–905.

Beechie, T. J., D. A. Sear, J. D. Olden, G. R. Pess, J. M. Buffington, H. Moir, P. Roni, and M. M. Pollock. 2010. Process-based principles for restoring river ecosystems. BioScience 60:209–222.

Belford, D. A., and W. R. Gould. 1989. An evaluation of trout passage through six highway culverts in Montana. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 9:437–445.

Beschta, R. L., R. E. Bilby, G. W. Brown, L. B. Holtby, and T. D. Hofstra. 1987. Stream temperature and aquatic habitat: Fisheries and forestry interactions. Pages 191–232 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Bilby, R. E., K. Sullivan, and S. H. Duncan. 1989. The generation and fate of road-surface sediment in forested watersheds in southwestern, Washington. Forest Science 35:453–468.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Brardinoni, F., M. A. Hassan, and H. O. Slaymaker. 2002. Complex mass wasting response of drainage basins to forest management in coastal British Columbia. Geomorphology 49:109–124.

Castro, J. 2003. Geomorphologic impacts of culvert placement and removal: Avoiding channel incision. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Clancy, C .G., and D. R. Reichmuth. 1990. A detachable fishway for steep culverts. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 10:244–246.

Coe, H. J., P. M. Kiffney, G. R. Pess, K. K. Kloehn, and M. L. McHenry. 2009. Periphyton and invertebrate response to wood placement in large Pacific coastal rivers. River Research and Applications 25:1025–1035.

Collier, T. K., L. L. Johnson, C. M. Stehr, M. S. Myers, and J. E. Stein. 1998. A comprehensive assessment of the impacts of contaminants on fish from an urban waterway. Marine Environmental Research 46:243–247.

Cooper, C. A., P. M. Mayer, and B. R. Faulkner. 2014. Effects of road salts on groundwater and surface water dynamics of sodium and chloride in an urban restored stream. Biogeochemistry 121:149–166.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

Davidson, T., V. Brenneis, C. de Rivera, R. Draheim, and G. Gillespie. 2008. Northern range expansion and coastal occurrences of the New Zealand mud snail (*Potamopyrgus antipodarum* Gray, 1843) in the northeast Pacific. Aquatic Invasions 3:349–353.

Davis, J. C., and G. A. Davis. 2011. The influence of stream-crossing structures on the distribution of rearing juvenile Pacific salmon. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 30:1117–1128.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Dhakal, A. S., and R. C. Sidle. 2004. Pore water pressure assessment in a forest watershed: Simulations and distributed field measurements related to forest practices. Water Resource Research 40:w02405. DOI: 10.1029/2003WR002017

Dutton, A. L., K. Loague, and B. C. Wemple. 2005. Simulated effect of a forest road on near-surface hydrological response and slope stability. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 30:325–338.

Eaglin, G. S., and W. A. Hubert. 1993. Effects of logging and roads on substrate and trout in streams of the Medicine Bow National Forest, Wyoming. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 13:844–846.

Evans, W. A., and B. Johnston. 1980. Fish migration and fish passage: A practical guide to solving fish passage problems. Revised edition, EM-7100–2. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.

Fagan, W. F. 2002. Connectivity, fragmentation, and extinction risk in dendritic metapopulations. Ecology 83:3243–3249.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 1998. Watershed management field manual: Road design and construction in sensitive watersheds. Forestry Department, FAO Conservation Guide 13/5. Available: www.fao.org/3/T0099E/T0099e00.htm (September 2022).

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, D. H. Baldwin, J. A. Spromberg, S. E. Damm, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2017. Roads to ruin: Conservation threats to a sentinel species across an urban gradient. Ecological Applications 27:2382–2396.

Furniss, M. J., T. D. Roelofs, and C. S. Kee. 1991. Road construction and maintenance. Pages 297–323 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Gillespie, N., A. Unthank, L. Campbell, P. Anderson, R. Gubernick, D. Cenderelli, B. Austin, D. McKinley, S. Wells, J. Rowan, C. Orvis, M. Hudy, A. Bowden, A. Singler, E. Fretz, J. Levine, and R. Kirn. 2014. Flood effects on road–stream crossing infrastructure: Economic and ecological benefits of stream simulation designs. Fisheries 39:62–76.

Greenberg, C. H., S. H. Crownover, and D. R. Gordon. 1997. Roadside soils: A corridor for invasion of xeric scrub by nonindigenous plants. Natural Areas Journal 17:99–109.

Gregory, R. S. 1993. Effect of turbidity on the predator avoidance behavior of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:241–246.

Gregory, R. S., and C. D. Levings. 1998. Turbidity reduces predation on migrating juvenile Pacific salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:275–285.

Groefman, P. M., N. J. Boulware, W. C. Zipperer, R. V. Pouyat, L. E. Band, and M. F. Colosimo. 2002. Soil nitrogen cycle processes in urban riparian zones. Environmental Science & Technology 36:4547–4552.

Grosenheider, K. E., P. R. Bloom, T. R. Halbach, and M. R. Johnson. 2005. A review of the current literature regarding polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in asphalt pavement. MN/DOT Contract No. 81655. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hintz, W. D., and R. A. Relyea. 2017. Impacts of road deicing salts on the early-life growth and development of a stream salmonid: Salt type matters. Environmental Pollution 223:409–415.

Hoffman, R., and J. Dunham. 2007. Fish movement ecology in high gradient headwater streams: Its relevance to fish passage restoration through stream culvert barriers. OFR 2007–1140. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Johnson, K. L. 1992. Management for water quality on rangelands through best management practices: The Idaho approach. Pages 415–441 *in* R. J. Naiman, editor. Watershed management: Balancing sustainability and environmental change. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Johnson, L. E., A. Ricciardi, and J. T. Carlton. 2001. Overland dispersal of aquatic invasive species: A risk assessment of transient recreational boating. Ecological Applications 11:1789–1799.

Jones, J. A. 2000. Hydrologic processes and peak discharge response to forest removal, regrowth, and roads in 10 small experimental basins, western Cascades, Oregon. Water Resources Research 36:2621–2642.

Kennish, M. J. 1997. Practical Handbook of Estuarine and Marine Pollution. CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, Florida.

Kennish, M. J. 2001. Coastal salt marsh systems in the U.S.: A review of anthropogenic impacts. Journal of Coastal Research 17:731–748.

Khodier, M. A., and B. P. Tullis. 2014. Fish passage behavior for severe hydraulic conditions in baffled culverts. Journal of Hydraulic Engineering 140:322–327.

Kiffney, P. M., E. R. Buhle, S. M. Naman, G. R. Pess, and R. S. Klett. 2014. Linking resource availability and habitat structure to stream organisms: An experimental and observational assessment. Ecosphere 5:art39.

Kiffney, P. M., G. R. Pess, J. H. Anderson, P. Faulds, K. Burton, and S. C. Riley. 2009. Changes in fish communities following recolonization of the Cedar River, Washington, USA by Pacific salmon after 103 years of local extirpation. River Research and Applications 25:438–452.

King, J., and L. Tennyson. 1984. Alteration of stream flow characteristics following road construction in north central Idaho. Water Resources Research 20:1159–1163.

Klein, R. D., J. Lewis, and M. S. Buffleben. 2011. Logging and turbidity in the coastal watersheds of Northern California. Geomorphology 139:136–144.

Knapp, K. 2018. The Effects of Forecasted Climate Change on Mass Wasting Susceptibility in the Nooksack River Basin. Master's thesis. Western Washington University, Bellingham, Washington. Available: cedar.wwu.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1829&context=wwuet (April 2022).

Konrad, C. P. 2003. Effects of urban development on floods. Fact Sheet 076–03. U.S. Geological Survey, Tacoma, Washington.

Konrad, C. P., and D. B. Booth. 2005. Hydrologic changes in urban streams and their ecological significance. American Fisheries Society Symposium 47:157–177.

Kreutzweiser, D. P., S. S. Capell, and K. P. Good. 2005. Effects of fine sediment inputs from a logging road on stream insect communities: a large-scale experimental approach in a Canadian headwater stream. Aquatic Ecology 39:55–66.

Latterell, J. J., J. S. Bechtold, T. C. O. Keefe, R. Van Pelt, and R. J. Naiman. 2006. Dynamic patch mosaics and channel movement in an unconfined river valley of the Olympic Mountains. Freshwater Biology, 51:523–544.

Li, M. H., and K. E. Eddleman. 2002. Biotechnical engineering as an alternative to traditional engineering methods: A biotechnical streambank stabilization design approach. Landscape and Urban Planning 60:225–242.

Logan, D. 2007. Perspective on ecotoxicology of P. Hs to fish. Human and Ecological Risk Assessment 13:302–316.

Lonsdale, W. N., and A. M. Lane. 1994. Tourist vehicles as vectors of weed seeds in Kakadu National Park, northern Australia. Biological Conservation 69:277–283.

MacDonald, L. H., R. W. Sampson, and D. M. Anderson. 2001. Runoff and road erosion at the plot and road segment scales, St. John, U.S. Virgin Islands. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 26:251–272.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

Mahler, B. J., P. C. Van Metre, T. J. Bashara, J. T. Wilson, and D. A. Johns. 2005. Parking lot sealcoat: An unrecognized source of urban polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Environmental Science & Technology 39:5560–5566.

McKay, S. K., J. R. Schramski, J. N. Conyngham, and J. C. Fischenich. 2013. Assessing upstream fish passage connectivity with network analysis. Ecological Applications 23:1396–1409.

Mitsch, W. J., and J. G. Gosselink. 1993. Wetlands, 2nd edition. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

Miyoshi, K., K. Hayashida, T. Sakashita, M. Fujii, H. Nii, K. Nakao, and H. Ueda. 2014. Comparison of the swimming ability and upstream-migration behavior between chum salmon and masu salmon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 71:217–225.

Montgomery, D. R., K. M. Schmidt, H. M. Greenberg, and W. E. Dietrich. 2000. Forest clearing and regional landsliding. Geology 28:311–314.

Montgomery, D. R., K. Sullivan, and H. M. Greenberg. 1998. Regional test of a model for shallow landsliding. Hydrological Processes 12:943–955.

Morley, S. A., H. J. Coe, J. J. Duda, L. S. Dunphy, M. L. M. Henry, B. R. Beckman, M. Elofson, E. M. Sampson, and L. Ward. 2016. Seasonal variation exceeds effects of salmon carcass additions on benthic food webs in the Elwha River. Ecosphere 7:e01422.

Mortensen, D. A., E. S. J. Rauschert, A. N. Nord, and B. P. Jones. 2009. Forest roads facilitate the spread of invasive plants. Invasive Plant Science and Management 2:191–199.

Murphy, M. L. 1995. Forestry impacts on freshwater habitat of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska: Requirements for protection and restoration. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series No. 7. NOAA Coastal Ocean Office, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Neff, J. M. 1985. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 416–454 *in* G. M. Rand and S. R. Petrocelli, editors. Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. Macdonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11(1):72–82.

Newman, P., C. Hargroves, C. Desha, A. Kumar, L. Whistler, A. Farr, K. Wilson, J. Beauson, A. Matan, and L. Surawski. 2012. Reducing the environmental impact of road construction. Project 1.3. Brisbane Sustainable Built Environment National Research Centre, Brisbane, Australia.

Niering, W. A. 1988. The Audubon Society nature guides: Wetlands. Alfred A. Knopf, New York.

Nislow, K. H. 2014. Road–stream crossing failure in an extreme flood event: Mutual benefits of appropriate design for human infrastructure and stream fish populations. 144th Annual Meeting of the American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2001. Guidelines for salmonids passage at stream crossings. National Marine Fisheries Service, Santa Rosa, California.

NRC (National Research Council). 1996. Upstream: Salmon and society in the Pacific Northwest. Report of the committee on protection and management of Pacific Northwest anadromous salmonids. Board on Environmental Studies and Toxicology, and Commission on Life Sciences. National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.

Pechenick, A. M., D. M. Rizzo, L. A. Morrissey, K. M. Garvey, K. L. Underwood, and B. C. Wemple. 2014. A multi-scale statistical approach to assess the effects of connectivity of road and stream networks on geomorphic channel condition. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 39:1538–1549.

Perkin, J. S., K. B. Gido, O. Al-Ta'ani, and C. Scoglio. 2013. Simulating fish dispersal in stream networks fragmented by multiple road crossings. Ecological Modelling 257:44–56.

Pess, G. R., T. J. Beechie, J. E. Williams, D. R. Whitall, J. I. Lange, and J. R. Klochak. 2003. Watershed assessment techniques and the success of aquatic restoration activities. Pages 185–201 *in* R. C. Wissmar and P. A. Bisson, editors. Strategies for restoring river ecosystems: Sources of variability and uncertainty in natural and managed systems. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Pess, G. R., S. Morley, and P. Roni. 2005. Evaluating fish response to culvert replacement and other methods for reconnecting isolated aquatic habitats. Pages 267–276 *in* P. Roni, editor. Monitoring stream and watershed restoration. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Peterson, N. P. 1980. The role of spring ponds in the winter ecology and natural production of coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) on the Olympic Peninsula, Washington. Master's thesis, University of Washington, Seattle.

Peterson, N. P., R. K. Simmons, T. Cardoso, and J. T. Light. 2013. A probabilistic model for assessing passage performance of coastal cutthroat trout through corrugated metal culverts. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 33:192–199.

Platts, W. S., R. J. Torquemada, and M. L. M. Henry. 1989. Changes in salmon spawning and rearing habitat from increased delivery of fine sediment to the South Fork Salmon River, Idaho. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 118:274–283.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Ralph, S., G. Poole, L. Conquest, and R. J. Naiman. 1994. Stream channel morphology and woody debris in logged and unlogged basins in western Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 51:37–51.

Rand, G. M., editor. 1995. Fundamentals of aquatic toxicology: Effects, environmental fate and risk assessment, 2nd edition. Taylor and Francis Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Rapp, C. F., and T. B. Abbe. 2003. A framework for delineating channel migration zones. Publication #03-06-027. Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington.

Reid, L. M. 1993. Research and cumulative watershed effects. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR-141. Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, California.

Roni, P., T. J. Beechie, R. E. Bilby, F. E. Leonetti, M. M. Pollock, and G. R. Pess. 2002. A review of stream restoration techniques and a hierarchical strategy for prioritizing restoration in Pacific Northwest watersheds. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 22:1–20.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2998–3004.

Schisler, G. J., N. K. M. Vieira, and P. G. Walker. 2008. Application of Household Disinfectants to Control New Zealand Mudsnails. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1172–1176.

Sheer, M. B., and E. A. Steel. 2006. Lost watersheds: Barriers, aquatic habitat connectivity, and salmon persistence in the Willamette and lower Columbia River basins. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:1654–1669.

Sidle, R. C., A. J. Pearce, and C. L. O. Loughlin. 1985. Hillslope stability and land use. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

Sidle, R. C. 2005. Influence of forest harvesting activities on debris avalanches and flows. Debris-flow hazards and related phenomena. Springer, Berlin.

Simon, J. A., and J. A. Sobieraj. 2006. Contributions of common sources of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons to soil contamination. Journal of Remediation 16:25–35.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Spence, B. C., G. A. Lomnicky, R. M. Hughes, and R. P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, Oregon.

Spromberg, J. A., D. H. Baldwin, S. E. Damm, J. K. M. Intyre, M. Huff, C. A. Sloan, B. F. Anulacion, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2015. Coho salmon spawner mortality in western US urban watersheds: Bioinfiltration prevents lethal storm water impacts. Journal of Applied Ecology 53(2):398–407. DOI: 10.1111/1365–2664.12534

Stehr, C. M., T. L. Linbo, D. H. Baldwin, N. L. Scholz, and J. P. Incardona. 2009. Evaluating the effects of forestry herbicides on fish development using rapid phenotypic screens. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 29:975–984.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. M. Neely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Taylor, R. N. 2000. Humboldt county culvert inventory and fish passage evaluation. Final Report to California Department of Fish and Game, Contract FG-7068 IF. Ross Taylor and Associates, McKinleyville, California.

Teaf, C. M. 2008. Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons (PAHs) in urban soil: A Florida risk assessment perspective. International Journal of Soil, Sediment, and Water 1(2):Article 2.

Tonnes, D. M. 2008. Ecological functions of marine riparian areas and driftwood along north Puget Sound shorelines. Master's thesis, University of Washington, Seattle.

Trombulak, S. C., and C. A. Frissell. 2000. Review of ecological effects of road on terrestrial and aquatic communities. Conservation Biology 14:18–30.

Urgenson, L. S., S. H. Reichard, and C. B. Halpern. 2009. Community and ecosystem consequences of giant knotweed (*Polygonum sachalinense*) invasion into riparian forests of western Washington, USA. Biological Conservation 142(7):1536–1541.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 1995. National Water Quality Inventory: 1994 Report to Congress. EPA-841-R-95–005. EPA Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

USOFR (U.S. Office of the Federal Register). 2000. Engangered and Threatened Species; Final Rule Governing Take of 14 Threatened Salmon and Steelhead Evolutionarily Significant Units (ESUs). Federal Register 65:132(10 July 2000):42422–42481.

Vaughan, D. M. 2002. Potential impact of road–stream crossings (culverts) on the upstream passage of aquatic macroinvertebrates. Report submitted to the U.S. Forest Service. San Dimas Technology and Development Center, Portland, Oregon.

Walsh, C. J., A. H. Roy, J. W. Feminella, P. D. Cottingham, P. M. Groffman, and R. P. Morgan. 2005. The urban stream syndrome: Current knowledge and the search for a cure. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 24:706–723.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

WDOE (Washington Department of Ecology). 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington Volume V: Runoff Treatment BMPs. Publication No. 12–10–030. Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington.

Weiss, P. T., G. L. Fevere, and J. S. Gulliver. 2008. Contamination of soil and groundwater due to stormwater infiltration practices: A literature review. Project Report No. 515. University of Minnesota, St. Anthony Falls, Minnesota.

Wenger, S. J., J. T. Peterson, M. C. Freeman, B. J. Freeman, and D. D. Homans. 2008. Stream fish occurrence in response to impervious cover, historic land use, and hydrogeomorphic factors. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 65:1250–1264.

Wickham, J. D., T. G. Wade, and D. J. Norton. 2014. Spatial patterns of watershed impervious cover relative to stream location. Ecological Indicators 40:109–116.

Zedler, J. B., and S. Kercher. 2004. Causes and consequences of invasive plants in wetlands: Opportunities, opportunists, and outcomes. Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences 23:431–452.

Ziegler, A. D., R. A. Dinar, N. MacDougall, M. Khanna, C. Brown, and F. Castillo. 2011. Individual and institutional responses to the drought: The case of California agriculture. Journal of Contemporary Water Research and Education 121:17–23.

4. Stormwater and Urban Runoff

Potential Adverse Impacts of Stormwater and Urban Runoff

The following factors associated with stormwater and urban runoff can impact EFH and are described briefly below: altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, and release of contaminants. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

The ecological integrity of flowing water systems depends largely on the dynamic character of flow regime and subsequent geomorphic processes (Poff et al. 1997, Poff et al. 2010). Instream and riparian habitat morphology (Tabacchi et al. 1998), survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005) can be heavily affected by volume and timing of stream discharge. Urbanization can modify the natural flow regime, increasing the frequency and magnitude of peak flows (Furniss et al. 1991, Luchetti and Feurstenburg 1993, CWP 2003, Allan 2004, White and Greer 2006). In combination with habitat alterations (i.e., levees, roads, increased impervious surfaces), lateral absorption of floodwater into the floodplain can be reduced, compounding the impacts of increased magnitude and frequency of flood events (Stover and Montgomery 2001, Lane 2008) and cutting off an important seasonal EFH for some managed salmonid species. Such negative feedbacks lead to increased demand for costly flood control projects (e.g., dams, dredging, or the building of additional dikes and levees; Rasmussen 1994), further compounding the negative impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH (Beechie et al. 2010), impacts that require mitigation and conservation measures.

Presence of riparian vegetation influences hydrological processes by controlling runoff, increasing water uptake and storage, and maintaining water quality (Hicks et al. 1991, Tabacchi et al. 2000). Canopy interception and transpiration reduces the total volume of water infiltrating the topsoil, reducing runoff during small storms (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Rinaldi and Nardi 2013). However, increases in urban and residential development remove or alter upland forest ecosystems (Gray et al. 2013), contributing to increases in contributions of stormwater and urban runoff to EFH (Allan 2004, Whiley 2009). Much of urban and residential land is often covered by impervious surfaces; water flows along roads and other infrastructure and ultimately into EFH, where it affects ecosystem structure and function. Hydrologic functioning can be significantly degraded when land is 10% covered by impervious material (Arnold and Gibbons 1996, Paul and Meyer 2001), and impervious coverage of 25% or more resulted in severe degradation of EFH (CWP 2003). Across a range of watersheds in the United States, Caldwell et al. (2012) found that the presence of impervious cover increased stream flows by about 10%. Impacts of impervious surfaces on hydrology and geomorphology may be most pronounced in urban areas because of the vast area of land covered by impervious surfaces (Konrad et al. 2005, White and Greer 2006).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Stormwater and urban runoff can cause increased sedimentation in EFH (Corbett et al. 1997, Wood and Armitage 1997). Excessive transport or deposition of fine sediment can fill interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damage or clog gill membranes of aquatic organisms, reduce benthic production, and decrease the area of available EFH (Wagener and LaPerriere 1985, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Brown et al. 1998, Smith and Wegner 2001, Suttle et al. 2004). Increased sedimentation can alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995); impact fish emergence, juvenile densities, and winter carrying capacity; and increase predation on fish (Koski 1981, Chapman 1988, Scrivener and Brownlee 1989, Young et al. 1991). Increased turbidity can impair predator avoidance by prey fish. It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Release of contaminants

Contaminants flow into EFH during rainfall and storm events through runoff and stormwater systems (Schueler et al. 2009; for more complete review, see Foster et al. 2014). Road surfaces may contain high levels of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, which can be toxic to aquatic life and that can persist in the environment for decades. Road usage releases asphalt, rubber material, automotive fluids and fuel, and metals from brake linings that concentrate on or near road surfaces and are eventually flushed into streams and marine EFH (Grosenheider et al. 2005, Simon and Sobieraj 2006, Weiss et al. 2008, Feist et al. 2017). Other pollutants commonly found in stormwater and urban runoff can impact water chemistry, and include estrogens, sediment from construction, oil and metals from vehicles, road salts, bacteria from failing septic systems or animal waste, and fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides (Neff 1985, Groefman et al. 2002, Atkinson et al. 2003, Walsh et al. 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007, Johnson et al. 2008, Laetz et al. 2009).

The release of such chemicals impacts water quality in EFH (Collier et al. 1998, Allan 2004, Grosenheider et al. 2005), often impairing physiology and survival of aquatic organisms (Dethloff et al. 2001, Meador et al. 2010, Feist et al. 2011, Scholz et al. 2011, Feist et al. 2017) and altering food webs (USEPA 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007, Macneale et al. 2010). Stormwater and urban runoff contamination can lead to reduced primary production (Johnston et al. 2014) and alteration of cellular function and biochemical mechanisms (Poston 2001, Sethajintanin et al. 2004, Meador et al. 2010, Scholz et al. 2011, Jenkins et al. 2014, Melwani et al. 2014). For example, copper found in auto brake pads disrupts neurotoxic and olfactory receptors that control homing, predator avoidance, and spawning behavior in fish (Baldwin et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014). Coho salmon are particularly sensitive to chemical impacts to stormwater runoff and have been shown to die within hours of a large runoff event (Chow et al. 2019).

Potential Conservation Measures for Stormwater and Urban Runoff

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of stormwater and urban runoff on EFH.

General guidelines

- Focus resources on conservation and restoration of upland habitats on private and public lands (Burnett et al. 2007).
- Remediate stormwater impacts through widespread application of innovative approaches to drainage design (Walsh et al. 2005, McIntyre et al. 2015).
- Size stormwater BMPs to capture all first flush flows for treatment (e.g., infiltration) and to be able to handle a set size of storm (e.g., 2-year storm). For example, see fact sheet in San Francisco Bay Region's Municipal Regional Stormwater NPDES Permit guide.[3]

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Decrease hydromodification by requiring infiltration of stormwater in all new developments and redevelopments. Where infiltration is no longer possible, detain runoff and release it in a manner that mimics the natural hydrograph.
- Monitor water quality discharges following National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System requirements from all discharge points (including municipal stormwater systems, desalinization plants, and irrigation ditches).
- Establish conservation guidelines for water use permits, and encourage the purchase or lease of water rights and the use of water to conserve or augment instream flows in accordance with state and federal water laws.
- Manage stormwater to replicate the natural hydrologic cycle, maintaining natural infiltration and runoff rates to the maximum extent practicable.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Maintain or increase riparian vegetation to reduce stream bank failures and filter overland flows.
- Increase use of infiltration or detention BMPs throughout the watershed to reduce peak flows that cause erosion, and to capture sediments before delivery to the stream network.
- Develop and enforce construction and stormwater permits that require minimization of sediment discharges.
- See state stormwater BMP manuals (CA Stormwater Quality Association, WA State Department of Ecology) for numerous other BMP possibilities.

Release of contaminants

- Implement bioinfiltration features to prevent lethal stormwater impacts to fish. These should always be installed along roads and road drainage systems (Spromberg et al. 2015). Possible features include permeable pavers,

---

[3] https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/phase1r2_2009_0074

bioretention swales, impervious containment areas, stormwater wetponds, and rain gardens, among others (McIntyre et al. 2015).
- Apply the management measures developed for controlling pollution from runoff in coastal areas to freshwater EFH.
- For those waterbodies that are defined as water quality-limited (303(d) list),[4] establish total maximum daily loads and develop appropriate management plans to attain management goals.
- Require increased allocation of resources to complete existing and future TMDLs established on waterbodies designated as water quality-limited in EFH habitat.
- Establish and update pollution prevention plans, spill control practices, and spill control equipment for the handling or transporting of toxic substances in EFH. Consider bonds or other damage compensation mechanisms to cover clean-up, restoration, and mitigation costs.
- Reduce the size of mixing zones that discharge to coastal areas and watersheds.
- Utilize biological effects thresholds (e.g., those recently established for dissolved copper) for transportation facilities that discharge to EFH habitat.
- Require use of best available science and technologies in upgrading wastewater systems to avoid combined sewer overflow problems and chlorinated sewage discharges into rivers, estuaries, and the ocean.
- Design and install proper wastewater treatment systems. Locate them away from open waters, wetlands, and floodplains.
- Where vegetated swales or other low maintenance infrastructure is not feasible, install oil–water separators or other commercial systems to treat runoff from impervious surfaces in areas adjacent to EFH. Ensure that oil–water separators are regularly maintained to prevent clogs and ensure that they function properly on a continuing basis.

References

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Arnold, C. L., and C. J. Gibbons. 1996. Impervious surface coverage: The emergence of a key environmental indicator. Journal of American Planning Association 62:243–258.

Atkinson, S., M. J. Atkinson, and A. M. Tarrant. 2003. Estrogens from sewage in coastal marine environments. Environmental Health Perspectives 111:531–535.

Baldwin, D. H., C. P. Tatara, and N. L. Scholz. 2011. Copper-induced olfactory toxicity in salmon and steelhead: Extrapolation across species and rearing environments. Aquatic Toxicology 101:295–297.

Beechie, T. J., D. A. Sear, J. D. Olden, G. R. Pess, J. M. Buffington, H. Moir, P. Roni, and M. M. Pollock. 2010. Process-based principles for restoring river ecosystems. BioScience 60:209–222.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

---

[4] https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Water-improvement/Assessment-of-state-waters-303d

Bosch, J. M., and J. D. Hewlett. 1982. A review of catchment experiments to determine the effect of vegetation changes on water yield and evapotranspiration. Journal of Hydrology 55:3–23.

Brown, A. V., M. M. Lyttle, and K. B. Brown. 1998. Impacts of gravel mining on gravel bed streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:979–994.

Burnett, K. M., G. H. Reeves, D. J. Miller, S. Clarke, K. Vance-Borland, and K. Christiansen. 2007. Distribution of salmon-habitat potential relative to landscape characteristics and implications for conservation. Ecological Applications 17:66–80.

Caldwell, P. V., G. Sun, S. G. McNulty, E. C. Cohen, and J. A. Moore Myers. 2012 Impacts of impervious cover, water withdrawals, and climate change on river flows in the conterminous US. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 16:2839–2857.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Chow, M. I., J. I. Lundin, C. J. Mitchell, J. W. Davis, G. Young, N. L. Scholz, and J. K. McIntyre. 2019. An urban stormwater runoff mortality syndrome in juvenile coho salmon. Aquatic Toxicology 214:105231.

Collier, T. K., L. L. Johnson, C. M. Stehr, M. S. Myers, and J. E. Stein. 1998. A comprehensive assessment of the impacts of contaminants on fish from an urban waterway. Marine Environmental Research 46:243–247.

Corbett, C. W., M. Wahl, D. E. Porter, D. Edwards, and C. Moise. 1997. Nonpoint source runoff modeling: A comparison of a forested watershed and an urban watershed on the South Carolina coast. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 213:133–149.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

CWP (Center for Watershed Protection). 2003. Impacts of impervious cover on aquatic systems. Center for Watershed Protection, Elliott City, Maryland.

Dethloff, G. M., H. C. Bailey, and K. J. Maier. 2001. Effects of Dissolved Copper on Select Hematological, Biochemical, and Immunological Parameters of Wild Rainbow Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40(3):371–380.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, P. Arnold, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholtz. 2011. Landscape ecotoxicology of coho salmon spawner mortality in urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e23424.

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, D. H. Baldwin, J. A. Spromberg, S. E. Damm, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2017. Roads to ruin: Conservation threats to a sentinel species across an urban gradient. Ecological Applications 27:2382–2396.

Foster, E., L. R. Curtis, and D. Gundersen. 2014. Toxic contaminants in the urban aquatic environment. Pages 123–144 *in* J. A. Yeakley, K. G. Maas-Hebner, and R. M. Hughes, editors. Wild salmonids in the urbanizing Pacific Northwest. Springer, New York.

Furniss, M. J., T. D. Roelofs, and C. S. Kee. 1991. Road construction and maintenance. Pages 297–323 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Gray, A. N., A. A. Herstrom, G. J. Lettman, N. McKay, and J. L. Thompson. 2013. Land use change on non-federal land in Oregon and Washington. Oregon Department of Forestry, Salem, Oregon.

Groefman, P. M., N. J. Boulware, W. C. Zipperer, R. V. Pouyat, L. E. Band, and M. F. Colosimo. 2002. Soil nitrogen cycle processes in urban riparian zones. Environmental Science & Technology 36:4547–4552.

Grosenheider, K. E., P. R. Bloom, T. R. Halbach, and M. R. Johnson. 2005. A review of the current literature regarding polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in asphalt pavement. MN/DOT Contract No. 81655. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Jenkins, J. A., H. M. Olivier, R. O. Draugelis-Dale, B. E. Eilts, L. Torres, R. Patino, E. Nilsen, and S. L. Goodbred. 2014. Assessing reproductive and endocrine parameters in male largescale suckers (*Catostomus macrocheilus*) along a contaminant gradient in the lower Columbia River, USA. Science of the Total Environment 484:365–378.

Johnson, L. L., M. R. Arkoosh, C. F. Bravo, T. K. Collier, M. M. Krahn, J. P. Meador, M. S. Myers, W. L. Reichert, and J. E. Stein. 2008. The effects of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in fish from Puget Sound, Washington. Pages 877–923 *in* R. T. Di Giulio and D. Hinton, editors. The Toxicology of Fishes. Taylor & Francis, New York.

Johnston, E. L., M. Mayer-Pinto, and T. P. Crowe. 2014. Chemical contaminant effects on marine ecosystem functioning. Journal of Applied Ecology 52:140–149.

Konrad, C. P., D. B. Booth, and S. J. Burges. 2005. Effects of urban development in the Puget Sound lowland, Washington, on interannual streamflow patterns: Consequences for channel form and streambed disturbance. Water Resources Research 41:WO7009. DOI: 10.1029/2005WR004097

Koski, K. V. 1981. Survival and quality of two stocks of chum salmon *Oncorhynchus keta* from egg deposition to emergence. 2nd ICES (International Council for the Exploration of the Sea) Symposium on the Early Life History of Fish: Recent Studies, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, USA, 2–5 April 1979. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Laetz, C. A., D. H. Baldwin, T. K. Collier, V. Hebert, J. D. Stark, and N. L. Scholz. 2009. The synergistic toxicity of pesticide mixtures: Implications for risk assessment and the conservation of endangered Pacific salmon. Environmental Health Perspectives 3:348–353.

Lane, S. N. 2008. Climate change and the summer 2007 floods in the U.K. Geography 93:91–97.

Luchetti, G., and R. Feurstenburg. 1993. Relative fish use in urban and non-urban streams. Proceedings of a conference on wild salmon. University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

McIntyre, J. K., D. H. Baldwin, D. A. Beauchamp, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Low-level copper exposures increase visibility and vulnerability of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout predators. Ecological Applications 22:1460–1471.

McIntyre, J. K., J. W. Davis, C. Hinman, K. H. Macneale, B. F. Anulacion, N. L. Scholz, and J. D. Stark. 2015. Soil bioretention protects juvenile salmon and their prey from the toxic impacts of urban stormwater runoff. Chemosphere 132:213–219.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Melwani, A. R., D. Gregorio, Y. Jin, M. Stephenson, G. Ichikawa, E. Siegel, D. Crane, G. Lauenstein, and J. A. Davis. 2014. Mussel watch update: Long-term trends in selected contaminants from coastal California, 1977–2010. Marine Pollution Bulletin 81:291–302.

Neff, J. M. 1985. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 416–454 *in* G. M. Rand and S. R. Petrocelli, editors. Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. MacDonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:72–82.

Paul, M. J., and J. L. Meyer. 2001. Streams in the urban landscape. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics 32:333–365.

Poff, N. L., J. D. Allan, M. B. Bain, J. R. Karr, K. L. Prestegaard, B. D. Richter, R. E. Sparks, and J. C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime: A paradigm for river conservation and restoration. Bioscience 47:769–784.

Poff, N. L., B. D. Richter, A. H. Arthington, S. E. Bunn, R. J. Naiman, E. Kendy, M. Acreman, C. Apse, B. P. Bledsoe, M. C. Freeman, J. Henriksen, R. B. Jacobson, J. G. Kennen, D. M. Merritt, J. H. O'Keeffe, J. D. Olden, K. Rogers, R. E. Tharme, and A. Warner. 2010. The ecological limits of hydrologic alteration (ELOHA): A new framework for developing regional environmental flow standards. Freshwater Biology 55:147–170.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Rasmussen, J. L. 1994. Environmental restoration, flood plains vs. potholes. Water Resources Update 97:29–33.

Rinaldi, M., and L. Nardi. 2013. Modeling interactions between riverbank hydrology and mass failures. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering 18:1231–1240.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2998–3004.

Scholz, N. L., M. S. Myers, S. G. McCarthy, J. S. Labenia, J. K. McIntyre, G. M. Ylitalo, L. D. Rhodes, C. A. Laetz, C. M. Stehr, B. L. French, B. McMillan, D. Wilson, L. Reed, K. D. Lynch, S. Damm, J. W. Davis, and T. K. Collier. 2011. Recurrent die-offs of adult coho salmon returning to spawn in Puget Sound lowland urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e28013.

Schueler, T. R., L. Fraley-McNeal, and K. Cappiella. 2009. Is impervious cover still important? Review of recent research. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering 14:309–315.

Scrivener, J. C., and M. J. Brownlee. 1989. Effects of forest harvesting on spawning gravel and incubation survival of chum (*Oncorhynchus keta*) and coho salmon (*O. kisutch*) in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 46:681–696.

Sethajintanin, D., E. R. Johnson, B. R. Loper, and K. A. Anderson. 2004. Bioaccumulation profiles of chemical contaminants in fish from the lower Willamette River, Portland Harbor, Oregon. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 46:114–123.

Simon, J. A., and J. A. Sobieraj. 2006. Contributions of common sources of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons to soil contamination. Journal of Remediation 16:25–35.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Sovová, T., D. Boyle, K. A. Sloman, C. Vanegas Pérez, and R. D. Handy. 2014. Impaired behavioural response to alarm substance in rainbow trout exposed to copper nanoparticles. Aquatic Toxicology 152:195–204.

Spromberg, J. A., D. H. Baldwin, S. E. Damm, J. K. McIntyre, M. Huff, C. A. Sloan, B. F. Anulacion, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholz. 2016. Coho salmon spawner mortality in western US urban watersheds: Bioinfiltration prevents lethal storm water impacts. Journal of Applied Ecology 53(2):398–407.

Stover, S. C., and D. R. Montgomery. 2001. Channel change and flooding, Skokomish River, Washington. Journal of Hydrology 243:272–286.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Tabacchi, E., D. L. Correll, R. Hauer, G. Pinay, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, and R. C. Wissmar. 1998. Development, maintenance and role of riparian vegetation in the river landscape. Freshwater Biology 40:497–516.

Tabacchi, E., L. Lambs, H. Guilloy, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, E. Muller, and H. Decamps. 2000. Impacts of riparian vegetation on hydrological processes. Hydrological Processes 14:2959–2976.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2005. National management measures to control nonpoint source pollution from urban areas. EPA-841-B-05-004. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

Wagener, S. M., and J. D. LaPerriere. 1985. Effects of placer mining on the invertebrate communities of interior Alaska streams. Freshwater Invertebrate Biology 4:208–214.

Walsh, C. J., A. H. Roy, J. W. Feminella, P. D. Cottingham, P. M. Groffman, and R. P. Morgan. 2005. The urban stream syndrome: Current knowledge and the search for a cure. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 24:706–723.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Weiss, P. T., G. LeFevere, and J. S. Gulliver. 2008. Contamination of soil and groundwater due to stormwater infiltration practices: A literature review. Project Report No. 515. University of Minnesota, St. Anthony Falls, Minnesota.

Whiley, A. J. 2009. Land use, impervious surface, and water quality: City of Redmond. Publication No. 09-10-033. Washington State Department of Ecology, Lacey, Washington.

White, M. D., and K. A. Greer. 2006. The effects of watershed urbanization of the stream hydrology and riparian vegetation of Los Penasquitos Creek, California. Landscape and Urban Planning 74:125–138.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Young, M. K., W. A. Hubert, and T. A. Wesche. 1991. Selection of measures of substrate composition to estimate survival to emergence of salmonids and to detect changes in stream substrates. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:339–346.

5. Silviculture

Potential Adverse Impacts of Silviculture

The following factors associated with silviculture (hereafter referred to as timber harvest) can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology, release of contaminants, impacts to water quality and food webs, impaired fish passage, and increased surface erosion and mass wasting. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Riparian habitats contribute to the formation and diversity of aquatic EFH (Bilby and Ward 1991, Chamberlin et al. 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Naiman et al. 1998, Romanuk and Levings 2006), buffer water temperatures (Beschta et al. 1987, Clinton 2011), regulate organic matter dynamics—including terrestrial invertebrate inputs—and can stabilize banks, reducing erosion and improving water quality (Hicks et al. 1991, Beschta et al. 2000, Tabacchi et al. 2000, Saunders and Fausch 2007). Timber harvest in riparian habitats can disturb these functions, reducing the quality and quantity of aquatic EFH (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Beechie et al. 1994, Lawrence et al. 2014) and contributing to reduction in fish biomass (Frazey and Wilzbach 2007). Large woody debris (LWD) also plays an important role in formation, availability, and quality of EFH (Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Beechie and Sibley 1997, McHenry et al. 1998, Solazzi et al. 2000, Roni and Quinn 2001) by controlling nutrient cycling and sediment and flow routing, and by serving as a substrate for productive biofilm and invertebrate assemblages (Bilby 1981, Montgomery et al. 1995, Young 2000, Clinton 2011, Coe et al. 2009, Hodson et al. 2014). These land use changes on stream EFH can last decades (Harding et al. 1998). Timber harvest near freshwater and nearshore ecosystems can reduce the inputs of terrestrial organic matter, including LWD, into EFH, impairing these functions (Andrus et al. 1988, Bilby and Ward 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996, Coe et al. 2009). Reductions in riverine-associated LWD recruitment can also result in reduced transport of LWD to nearshore EFH, where it would otherwise provide wildlife habitat and help moderate temperatures for macroinvertebrates (Tonnes 2008). Riparian buffers (areas protected from forest harvest) of at least 30 m width on both stream banks limit changes in key processes such as thermal loading and organic matter flux (Kiffney et al. 2003, Gomi et al. 2006, Kiffney and Richardson 2010).

Food web alterations

Riparian vegetation shades streams, limiting solar inputs, and provides important nutrient and organic matter inputs to streams, such as leaf litter (Cummins 1973) and terrestrial invertebrates that drop into the streams (i.e., allochthonous food subsidies). Leaf litter provides a key energy source, along with stream algal and bacterial assemblages, for aquatic macroinvertebrate communities that are part of the fundamental food source for stream salmonids (Bretscko and Moser 1993). Broadleaf, deciduous trees, such as alder, cottonwood, and willow, are one of the most important sources of leaf inputs to lower-order streams in some regions of Pacific salmon, while litter inputs from coniferous-dominated forests dominate in other regions (Harmon et al. 1986, Meehan 1991, Kiffney and Richardson 2010). This difference in vegetation composition is largely driven by precipitation, temperature, disturbance regime, and soils. Rapidly decomposing hardwood leaves and slower-decomposing evergreen needles provide important sources of nitrogen and other elements that support primary and bacterial productivity. Juvenile salmonids, particularly coho salmon and steelhead, depend on terrestrial insects as an important component of their diets, and all juvenile salmonids depend upon the food base that leaf litter provides for production of aquatic macroinvertebrates. In general, terrestrial invertebrates can comprise >33–50% of juvenile salmon diets (Allan 2003).

Timber harvest near streams increases solar inputs, which leads to a variety of changes, including increased water temperature and rates of algal and bacterial productivity (e.g., Kiffney et al. 2003). These changes can lead to short-term increases in food availability for stream salmonids, which can translate into higher fish growth rates if water temperatures or fine sediments do not exceed stressful levels (Bilby and Bisson 1992). However, growth conditions can shift once riparian trees grow tall enough to shade the stream, leading to reductions in primary and secondary productivity and salmonid biomass (Kaylor and Warren 2018). These reductions can last a decade or more depending on the forest regrowth (Warren et al. 2016).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

The volume and timing of stream discharge can influence both instream and riparian habitat morphology (Tabacchi et al. 1998) and survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005). The presence and composition of riparian vegetation influences hydrological processes by reducing runoff, increasing water uptake and storage, and improving water quality (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Hicks et al. 1991, Tabacchi et al. 2000, Jones and Post 2004, Rinaldi and Nardi 2013). Timber harvest may impact these processes, leading to reduced or excessive peaks in stream flow (Harr et al. 1975, Harr 1976, Hetherington 1982, Duncan 1986, Harr 1986, Keppler and Zeimer 1990). Roads associated with timber harvest could exacerbate peak flows (e.g., Bosch and Hewlett 1982), as water is routed rapidly through road and ditch networks in headwaters where it can capture fine sediments that are transported downstream into spawning and rearing EFH (Harr et al. 1975, Jones and Grant 1996).

The amount of timber harvested (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Keppler and Zeimer 1990, Beschta et al. 2000) and soil disturbance from timber harvest activities within a particular watershed (Johnson and Beschta 1980, Jones and Grant 1996) could alter the frequency and magnitude of peak flows. However, the ratio of area harvested to impacts on stream flows has varied among study areas (Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Stednick and Kern 1992, Stednick 1996) due to a variety of local factors and the proportion of watershed harvested. Nonetheless, flow regimes in small stream basins are generally more vulnerable to timber harvest than are larger stream basins (Bosch and Hewlett 1982).

Release of contaminants

Chemicals used during timber harvest can impact water quality in EFH (Norris et al. 1991). Use of fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides, and accidental spill or leaching of petroleum products can harm EFH and food web processes (ASMFC 1992, Stehr et al. 2009, Macneale et al. 2010).

While pesticides and herbicides may not be released at levels that are acutely harmful to fish (Lisker et al. 2011, King et al. 2013), those used in the past, such as dichlorodiphenyl trichloroethane (DDT), are highly deleterious and can persist in the environment for years after application (Gould et al. 1994). Petroleum-based products (e.g., fuel, oil, hydraulic fluids) are toxic to aquatic life, including fish, but toxicity depends on concentration and exposure time (Neff 1985). Nonetheless, exposure to oil can reduce growth and survival in salmonids (Heintz et al. 2000).

Impacts to water quality

The removal or disturbance of riparian vegetation that results from timber harvest activity can reduce streamside shading and cause increases in water temperatures that could be detrimental to stream-rearing salmonids (Brown and Krygier 1970, Beschta et al. 1987, Johnson and Jones 2000, Kiffney et al. 2003, Webb et al. 2008, Clinton 2011). Loss of shading may be most important in smaller channels (i.e., headwaters, side channels, floodplain channels), because in smaller channels streamside vegetation can more easily shade the entire area of stream EFH (Meehan et al. 1977, Murphy and Hall 1981). Holtby (1988) showed that increased water temperatures resulting from clear-cutting in a small stream altered the life history and reduced survival to adulthood in coho salmon. Conversely, in clear-cut coastal streams in Oregon, coho salmon were not apparently impacted, but a decline in the cutthroat trout population may have been caused by increased temperature (Ringler and Hall 1975). Thus, it is important to note that impacts of timber harvest on stream temperature in EFH can vary markedly among species of fish, life stage, and watersheds (Quinn and Wright-Stow 2008, Pollock et al. 2009, Janisch et al. 2012).

Growth of riparian vegetation influences the nutrient cycle directly through uptake of nutrients from soil and groundwater, and indirectly through organic matter input and the symbiotic associations between plants and microbes (Tabacchi et al. 2000). Nutrient uptake in trees increases with age until reaching equilibrium (Johnson et al. 1982), but storage capacity varies among species (Tabacchi et al. 2000). Regardless, without the soil stability and storage capacity provided by mature vegetation, excess sediment and nutrients can be washed into nearby waterbodies (Feller and Kimmins 1984, Kiffney et al. 2003), reducing the quality of EFH (Feller and Kimmins 1984, Hicks et al. 1991). Increased sunlight combined with increased nutrients as a result of timber harvest can elevate primary production in streams (Ensign and Mallin 2001, Kiffney et al. 2003, Kiffney 2008), which at certain levels can negatively impact EFH (Compton et al. 2003, Wurtsbaugh et al. 2019).

Impaired connectivity

Interconnectivity of EFH is important to the persistence of fishes (Waples et al. 2009). Stream crossings, such as those along timber harvest roads, can create confined, shallow, high-velocity habitats (Castro 2003, Peterson et al. 2013, Khodier and Tullis 2014) that, when perched or blocked, can impact sediment and organic matter flux and organismal connectivity in EFH (Beechie et al. 1994, Warren and Pardew 1998, Bates et al. 2003, Gibson et al. 2005, Price et al. 2010, McKay et al. 2013, Ogren and Huckins 2015). Reduced fish passage can affect fish reproduction (Sheer and Steel 2006) and render fish populations vulnerable to large-scale disturbances (Lamberti et al. 1991). Lateral riverine connectivity can be impacted by building logging roads in or close to floodplain habitat (Blanton and Marcus 2009).

Railways and roads are often built along the banks of rivers, especially in hilly or mountainous terrain where rivers provide low-gradient corridors (Forman et al. 2003).

Increased surface erosion and mass wasting

Timber harvest and associated roads, including crossing structures, can cause increased surface erosion and mass wasting events, both of which can severely impact water quality in EFH (Brown and Krygier 1971, Johnson and Beschta 1980, Sidle et al. 1985, Anderson and Potts 1987, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Platts et al. 1989, Hicks et al. 1991, Reid 1993, Montgomery et al. 1998, Montgomery et al. 2000, Dhakal and Sidle 2004, Kreutzweiser et al. 2005, Sidle 2005). Surface erosion and mass wasting exacerbated by timber harvest activity can increase the delivery of fine sediment loading in EFH, which can increase turbidity, alter behavior of invertebrates, and inhibit feeding, growth, and survival of juvenile salmonids (Barrett et al. 1992, Smith and Wegner 2001, Suttle et al. 2004, Klein et al. 2011). Excessive fine sediments can also inhibit delivery of oxygen to fish embryos, leading to premature hatching, reduced size at emergence, and reduced viability (Chapman 1988, Hicks et al. 1991, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005). In juvenile and adult fishes, suspended sediments can abrade or clog gill membranes (Cederholm and Reid 1987).

Potential Conservation Measures for Silviculture

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate of impacts of silviculture (timber harvest) on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help foresters avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of timber harvest on EFH.

General guidelines

- Incorporate watershed assessment into forestry projects (Beechie et al. 1994) to evaluate the effects of past, present, and future timber sales on organic matter and sediment fluxes, and hydrologic and geomorphologic processes within the watershed.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Ensure that the width of riparian buffers is at least 30 m.
- Mitigate for timber harvest impacts by increasing habitat heterogeneity via enhancement and restoration of watershed processes.
- Create a mixture of successional trajectories of riparian vegetation to reestablish and sustain natural disturbance processes.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Keep overall harvest percentages low (including through the use of buffers) to control impacts of timber harvest on hydrology and stream flow (see Bosch and Hewlett 1982, Stednick 1996, Brown et al. 2005).
- Use process-based runoff models (e.g., DHSVM[5]) to evaluate potential for timber harvest-induced changes in stream flow.

---

[5] https://www.pnnl.gov/projects/distributed-hydrology-soil-vegetation-model

Release of contaminants

- Avoid fueling near streams and include contingencies to avoid and contain spills.
- Ensure that all forestry operations incorporate conservation plans that include controlling non-point source pollution, avoiding sensitive habitats, maintaining riparian corridors, and monitoring and controlling pesticide use.
- Develop a fuel transport, storage, and spill contingency plan.
- Complete staging, cleaning, maintenance, refueling, and fuel storage for wheeled and tracked machinery in staging areas placed 50 m or more away from any stream or stream-associated wetland, or in areas that are hydrologically disconnected from streams and wetlands.
- Inspect all wheeled and tracked machinery that will be operated within 50 m of any stream, waterbody, or wetland daily for fluid leaks before leaving the vehicle staging area. Repair any leaks detected in the vehicle staging area before resuming operation.

Impacts to water quality

- Ensure that riparian buffers are wide enough to limit negative impacts on streams, and that total basal area harvested is less than ~20% (e.g., Stednick 1996, Kiffney et al. 2003).
- Ensure that nearby streams are not already temperature compromised prior to timber harvest.
- Design monitoring studies to assess timber harvest activities on stream temperature and EFH habitat (e.g., Smith 2013).
- Use alternative harvesting methods, such as selective harvest or thinning rather than clear-cutting, to reduce impacts to nutrient cycling (Dahlgren 1998).
- Limit the size of clear-cut units.

Impaired connectivity

- Ensure that new, reconstructed, and existing roads:
  - ◦ Will not impair lateral and longitudinal connections between stream channels, ground water, and wetlands.
  - ◦ Will not increase sedimentation to aquatic systems.
  - ◦ Will have adequate drainage and surfacing.
  - ◦ Will not discharge drainage water into streams or onto potentially unstable land forms (e.g., concave hollows or headwalls on steep hills).
- Require stream crossings to: a) provide adequate fish passage for both adults and juveniles, b) accommodate a 100-year flood without over-topping the road, and c) pass adequate sediment and organic material, including LWD.

Increased surface erosion and mass wasting

- Avoid timber harvest activities near EFH such as streams and wetlands, and on steep or unstable slopes.
- Restrict building of crossing structures during periods where fish are vulnerable (e.g., embryo, larval, and spawning stages).
- Ensure that all timber harvest roads do not increase fine sediments in EFH.
- Apply best management practices (BMPs) for log hauling, recreational use, and seasonal closure, to minimize erosion and sediment generation.
- Require stream crossings to: a) provide adequate fish passage for both adults and juveniles, b) accommodate a 100-year flood without over-topping the road, and c) pass adequate woody material.
- Use temporary roads and stream crossings, where practicable.
- Mitigate for riparian functions altered by new road segments.
- Ensure that all logging roads have adequate drainage and surfacing, and will

not discharge drainage water into EFH or onto potentially unstable land forms.
- Design monitoring studies to assess forest harvest activities on fine sediment inputs and EFH habitat using BACI design (before-after control-impact; Smith 2013).

References

Abbe, T. B., and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Large woody debris jams, channel hydraulics and habitat formation in large rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 12:201–221.

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Anderson, B., and D. F. Potts. 1987. Suspended sediment and turbidity following road construction and logging in western Montana. Water Resources Bulletin 23:681–689.

Andrus, C. W., B. A. Long, and H. A. Froehlich. 1988. Woody debris and its contribution to pool formation in a coastal stream 50 years after logging. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45:2080–2086.

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 1992. Fishery management plan for inshore stocks of winter flounder. FMR No. 21. ASMFC, Washington, D.C.

Barrett, J. C., G. D. Grossman, and J. Rosenfeld. 1992. Turbidity-induced changes in reactive distance of rainbow trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 121:437–443.

Bates, K., B. Barnard, B. Heiner, J. P. Klavis, and P. D. Powers. 2003. Design of road culverts for fish passage. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Beechie, T., E. Beamer, and L. Wasserman. 1994. Estimating coho salmon rearing habitat and smolt production losses in a large river basin, and implications for habitat restoration. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 14:797–811.

Beechie, T. J., and T. H. Sibley. 1997. Relationships between channel characteristics, woody debris, and fish habitat in northwestern Washington streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:217–229.

Beschta, R. L., R. E. Bilby, G. W. Brown, L. B. Holtby, and T. D. Hofstra. 1987. Stream temperature and aquatic habitat: Fisheries and forestry interactions. Pages 191–232 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Beschta, R. L., M. R. Pyles, A. E. Skaugset, and C. G. Surfleet. 2000. Peakflow responses to forest practices in the western cascades of Oregon, USA. Journal of Hydrology 233:102–120.

Bilby, R. E. 1981. Role of organic debris dams in regulating the export of dissolved and particulate matter from a forested watershed. Ecology 62:1234–1243.

Bilby, R. E., and P. A. Bisson. 1992. Allochthonous versus autochthonous organic matter contributions to the trophic support of fish populations in clear-cut and old-growth forested streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49:540–551.

Bilby, R. E., and J. W. Ward. 1991. Changes in characteristics and function of woody debris with increasing size of streams in Western Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 118:368–378.

Blanton, P., and W. A. Marcus. 2009. Railroads, roads and lateral disconnection in the river landscapes of the continental United States. Geomorphology 112:212–227.

Bosch, J. M., and J. D. Hewlett. 1982. A review of catchment experiments to determine the effect of vegetation changes on water yield and evapotranspiration. Journal of Hydrology 55:3–23.

Bretschko, G., and H. Moser. 1993. Transport and retention of matter in riparian ecotones. Hydrobiologia 251(1):95–101.

Brown, G. W., and J. T. Krygier. 1970. Effects of Clear-Cutting on Stream Temperature. Water Resources Research 6(4):1133–1139.

Brown, G. W., and J. T. Krygier. 1971. Clear-cut logging and sediment production in the Oregon Coast Range. Water Resources Research 7:1189–1198.

Brown, A. E., L. Zhang, T. A. McMahon, A. W. Western, and R. A. Vertessy. 2005. A review of paired catchment studies for determining changes in water yield resulting from alterations in vegetation. Journal of Hydrology 310:28–61.

Castro, J. 2003. Geomorphologic impacts of culvert placement and removal: Avoiding channel incision. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chamberlin, T. W., R. D. Harr, and F. H. Everest. 1991. Timber harvest, silviculture, and watershed processes. Pages 181–296 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Clinton, B. D. 2011. Stream water responses to timber harvest: Riparian buffer width effectiveness. Forest Ecology and Management 261:979–988.

Coe, H. J., P. M. Kiffney, G. R. Pess, K. K. Kloehn, and M. L. McHenry. 2009. Periphyton and invertebrate response to wood placement in large Pacific coastal rivers. River Research and Applications 25:1025–1035.

Compton, J. E., M. Robbins Church, S. T. Larned, and W. E. Hogsett. 2003. Nitrogen export from forested watersheds in the Oregon Coast Range: The role of nitrogen-fixing red alder. Ecosystems 6:773–785.

Cummins, K. W. 1973. Trophic relations of aquatic insects. Annual Review of Entomology 18(1):183–206.

Dahlgren, R. A. 1998. Effects of forest harvest on stream-water quality and nitrogen cycling in the Caspar Creek watershed. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR-168. Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, California.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Dhakal, A. S., and R. C. Sidle. 2004. Pore water pressure assessment in a forest watershed: Simulations and distributed field measurements related to forest practices. Water Resource Research 40:w02405. DOI: 10.1029/2003WR002017

Duncan, S. H. 1986. Peak discharge during thirty years of sustained yield timber management in two fifth-order watersheds in Washington State. Northwest Science 60:258–264.

Ensign, S. H., and M. A. Mallin. 2001. Stream water quality changes following timber harvest in a coastal plain swamp forest. Water Research 14:3381–3390.

Feller, M. C., and J. P. Kimmins. 1984. Effects of clearcutting and slash burning on streamwater chemistry and watershed nutrient budgets in Southwestern British Columbia. Water Resources Research 20:29–40.

Forman, R. T. T., D. Sperling, J. A. Bissonette, A. P. Clevenger, C. D. Cutshall, V. H. Dale, L. Fahrig, R. France, C. R. Goldman, K. Heanune, J. A. Jones, F. J. Swanson, T. Turrentine, and T. C. Winter. 2003. Road Ecology: Science and Solutions. Island Press, Washington, D.C.

Frazey, S. L., and M. A. Wilzbach. 2007. The relationship between productivities of salmonids and forest stands in Northern California watersheds. Western Journal of Applied Forestry Impact Factor 22(2):73–80.

Gibson, J., R. L. Haedrich, and C. M. Wernerhelm. 2005. Loss of fish habitat as a consequence of inappropriately constructed stream crossings. Fisheries 30:10–17.

Gomi, T., R. D. Moore, and A. S. Dhakal. 2006. Headwater stream temperature response to forest harvesting with different riparian treatments, coastal British Columbia, Canada. Water Resources Research 42:w08437. DOI: 10.1029/2005WR004162

Gould, E., P. E. Clark, and F. P. Thurberg. 1994. Pollutant effects on demersal fishes. Pages 30–41 *in* R. W. Langton, J. B. Pearce, and J. A. Gibson, editors. Selected living resources, habitat conditions, and human perturbations of the Gulf of Maine: Environmental and ecological considerations for fishery management. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-106.

Harding, J. S., E. F. Benfield, P. V. Bolstad, G. S. Helfman, and E. B. D. Jones. 1998. Stream biodiversity: The ghost of land use past. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 95:14843–14847.

Harmon, M. E., J. F. Franklin, F. J. Swanson, P. Sollins, S. V. Gregory, J. D. Lattin, N. H. Anderson, S. P. Cline, N. G. Aumen, J. R. Sedell, G. W. Lienkaemper, K. Cromack, Jr., and K. W. Cummins. 1986. Ecology of coarse woody debris in temperate ecosystems. Advances in Ecological Research 15:133–302.

Harr, R. D., W. C. Harper, J. T. Krygier, and F. S. Hsieh. 1975. Changes in storm hydrographs after road building and clear-cutting in the Oregon Coast Range. Water Resources Research 11:436–444.

Harr, R. D. 1976. Forest practices and streamflow in western Oregon. USDA Forest Service Technical Report PNW-GTR-49. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experimental Station, Corvallis, Oregon.

Harr, R. D. 1986. Effects of clearcutting on rain-on-snow runoff in western Oregon: A new look at old studies. Water Resources Research 22:1095–1100.

Heintz, R. A., S. D. Rice, A. C. Wertheimer, R. F. Bradshaw, F. P. Thrower, J. E. Joyce, and J. W. Short. 2000. Delayed effects on growth and marine survival of pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* after exposure to crude oil during embryonic development. Marine Ecology Progress Series 208:205–216.

Hetherington, E. D. 1982. A first look at logging effects on the hydrologic regime of Carnation Creek Experimental Watershed. Pages 36–44 *in* G. Hartman, editor. Proceedings of the Carnation Creek Workshop, a 10 year review. Malaspina College, Nanaimo, B.C., Canada.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hodson, A. K., H. Ferris, A. D. Hollander, and L. E. Jackson. 2014. Nematode food webs associated with native perennial plant species and soil nutrient pools in California riparian oak woodlands. Geoderma 228–229:182–191.

Holtby, L. B. 1988. Effects of Logging on Stream Temperatures in Carnation Creek British Columbia, and Associated Impacts on the Coho Salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45(3):502–515.

Janisch, J. E., S. M. Wondzell, and W. J. Ehinger. 2012. Headwater stream temperature: Interpreting response after logging, with and without riparian buffers, Washington, USA. Forest Ecology and Management 270:302–313.

Johnson, M. G., and R. L. Beschta. 1980. Logging, infiltration capacity, and surface erodibility in western Oregon. Journal of Forestry 78:334–337.

Johnson, D. W., D. W. Cole, C. S. Bledsoe, K. Cromack, R. L. Edmonds, S. P. Gessel, C. C. Grier, B. N. Richards, and K. A. Vogt. 1982. Nutrient cycling in forests of the Pacific Northwest. Pages 186–232 *in* R. L. Edmonds, editor. Analysis of Coniferous Forest Ecosystems in the Western United States. US/IBP Synthesis Series 14. Hutchinson Ross Publishing Co., Stroudsburg, Pennsylvania.

Johnson, S. L., and J. A. Jones. 2000. Stream temperature responses to forest harvest and debris flows in western Cascades, Oregon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57(Suppl. 2):30–39.

Jones, J. A., and G. E. Grant. 1996. Peak flow response to clear-cutting and roads in small and large basins, western Cascades, Oregon. Water Resources Bulletin 52:459–474.

Jones, J. A., and D. A. Post. 2004. Seasonal and successional streamflow response to forest cutting and regrowth in the northwest and eastern United States. Water Resources Research 40. DOI: 10.1029/2003WR002952

Kaylor, M. J., and D. R. Warren. 2018. Canopy closure after four decades of postlogging riparian forest regeneration reduces cutthroat trout biomass in headwater streams through bottom-up pathways. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 75:513–524.

Keppler, E. T., and R. R. Ziemer. 1990. Logging effects of streamflow: Water yield and summer low flows at Caspar Creek in Northwestern California. Water Resources Bulletin 26:1669–1679.

Khodier, M. A., and B. P. Tullis. 2014. Fish passage behavior for severe hydraulic conditions in baffled culverts. Journal of Hydraulic Engineering 140:322–327.

Kiffney, P. M. 2008. Response of lotic producer and consumer trophic levels to gradients of resource supply and predation pressure. Oikos 117:1428–1440.

Kiffney, P. M., and J. S. Richardson. 2010. Organic matter inputs into headwater streams of southwestern British Columbia as a function of riparian reserves and time since harvesting. Forest Ecology and Management 260:1931–1942.

Kiffney, P. M., J. S. Richardson, and J. P. Bull. 2003. Responses of periphyton and insects to experimental manipulation of riparian buffer width along forest streams. Journal of Applied Ecology 40:1060–1076.

King, K. A., C. E. Grue, J. M. Grassley, and R. J. Fisk. 2013. Pesticides in urban streams and early life stages of Pacific coho salmon. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 32:920–931.

Klein, R. D., J. Lewis, and M. S. Buffleben. 2011. Logging and turbidity in the coastal watersheds of Northern California. Geomorphology 139:136–144.

Kreutzweiser, D. P., S. S. Capell, and K. P. Good. 2005. Effects of fine sediment inputs from a logging road on stream insect communities: A large-scale experimental approach in a Canadian headwater stream. Aquatic Ecology 39:55–66.

Lamberti, G. A., S. V. Gregory, L. R. Ashkenas, R. C. Wildman, and K. M. S. Moore. 1991. Stream ecosystem recovery following a catastrophic debris flow. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:196–208.

Lawrence, D. J., B. Stewart-Koster, J. D. Olden, A. S. Ruesch, C. E. Torgersen, J. J. Lawler, D. P. Butcher, and J. K. Crown. 2014. The interactive effects of climate change, riparian management, and a nonnative predator on stream-rearing salmon. Ecological Applications 24:895–912.

Lisker, E. B., M. P. Ensminger, S. L. Gill, and K. S. Goh. 2011. Detections of eleven organophosphorus insecticides and one herbicide threatening Pacific salmonids, *Oncorhynchus* spp., in California, 1991–2010. Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 87:355–360.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

McHenry, M. L., E. Schott, R. H. Conrad, and G. B. Grette. 1998. Changes in the quantity and characteristics of large woody debris in streams of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington, USA. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55:1395–1407.

McKay, S., J. R. Schramski, J. N. Conyngham, and J. C. Fischenich. 2013. Assessing upstream fish passage connectivity with network analysis. Ecological Applications 23:1396–1409.

Meehan, W. R., editor. 1991. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Meehan, W. R., F. J. Swanson, and J. R. Sedell. 1977. Influences of riparian vegetation on aquatic ecosystems with particular reference to salmonid fishes and their food supply. Pages 137–145 *in* R. R. Johnson and D. A. Jones, editors. Importance, preservation, and management of riparian habitat: A symposium. General Technical Report RM-43. USDA Forest Service, Fort Collins, Colorado.

Montgomery, D. R., J. M. Buffington, J. M. Smith, and G. Pess. 1995. Pool spacing in forest channels. Water Resources Research 31:1097–1105.

Montgomery, D. R., K. M. Schmidt, H. M. Greenberg, and W. E. Dietrich. 2000. Forest clearing and regional landsliding. Geology 28:311–314.

Montgomery, D. R., K. Sullivan, H. M. Greenberg. 1998. Regional test of a model for shallow landsliding. Hydrological Processes 12:943–955.

Murphy, M. L., and J. D. Hall. 1981. Varied effects of clear-cut logging on predators and their habitat in small streams of the Cascade Mountains, Oregon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:137–145.

Naiman, R. E., K. L. Fetherston, S. J. McKay, and J. Chen. 1998. Riparian forests. Pages 289–323 *in* R. J. Naiman and R. E. Bilby, editors. River ecology and management: Lessons from the Pacific coastal ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Neff, J. M. 1985. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 416–454 *in* G. M. Rand and S. R. Petrocelli, editors. Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Norris, L. A., H. W. Lorz, and S. V. Gregory. 1991. Forest chemicals. Pages 207–296 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Ogren, S. A., and C. J. Huckins. 2015. Culvert replacements: Improvement of stream biotic integrity? Restoration Ecology 23(6):821–828. DOI: 10.1111/rec.12250

Peterson, N. P., R. K. Simmons, T. Cardoso, and J. T. Light. 2013. A probabilistic model for assessing passage performance of coastal cutthroat trout through corrugated metal culverts. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 33:192–199.

Platts, W. S., R. J. Torquemada, and M. L. McHenry. 1989. Changes in salmon spawning and rearing habitat from increased delivery of fine sediment to the South Fork Salmon River, Idaho. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 118:274–283.

Pollock, M. M., T. J. Beechie, M. Liermann, and R. E. Bigley. 2009. Stream temperature relationships to forest harvest in Western Washington. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 45:141–156.

Price, D. M., T. Quinn, and R. J. Barnard. 2010. Fish passage effectiveness of recently constructed road crossings culverts in the Puget Sound region of Washington state. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 30:1110–1125.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Quinn, J. M., and A. E. Wright-Stow. 2008. Stream size influences stream temperature impacts and recovery rates after clearfell logging. Forest Ecology and Management 256:2101–2109.

Reid, L. M. 1993. Research and cumulative watershed effects. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR-141. Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, California.

Rinaldi, M., and L. Nardi. 2013. Modeling interactions between riverbank hydrology and mass failures. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering 18:1231–1240.

Ringler, N. H., and J. D. Hall. 1975. Effects of logging on water temperature and dissolved oxygen in spawning beds. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 104:11–121.

Romanuk, T. N., and C. D. Levings. 2006. Relationships between fish and supralittoral vegetation in nearshore marine habitats. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 16(2):115–132.

Roni, P., and T. P. Quinn. 2001. Density and size of juvenile salmonids in response to placement of large woody debris in western Oregon and Washington streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:282–292.

Saunders, W. C., and K. D. Fausch. 2007. Improved grazing management increases terrestrial invertebrate inputs that feed trout in Wyoming rangeland streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 136:1216–1230.

Sheer, M. B., and E. A. Steel. 2006. Lost watersheds: Barriers, aquatic habitat connectivity, and salmon persistence in the Willamette and lower Columbia River basins. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:1654–1669.

Sidle, R. C. 2005. Influence of forest harvesting activities on debris avalanches and flows. Debris-flow hazards and related phenomena. Springer, Berlin.

Sidle, R. C., A. J. Pearce, and C. L. O'Loughlin. 1985. Hillslope stability and land use. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

Smith, E. P. 2013. BACI design. Pages 141–148 *in* A. H. El-Shaarawi and W. W. Piegorsch, editors. Encyclopedia of Environmetrics, volume 1. Wiley, Chichester, United Kingdom.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Solazzi, M. F., T. E. Nickelson, S. L. Johnson, and J. D. Rodgers. 2000. Effects of increasing winter rearing habitat on abundance of salmonids in two coastal Oregon streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57:906–914.

Stednick, J. D. 1996. Monitoring the effects of timber harvest on annual water yield. Journal of Hydrology 176:79–95.

Stednick, J. D., and T. J. Kern. 1992. Long term effects of timber harvesting in the Oregon Coast Range: The new Alsea Watershed Study (NAWS). Pages 502–510 *in* M. E. Jones and A. Laenen, editors. Interdisciplinary approaches to hydrology and hydrogeology. American Institute of Hydrology, Smyrna, Georgia.

Stehr, C. M., T. L. Linbo, D. H. Baldwin, N. L. Scholz, and J. P. Incardona. 2009. Evaluating the effects of forestry herbicides on fish development using rapid phenotypic screens. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 29:975–984.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Tabacchi, E., D. L. Correll, R. Hauer, G. Pinay, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, and R. C. Wissmar. 1998. Development, maintenance and role of riparian vegetation in the river landscape. Freshwater Biology 40:497–516.

Tabacchi, E., L. Lambs, H. Guilloy, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, E. Muller, and H. Decamps. 2000. Impacts of riparian vegetation on hydrological processes. Hydrological Processes 14:2959–2976.

Tonnes, D. M. 2008. Ecological functions of marine riparian areas and driftwood along north Puget Sound shorelines. Master’s thesis. University of Washington, Seattle.

Waples, R. S., T. Beechie, and G. R. Pess. 2009. Evolutionary history, habitat disturbance regimes, and anthropogenic changes: What do these mean for resilience of Pacific salmon populations? Ecology and Society 14:3.

Warren, M. L., and M. G. Pardew. 2005. Road crossings as barriers to small-stream fish movement. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:637–644.

Warren, D. R., W. S. Keeton, P. M. Kiffney, M. J. Kaylor, H. A. Bechtold, and J. Magee. 2016. Changing forests—changing streams: Riparian forest stand development and ecosystem function in temperate headwaters. Ecosphere 7:e01435.

Webb, B. W., D. M. Hannah, R. D. Moore, L. E. Brown, and F. Nobilis. 2008. Recent advances in stream and river temperature research. Hydrological Processes 22:902–918.

Wurtsbaugh, W. A., H. W. Paerl, and W. K. Dodds. 2019. Nutrients, eutrophication and harmful algal blooms along the freshwater to marine continuum. WIREs Water 6(5):e1373. DOI: 10.1002/wat2.1373

Young, K. A. 2000. Riparian zone management in the Pacific Northwest: Who’s cutting what? Environmental Management 26:131–144.

6. Dam Operations and Removal

Dams are built on rivers and streams to impound or divert water for uses such as power generation, flood control, irrigation, water supply, and navigation. Dams disrupt the flow of water, nutrients, organic matter, organisms, and sediment, leading to profound changes in aquatic environments (NRC 1992, Ligon et al. 1995, Heinz Center 2002). Impacts of dams on EFH are extensive and well documented, occurring both upstream and downstream of the dam. Impacts include modification of hydrologic and geomorphologic processes, alteration of water quality, and fish migration (Ward 1976, Raymond 1979, Ward and Stanford 1979, Armitage 1984, Petts 1984a; Cushman 1985, NRC 1996, Petts 1986, Quinn and Adams 1996, Poff et al. 1997, Quinn et al. 1997, Larinier 2001, Heinz Center 2002, Pringle 2003, Petts and Gurnell 2005, Hodgson et al. 2006, Dewson et al. 2007, Svendsen et al. 2009, Elosegi et al. 2010, Fullerton et al. 2010, Poff and Zimmerman 2010, Tockner et al. 2010). Environmental impacts of dams have been linked to the decline or extirpation of several ecologically, commercially, recreationally, and culturally important fish populations in western North America (Nehlsen et al. 1991, Waples et al. 1991, Fisher 1994, Slaney et al. 1996, Yoshiyama et al. 1998, Schaller et al. 1999, Kareiva et al. 2000, Levin and Tolimeri 2001, McClure et al. 2003, Pess et al. 2008), and to degradation and loss of EFH in estuaries (Bottom et al. 2005, Fresh et al. 2005).

Dams are built because they are important to local and municipal infrastructure and economy; however, many have become obsolete and have lost economic viability (Born et al. 1998). Many others have deteriorated or been abandoned, leaving a legacy of structures that unnecessarily continue to degrade EFH, hinder recovery of endangered species, and even pose a risk to public safety in some cases (Shuman 1995). In addition, some dams were built without fish passage, leading to local extirpation above the dam (Kiffney et al. 2009). Thus, for some dams, environmental costs associated with continued operation outweigh monetary or social benefits. As this information has become more widely understood, the selective removal of dams has gained wider acceptance (Bednarek 2001, Hart et al. 2002, Poff and Hart 2002, O'Connor et al. 2015). While there are many substantial benefits that accompany dam removal (Bednarek 2001, Stanley et al. 2002, Pess et al. 2008, Roark and Podolak 2009, Ritchie and Shellberg 2010, Simons et al. 2011), it is also known that dam removal can have short-term negative impacts on freshwater (Stanley and Doyle 2003, Sethi et al. 2004, Rahel 2013) and marine EFH (Foley et al. 2015), such as increases in suspended sediment previously trapped behind the removed dam (Warrick et al. 2015).

The Dam Operations section outlines some of the adverse impacts of dams. Dam Removal outlines some of the potential adverse impacts of dam removal. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these impacts on EFH are provided in each section.

Dam Operations

Potential adverse impacts of dam operations

The following factors associated with dams, dam operations, and flow regulation can impact EFH and are described below briefly: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, impaired fish passage, and impacts to water quality. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Regulated flows alter stream-channel geomorphic processes and riparian interactions in EFH (Junk et al. 1989, Spence et al. 1996, Brandt 2000, Kondolf 2000, Grant et al. 2003, Petts and Gurnell 2005, Graf 2006, Dewson et al. 2007, Elosegi et al. 2010). Because of altered sediment delivery and substrate recruitment downstream of dams, EFH can become severely degraded (Kondolf 1997). Substrates can become coarser (Pohl 2004) and increasingly embedded (Sennatt et al. 2006), homogenizing instream habitat (Moyle and Mount 2007) and reducing growth and survival of invertebrates and fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Bjornn and Reiser 1991, DeVries 1997, Poff et al. 1997, Quinn 2005). Riparian ecosystems that contribute to the overall condition of EFH can become disconnected from instream processes (Nilsson and Berggren 2000), and both riparian and instream geomorphic processes can be hampered, leading to changes in riparian plant composition and habitat structure, including homogenization of instream habitat. For example, reduced flooding of the Snake River below Jackson Dam transformed a complex, sinuous riparian floodplain to a simple channel with little connection with the floodplain (Marston et al. 2005).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Flow regulation during dam operation alters hydrologic conditions in EFH, changing the frequency, duration, and magnitude of low and high flows and the timing, duration, and variability in flow regimes (Ward 1976, Petts 1984a, Junk et al. 1989, Brandt 2000, Magilligan and Nislow 2005, Graf 2006, Naik and Jay 2011). Flow regulation homogenizes flow regimes (Nislow et al. 2002, Moyle and Mount 2007), impacting physical processes such as sediment and organic matter budgets (transport, erosion, deposition; Petts 1984b, Kondolf 1997, Pess et al. 2008). Regulated flows can lead to stranding of juvenile and larval fish (Woodin 1984) and embryos, alter spawning behavior (Connor and Pflug 2004, Geist et al. 2008, Tiffan et al. 2010, Poirier et al. 2012), and possibly influence life-history strategies of anadromous fish (Connor et al. 2005, Beechie et al. 2006). Regulation can also lead to downstream displacement of fish, as large-volume releases can flush fish over dams and low-volume releases can block upstream movement back into EFH critical to certain life stages (Chun et al. 2011, Young et al. 2011).

Hydrologic connectivity is the water-mediated transfer of matter, energy, and organisms (Ziemer and Lisle 1998). Dams impair hydrologic connectivity, eliminating chemical and physical processes—such as delivery of sediment and organic matter (e.g., wood)—and altering food webs in EFH both upstream and downstream of dams (Pringle 2001, Pringle 2003, Naiman et al. 2012). Sediment and large woody debris are important to development and maintenance of EFH throughout a watershed, but cannot readily pass from upstream EFH through dams into downstream EFH. Instead, sediment and organic matter settle to the bottoms of reservoirs upstream of dams (Wood and Armitage 1997), and wood accumulates at the outlets of reservoirs on the upstream face of dams (e.g., Moulin and Piegay 2004), where neither can serve in development or maintenance of downstream EFH. Water-storage management for reservoirs can also reduce the frequency and magnitude of high flows required to scour fine sediments from spawning substrate in downstream EFH, leading to degradation of spawning habitat (Spence et al. 1996). Furthermore, seasonally fluctuating reservoir surface elevation can impact spawning behavior and success at tributary mouths, where spawning habitat can become desiccated or inundated (Barnett et al. 2013).

Relatively deep reservoirs have high hydrostatic pressures at the bottom that can force atmospheric gases into solution. If these waters are released below the dam, either by water spilling over dams or through turbines, it can cause dissolved gas supersaturation, resulting in injury or death to fish, especially adult salmon that stage during spawning migration below the dam (Beiningen and Ebel 1970, Elston et al. 1997, Beeman and Maule 2006). Furthermore, water plunging over spillways can entrain atmospheric gas regardless of how much gas was in solution before it was spilled (Weitkamp and Katz 1980).

Impaired fish passage

Dams physically obstruct fish passage. When no mechanism is provided to get past a dam, there can be no upstream passage to EFH, leading to local fish extirpations (Schmetterling 2003, Sheer and Steel 2006, Schilt 2007, Lindley and Davis 2011). Expansive areas of EFH upstream of dams have become inaccessible due to impaired fish passage at dams (Pess et al. 2008). State and federal fish and wildlife agencies now generally require fish-passage structures at dams that impede migration routes. However, the presence of such structures does not ensure successful migration to, and spawning in, upstream EFH, and poorly designed passage structures could actually play a role in reduced survival of anadromous fishes during their spawning migration (Caudill et al. 2007).

Dams also constrain downstream passage of anadromous fish (Raymond 1979, Williams et al. 2005). Reduced flows from impoundments can result in higher mortality rates due to increased exposure to predators and physiological stress (for a review of fish passage effects, see Schilt 2007). Dams and regulated flows have shifted migration timing of fish (Scheuerell et al. 2009). Downstream-moving fish can also become entrained or impinged on hydroelectric structures (Ruggles 1980, Mathur et al. 1996).

Impacts to water quality

Dams can also alter water temperature in EFH (McCullough 1999, Brandt 2000, Lessard and Hayes 2003). Natural temperature regimes play an important role in physiological and morphological adaptations among fish populations (Eliason et al. 2011), and affect growth and survival of invertebrates and fish (e.g., Crozier et al. 2014). Changes in water temperature regimes in downstream EFH caused by flow regulation can impact fish physiology, migration timing, and food webs (Spence et al. 1996, Wootton et al. 1996, Quinn et al. 1997, Crossin et al. 2008), and increased temperature in reservoirs can be lethal to fish in some cases (e.g., Mathes et al. 2010). Furthermore, increased water temperature can influence the success of native and non-native predators and competitors (Peterson and Kitchell 2001, Kuehne et al. 2012), and can exacerbate the virulence of disease and increase susceptibility to parasites in freshwater (Cairns et al. 2005, Wagner et al. 2005) and marine EFH (Miller et al. 2010).

If seasonal drawdown of impoundments occurs, it can facilitate freezing, diminishing light penetration and photosynthesis, potentially causing fish kills through anoxia (Spence et al. 1996). Furthermore, climate warming will exacerbate the negative effects dams have on reservoir temperatures.

Potential conservation measures for dam operations

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dam operations on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or operation that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to or during the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dam operations on EFH.

General guidelines

- Do not construct new dam facilities if other, less-damaging approaches to water management can be used.
- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities of the dam on aquatic habitats. Consider these impacts in the review process for dam construction and operation.
- Use seasonal restrictions for construction, maintenance, and operation of dams to avoid impacts to habitat during critical life-history stages. Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Develop water and energy conservation guidelines for integration into dam operations and into regional and watershed-based water resource plans.
- Coordinate maintenance and operations that require drawdown of the impoundment with state and federal resource agencies to minimize impacts to aquatic resources.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Develop a sediment transport and geomorphic maintenance plan to allow for peak flows that will result in sediment pulses through the reservoir/dam system and allow for geomorphic processes determined by high-flow events. If natural sediment and wood transport is not possible, consider sediment and wood additions below the dam.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Operate dams within the natural rates and timing of flow fluctuations. Mimic the natural hydrograph and allow for sediment and wood transport. Run-of-river dam operation is optimal, such that the volume of water entering an impoundment exits the impoundment with minimal change in storage, and is the preferred mode of operation for fishery and aquatic resource interests. Install water flow monitoring equipment upstream and downstream of the facility. Monitor reservoir levels and fluctuations during critical life-history events of fish populations.
- Operate facilities to create flow conditions that provide for fish passage, pre-dam water quality, proper timing of life-history stages, and properly functioning channel conditions.
- Avoid strandings and redd (i.e., spawning nest) dewatering (Connor and Pflug 2004).
- If a dam is deemed necessary, construct

dam facilities with the lowest hydraulic head practicable for the project purpose.

Impaired fish passage

- Design and construct new facilities with efficient and functional upstream and downstream adult and juvenile fish passage to ensure safe, effective, and timely passage.
- Consider all available upstream-passage mechanisms, including natural-like bypass channels, fish ladders, fishlifts, etc. In general, volitional passage is preferable to trap-and-truck methods.
- Retrofit existing dams with efficient and functional upstream and downstream fish passage structures.
- Provide downstream passage to prevent adults and juveniles from passing through the turbines, to minimize delays, and to provide sufficient water downstream for safe passage.
- On the dam intake, use a NOAA-approved fish screen that follows the fish screen criteria in NMFS (2008).

Impacts to water quality

- Use a selective depth outlet structure so that released water more closely matches the natural water temperature regime of adjacent downstream habitat (Stanford and Hauer 1992).

Dam Removal

Potential adverse impacts of dam removal

The following factors associated with dam removal can impact EFH and are described briefly below: sedimentation, siltation and turbidity, release of contaminants, and invasive species. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

The release of accumulated sediments from reservoirs after dam removal increases transport and deposition of fine sediments, temporarily increasing turbidity and reconfiguring channel form, substrate composition, and tidal dynamics in EFH (Bednarek 2001, Bushaw-Newton et al. 2002, Hart et al. 2002, Pizzuto 2002, Doyle et al. 2003, Pess et al. 2008, Major et al. 2012, Bountry et al. 2013, Wilcox et al. 2014, East et al. 2015, Foley et al. 2015, Warrick et al. 2015). In the short term, these changes to EFH could impact site access, site fidelity, and reproductive success for fish (Pess et al. 2008), and increase mortality and decrease species diversity in downstream aquatic communities (Doeg and Koehn 1994, Stanley and Doyle 2003, Thomson et al. 2005). Increased sediment could also be expected to negatively impact riparian habitats connected to EFH. Native riparian vegetation might become covered in sediment, potentially enabling invasive vegetation to establish itself (Roni et al. 2008, Duda et al. 2011).

Release of contaminants

Due to differences in chemical and physical characteristics between flowing and stillwater (lotic and lentic) habitats, dam removal can temporarily impact aspects of water quality such as temperature, turbidity, and oxidation reduction potential. However, in most cases these impacts do not result in chronic water quality degradation (Nechvatal and Granata 2004). Accumulated sediments behind dams often contain contaminants. If dam removal mobilizes contaminants, there is potential to adversely affect aquatic organisms inhabiting EFH, including the eggs, larvae, and juvenile stages of fish and invertebrates (Heinz Center 2002). For example, removal of the Fort Edward Dam in New York released large amounts of PCBs, causing widespread, long-term contamination of the Hudson River (Chisholm 1999).

Invasive species

Dams can facilitate biological invasions (Johnson et al. 2008). However, because dams block the upstream distribution of aquatic organisms, removal of dams could lead to the introduction of a wide range of invasive aquatic organisms, from aquatic vegetation to apex predators (Stanley and Doyle 2003, Doyle et al. 2005, Rahel 2007, Kornis and Vander Zanden 2010, Woodward et al. 2011, Naiman et al. 2012, Rahel 2013).

Potential conservation measures for dam removal

The following site-specific measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dam removal on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one dam-removal project. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dam removal on EFH.

General guidelines

- Consider the history of the project, geomorphology of the watershed, and location in the river system, among other factors, as these will dictate the types of environmental issues dam removal will present.
- Conduct an assessment of the biotic component of the impacted area, particularly if anadromous fish restoration is one of the objectives of the dam removal. For example, the assessment may include characterization of the historic distribution and abundance of fish species, their various life-history habitat requirements, and their limiting environmental factors. The assessment should also evaluate the predicted physical and chemical conditions following dam removal to determine if additional restoration may be necessary.
- Provide downstream movement of large woody debris (LWD) past dam sites, rather than removing it from the system.
- Establish a monitoring protocol to evaluate success of the restoration for fish passage and utilization.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Evaluate past, existing, and future hydrology and sediment transport regimes using a watershed-scale analysis.
- Consider the relative benefits of rapid dam removal and “sluicing” the impounded sediments downstream versus removal of the dam in stages to meter the release of sediments. Plan dam-removal timing according to which approach is most ecologically sound.
- Revegetate the newly exposed stream bank with local native vegetation.
- Establish a contingency plan in the event that the stream channel needs modification following dam removal

(addition of riffle-and-pool complex, added features to create habitat complexity, meanders, etc.) to facilitate fish passage and achieve habitat function goals.

Release of contaminants

- Conduct sufficient testing to evaluate the type, extent, and level of contamination in accumulated sediment while planning and assessing alternatives for dam removal (Bednarek 2001). If the presence of contaminated sediments is extensive, mechanical or hydraulic removal might be required prior to the removal of the dam.

Invasive species

- Consider construction of artificial barriers to impede the dispersal of invasive species (Fausch et al. 2009; for comprehensive review of installations, see Rahel 2013).

References

Armitage, P. D. 1984. Environmental changes induced by stream regulation and their effect on lotic macroinvertebrate communities. Pages 139–164 *in* A. Lillehammer and S. J. Saltveit, editors. Regulated Rivers. Oslo University Press, Oslo, Norway.

Barnett, H. K., D. K. Paige, and W. C. Belknap. 2013. Impact of reservoir elevation during the spawning season on the distribution of bull trout redds. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 33:917–925.

Bednarek, A. T. 2001. Undamming rivers: A review of the ecological impacts of dam removal. Environmental Management 27:803–814.

Beechie, T., E. Buhle, M. Ruckelshaus, A. Fullerton, and L. Holsinger. 2006. Hydrologic regime and the conservation of salmon life history diversity. Biological Conservation 130:560–572.

Beeman, J. W., and A. G. Maule. 2006. Migration depths of juvenile Chinook salmon and steelhead relative to total dissolved gas supersaturation in a Columbia River reservoir. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:584–594.

Beiningen, K. T., and W. J. Ebel. 1970. Effect of John Day Dam on dissolved nitrogen concentrations and salmon in the Columbia River, 1968. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 99(4):664–671.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Born, S. M., K. D. Genskow, T. L. Filbert, N. Hernandez-Mora, M. L. Keefer, and K. A. White. 1998. Socioeconomic and institutional dimensions of dam removals: The Wisconsin experience. Environmental Management 22:359–370.

Bottom, D. L., C. A. Simenstad, J. Burke, A. M. Baptista, and D. A. Jay. 2005. Salmon at river's end: The role of the estuary in the decline and recovery of Columbia River salmon. National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle.

Bountry, J. A., Y. G. Lai, and T. J. Randle. 2013. Sediment impacts from the Savage Rapids Dam removal, Rogue River, Oregon. Reviews in Engineering Geology 21:93–104.

Brandt, S. A. 2000. Classification of geomorphological effects downstream of dams. Catena 40:375–401.

Bushaw-Newton, K. L., D. D. Hart, J. E. Pizzuto, J. R. Thomson, J. Egan, J. T. Ashley, T. E. Johnson, R. J. Horwitz, M. Keeley, and J. Lawrence. 2002. An integrative approach towards understanding ecological responses to dam removal: The Manatawny Creek study. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 38:1581–1599.

Cairns, M. A., J. L. Ebersole, J. P. Baker, P. J. Wigington, Jr., H. R. Lavigne, and S. M. Davis. 2005. Influence of summer stream temperatures on black spot infestation of juvenile coho salmon in the Oregon Coast Range. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 134:1471–1479.

Caudill, C. C., W. R. Daigle, M. L. Keefer, C. T. Boggs, M. A. Jepson, B. J. Burke, R. W. Zabel, T. C. Bjornn, and C. A Perry. 2007. Slow dam passage in adult Columbia River salmonids associated with unsuccessful migration: Delayed negative effects of passage obstacles or condition-dependent mortality? Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 64:979–995.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chisholm, I. 1999. Dam removal success stories: Restoring rivers through selective removal of dams that don't make sense. American Rivers, Friends of the Earth, Trout Unlimited Report, Washington, D.C.

Chun, S. N., S. A. Cocherell, D. E. Cocherell, J. B. Miranda, G. J. Jones, J. Graham, A. P. Klimley, L. C. Thompson, and J. J. Cech, Jr. 2011. Hydropower-related pulsed-flow impacts on stream fishes: A brief review, conceptual model, knowledge gaps, and research needs. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 21:713–731.

Connor, E. J., and D. E. Pflug. 2004. Changes in the distribution and density of pink, chum, and Chinook salmon spawning in the upper Skagit River in response to flow management measures. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 24:835–852.

Connor, W. P., J. G. Sneva, K. F. Tiffan, R. K. Steinhorst, and D. Ross. 2005. Two alternative juvenile life history types for fall Chinook salmon in the Snake River basin. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 134:291–304.

Crossin, G. T., S. G. Hinch, S. J. Cooke, D. W. Welch, D. A Patterson, S. R. M. Jones, A. G. Lotto, R. A. Leggatt, M. T. Mathes, J. M. Shrimpton, G. Van Der Kraak, and A. P. Farrell. 2008. Exposure to high temperature influences the behaviour, physiology, and survival of sockeye salmon during spawning migration. Canadian Journal of Zoology 86:127–140.

Crozier, L. G., B. J. Burke, B. P. Sandford, G. A. Axel, and B. L. Sanderson. 2014. Passage and survival of adult Snake River sockeye salmon within and upstream from the Federal Columbia River Power System. Report of Research to Walla Walla District, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Northwest Fisheries Science Center, Seattle.

Cushman, R. M. 1985. Review of ecological effects of rapidly varying flows downstream from hydroelectric facilities. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 5:330–339.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Dewson, Z. S., A. B. W. James, and R. G. Death. 2007. A review of the consequences of decreased flow for instream habitat and macroinvertebrates. Freshwater Science 26:401–415.

Doeg, T. J., and J. D. Koehn. 1994. Effects of draining and desilting a small weir on downstream fish and macroinvertebrates. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 9:263–277.

Doyle, M. W., E. H. Stanley, and J. M. Harbor. 2003. Channel adjustments following two dam removals in Wisconsin. Water Resources Bulletin 39:1011–1026.

Doyle, M. W., E. H. Stanley, C. H. Orr, A. R. Selle, S. A. Sethi, and J. M. Harbor. 2005. Stream ecosystem response to small dam removal: Lessons from the Heartland. Dams in Geomorphology 71(1):227–244.

Duda, J. J., J. A Warrick, and C. S. Magiri. 2011. Elwha River dam removal—rebirth of a river. Fact Sheet 2011–3097. U.S. Geological Survey, Seattle. Available: pubs.usgs.gov/fs/2011/3097/ (September 2022).

East, A. E., G. R. Pess, J. A. Bountry, C. S. Magirl, A. C. Ritchie, J. B. Logan, T. J. Randle, M. C. Mastin, J. T. Minear, J. J. Duda, M. C. Liermann, M. L. McHenry, T. J. Beechie, and P. B. Shafroth. 2015. Large-scale dam removal on the Elwha River, Washington, USA: River channel and floodplain geomorphic change. Geomorphology 228:765–786.

Eliason, E. J., T. D. Clarke, M. J. Hague, L. M. Hanson, Z. S. Gallagher, K. M. Jeffries, M. K. Gale, D. A. Patterson, S. G. Hinch, and A. P. Farrell. 2011. Differences in thermal tolerance among sockeye salmon populations. Science 332:109–112.

Elosegi, A., J. Diez, and M. Mutz. 2010. Effects of hydromorphological integrity on biodiversity and functioning of river ecosystems. Hydrobiologia 657:199–215.

Elston, R., J. Colt, S. Abernathy, and W. Maslen. 1997. Gas bubble reabsorption in Chinook salmon: Pressurization effects. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health 9:317–321.

Fausch, K. D., B. E. Rieman, J. B. Dunham, M. K. Young, and D. P. Peterson. 2009. Invasion versus isolation: Trade-offs in managing native salmonids with barriers to upstream movement. Conservation Biology 23:859–870.

Fisher, F. W. 1994. Past and present status of Central Valley Chinook salmon. Conservation Biology 8:870–873.

Foley, M. M., J. J. Duda, M. M. Beirne, R. Paradis, A. Ritchie, and J. A. Warrick. 2015. Rapid water quality change in the Elwha River estuary complex during dam removal. Limnology and Oceanography 60(5):1719–1732. DOI: 10.1002/lno.10129

Fresh, K. L., E. Casillas, L. L. Johnson, and D. L. Bottom. 2005. Role of estuary in the recovery of Columbia River basin salmon and steelhead: An evaluation of the effects of selected factors on salmonid population viability. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-69.

Fullerton, A. H., K. M. Burnett, E. A. Steel, R. L. Flitcroft, G. R. Pess, B. E. Feist, C. E. Torgersen, D. J. Miller, and B. L. Sanderson. 2010. Hydrological connectivity for riverine fish: Measurement challenges and research opportunities. Freshwater Biology 55:2215–2237.

Geist, D. R., E. V. Arntzen, C. J. Murray, K. E. McGrath, Y. Bott, and T. P. Hanrahan. 2008. Influence of river level on temperature and hydraulic gradients in chum and fall Chinook salmon spawning areas downstream of Bonneville Dam, Columbia River. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:30–41.

Graf, W. L. 2006. Downstream hydrologic and geomorphic effects of large dams on American rivers. Geomorphology 79:336–360.

Grant, G. E., J. C. Schmidt, and S. L. Lewis. 2003. A geologic framework for interpreting the downstream effects of dams on rivers. Water Science and Application 7:209–225.

Hart, D. D., T. E. Johnson, K. L. Bushaw-Newton, R. J. Horwitz, A. T. Bednarek, D. F. Charles, D. A. Kreeger, and D. J. Velinsky. 2002. Dam removal: Challenges and opportunities for ecological research and river restoration. BioScience 52:669–681.

Heinz Center. 2002. Dam removal: Science and decision making. The H. John Heinz III Center for Science, Economics, and the Environment, Washington, D.C.

Hodgson, S., T. P. Quinn, R. Hilborn, R. C. Francis, and D. E. Rogers. 2006. Marine and freshwater climatic factors affecting interannual variation in the timing of return to fresh water of sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Fisheries Oceanography 15:1–24.

Johnson, M. R., C. Boelke, L. A. Chiarella, P. D. Colosi, K. Greene, K. Lellis-Dibble, H. Ludemann, M. Ludwig, S. McDermott, J. Ortiz, D. Rusanowsky, M. Scott, and J. Smith. 2008. Impacts to marine fisheries habitat from nonfishing activities in the northeast United States. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-209.

Junk, W. J., P. B. Bayley, and R. E. Sparks. 1989. The flood pulse concept in river–floodplain systems. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences: Proceedings of the International Large River Symposium 106:110–127.

Kareiva, P., M. Marvier, and M. McClure. 2000. Recovery and management options for spring/summer Chinook salmon in the Columbia River Basin. Science 290:977–979.

Kiffney, P. M., G. R. Pess, J. H. Anderson, P. Faulds, K. Burton, and S. C. Riley. 2009. Changes in fish communities following recolonization of the Cedar River, WA, USA by Pacific salmon after 103 years of local extirpation. River Research and Applications 25:438–452.

Kondolf, G. M. 1997. Hungry water: Effects of dams and gravel mining on river channels. Environmental Management 21:533–551.

Kondolf, G. M. 2000. Some suggested guidelines for geomorphic aspects of anadromous salmonid habitat restoration proposals. Restoration Ecology 8:48–56.

Kornis, M. S., and M. J. Vander Zanden. 2010. Forecasting the distribution of the invasive round goby (*Neogobius melanostomus*) in Wisconsin tributaries to Lake Michigan. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 67:553–562.

Kuehne, L. M., J. D. Olden, and J. J. Duda. 2012. Costs of living for juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) in an increasingly warming and invaded world. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 69:1621–1630.

Larinier, M. 2001. Environmental issues, dams and fish migration. Pages 45–89 *in* FAO Fisheries Technical Paper No. 419.: Dams, fish, and fisheries. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy.

Lessard, J. L., and D. B. Hayes. 2003. Effects of elevated water temperature on fish and macroinvertebrate communities below small dams. River Research and Applications 19:721–732.

Levin, P. S., and N. Tolimieri. 2001. Differences in the impacts of dams on the dynamics of salmon populations. Animal Conservation 4:291–299.

Ligon, F. K., W. E. Dietrich, and W. J. Trush. 1995. Downstream ecological effects of dams. BioScience 45:183–192.

Lindley, S. T., and H. Davis. 2011. Using model selection and model averaging to predict the response of Chinook salmon to dam removal. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, Santa Cruz, California.

Magilligan, F. J., and K. H. Nislow. 2005. Changes in hydrologic regime by dams. Geomorphology 71:61–78.

Major, J. J., J. E. O'Connor, C. J. Podolak, M. K. Keith, G. E. Grant, K. R. Spicer, S. Pittman, H. M. Bragg, J. R. Wallick, D. Q. Tanner, A. Rhode, and P. R. Wilcock. 2012. Geomorphic response of the Sandy River, Oregon, to removal of Marmot Dam. Professional Paper 1792. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Marston, R. A., J. D. Mills, D. R. Wrazien, B. Bassett, and D. K. Splinter. 2005. Effects of Jackson Lake Dam on the Snake River and its floodplain, Grand Teton National Park, Wyoming, USA. Geomorphology 71:79–98.

Mathes, M. T., S. G. Hinch, S. J. Cooke, G. T. Crossin, D. A. Patterson, A. G. Lotto, and A. P. Farrell. 2010. Effect of water temperature, timing, physiological condition, and lake thermal refugia on migrating adult Weaver Creek sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 67:70–84.

Mathur, D., P. G. Heisey, E. T. Euston, J. R. Skalski, and S. Hays. 1996. Turbine passage survival estimation for Chinook salmon smolts (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) at a large dam on the Columbia River. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:542–549.

McClure, M. M., E. E. Holmes, B. L. Sanderson, and C. E. Jordan. 2003. A large-scale, multispecies status assessment: Anadromous salmonids in the Columbia River basin. Ecological Applications 13:964–989.

McCullough, D. A. 1999. A review and synthesis of effects of alterations to the water temperature regime on freshwater life stages of salmonids, with special reference to Chinook salmon. Region 10 Water Resources Assessment Report No. 910-R-99-010. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Seattle.

Miller, M. A., R. M. Kudela, A. Mekebri, D. Crane, S. C. Oates, M. T. Tinker, and D. A. Jessup. 2010. Evidence for a novel marine harmful algal bloom: Cyanotoxin (microcystin) transfer from land to sea otters. PLOS ONE 5:e12576.

Moulin, B., and H. Piegay. 2004. Characteristics and temporal variability of large woody debris trapped in a reservoir on the River Rhone (Rhone): Implications for river basin management. River Research and Applications 20:79–97.

Moyle, P. B., and J. F. Mount. 2007. Homogenous rivers, homogenous faunas. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 104:5711–5712.

Naik, P. K., and D. A. Jay. 2011. Human and climate impacts on Columbia River hydrology and salmonids. River Research and Applications 27:1270–1276.

Naiman, R. L. J. R. Alldredge, D. A. Beauchamp, P. A. Bisson, J. Congleton, C. J. Henny, N. Huntly, R. Lamberson, C. Levings, E. N. Merrill, W. G. Pearcy, B. E. Rieman, G. T. Ruggerone, D. Scarnecchia, P. E. Smouse, and C. C. Wood. 2012. Developing a broader scientific foundation for river restoration: Columbia River food webs. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 109:21201–21207.

Nechvatal, M., and T. Granata. 2004. Dam removal as a solution to increase river water quality. Page 74 *in* J. D'Ambrosia, editor. Self-sustaining solutions for streams, wetlands, and watersheds. American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers, St. Joseph, Minnesota.

Nehlsen, W., J. E. Williams, and J. A. Lichatowich. 1991. Pacific salmon at the crossroads: Stocks at risk from California, Oregon, Idaho, and Washington. Fisheries 16:4–21.

Nilsson, C and K. Berggren. 2000. Alterations of riparian ecosystems caused by river regulation. BioScience 50:783–792.

Nislow, K. H., F. J. Magilligan, H. Fassnacht, and D. Bechtel. 2002. Effects of dam impoundment on the flood regime of natural floodplain communities in the upper Connecticut River. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 38:1533–1548.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2008. Anadromous Salmonid Passage Facility Design. National Marine Fisheries Service, Portland, Oregon. Available: repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/4045/ (September 2022).

NRC (National Research Council). 1992. Restoration of aquatic ecosystems: Science, technology, and public policy. National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.

NRC (National Research Council). 1996. Upstream: Salmon and society in the Pacific Northwest. Report of the committee on protection and management of Pacific Northwest anadromous salmonids. National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.

O'Connor, J. E., J. J. Duda, and G. E. Grant. 2015. 1000 dams down and counting. Science 348:496–497.

Pess, G. R., M. L. McHenry, T. J. Beechie, and J. Davies. 2008. Biological impacts of the Elwha River dams and potential salmonid responses to dam removal. Northwest Science 82:72–90.

Peterson, J. H., and J. F. Kitchell. 2001. Climate regimes and water temperature changes in the Columbia River: Bioenergetics implications for predators of juvenile salmon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:1831–1841.

Petts, G. E. 1984a. Impounded rivers: Perspectives for ecological management. John Wiley & Sons, New York.

Petts, G. E. 1984b. Sedimentation within a regulated river. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms 9:125–134.

Petts, G. E. 1986. Water quality characteristics of regulated rivers. Progress in Physical Geography 10:492–516.

Petts, G. E., and A. M. Gurnell. 2005. Dams and geomorphology: Research progress and future directions. Geomorphology 71:27–47.

Pizzuto, J. 2002. Effects of dam removal on river form and process. BioScience 52:683–691.

Poff, N. L., J. D. Allan, M. B. Bain, J. R. Karr, K. L. Prestegaard, B. D. Richter, R. E. Sparks, and J. C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime: A paradigm for river conservation and restoration. Bioscience 47:769–784.

Poff, N. L., and D. D. Hart. 2002. How dams vary and why it matters for the emerging science of dam removal. BioScience 52:659–668.

Poff, N. L., and J. K. H. Zimmerman. 2010. Ecological responses to altered flow regimes: A literature review to inform the science and management of environmental flows. Freshwater Biology 55(1):194–205.

Pohl, M. M. 2004. Channel bed mobility downstream from the Elwha Dams, Washington. The Professional Geographer 56:422–431.

Poirier, J. M., T. A. Whitesel, and J. R. Johnson. 2012. Chum spawning activity in tributaries below Bonneville Dam: The relationship with tailwater elevation and seasonal precipitation. River Research and Applications 28:882–892.

Pringle, C. M. 2001. Hydrologic connectivity and the management of biological reserves: A global perspective. Ecological Applications 11:981–998.

Pringle, C. M. 2003. What is hydrologic connectivity and why is it ecologically important? Hydrological Processes 17:2685–2689.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Quinn, T. P., and D. J. Adams. 1996. Environmental changes affecting the migratory timing of American shad and sockeye salmon. Ecology 77:1151–1162.

Quinn, T. P., S. Hodgson, and C. Peven. 1997. Temperature, flow and the migration of adult sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) in the Columbia River. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1349–1360.

Rahel, F. J. 2007. Biogeographic barriers, connectivity and homogenization of freshwater faunas: It's a small world after all. Freshwater Biology 52:696–710.

Rahel, F. J. 2013. Intentional fragmentation as a management strategy in aquatic systems. BioScience 63:362–372.

Raymond, H. 1979. Effects of dams and impoundment on migrations of juvenile Chinook salmon and steelhead from the Snake River, 1966–1975. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 108:505–529.

Ritchie, A. C., and J. G. Shellberg. 2010. Geomorphic and salmon habitat response to dam removal with minimal constraints to channel evolution, Wa'atch Creek, Western Washington, USA. AGU Fall Meeting Abstracts 1:4.

Roark, J., and C. Podolak. 2009. Response of benthic macroinvertebrate communities to increase in sediment supply from dam removal. AGU Fall Meeting Abstracts 1:4.

Roni, P., K. Hanson, and T. Beechie. 2008. Global review of the physical and biological effectiveness of stream habitat rehabilitation techniques. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:856–890.

Ruggles, C. P. 1980. A review of the downstream migration of Atlantic salmon. Canadian Technical Report of the Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 952. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada.

Schaller, H. A., C. E. Petrosky, and O. P. Langness. 1999. Contrasting patterns of productivity and survival rates for stream-type Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) populations of the Snake and Columbia Rivers. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56:1031–1045.

Scheuerell, M. D., R. W. Zabel, and B. P. Sandford. 2009. Relating juvenile migration timing and survival to adulthood in two species of threatened Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.). Journal of Applied Ecology 46:983–990.

Schilt, C. R. 2007. Developing fish passage and protection at hydropower dams. Applied Animal Behaviour Science 104:295–325.

Schmetterling, D. A. 2003. Reconnecting a fragmented river: Movements of westslope cutthroat trout and bull trout after transport upstream of Milltown Dam, Montana. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 23:721–731.

Sennatt, K. M., N. L. Salant, C. E. Renshaw, and F. J. Magilligan. 2006. Assessment of methods for measuring embeddedness: Application to sedimentation in flow regulated streams. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 42:1671–1682.

Sethi, S. A., A. R. Selle, M. W. Doyle, E. H. Stanley, and H. E. Kitchel. 2004. Response of unionid mussels to dam removal in Koshkonong Creek, Wisconsin (USA). Hydrobiologia 525:157–165.

Sheer, M. B., and E. A. Steel. 2006. Lost watersheds: Barriers, aquatic habitat connectivity, and salmon persistence in the Willamette and lower Columbia River basins. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:1654–1669.

Shuman, J. R. 1995. Environmental considerations for assessing dam removal alternatives for river restoration. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 11:249–261.

Simons, C., K. Walker, and M. Zimring. 2011. Saeltzer Dam removal on Clear Creek 11 years later: An assessment of upstream channel changes since the dam's removal. Water Resources Collections and Archives. University of California Press, Berkeley, California.

Slaney, T. L., K. D. Hyatt, T. G. Northcote, and R. J. Fielden. 1996. Status of anadromous salmon and trout in British Columbia and Yukon. Fisheries 21:20–35.

Spence, B. C., G. A. Lomnicky, R. M. Hughes, and R. P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501–96–6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, Oregon.

Stanford, J. A., and F. R. Hauer. 1992. Mitigating the impacts of stream and lake regulation in the Flathead River catchment, Montana, USA: An ecosystem perspective. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 2:35–63.

Stanley, E. H., and M. W. Doyle. 2003. Trading off: The ecological effects of dam removal. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 1:15–22.

Stanley, E. H., M. A. Luebke, M. W. Doyle, and D. W. Marshall. 2002. Short-term changes in channel form and macroinvertebrate communities following low-head dam removal. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 21:172–187.

Svendsen, K. M., C. E. Renshaw, F. J. Magilligan, K. H. Nislow, and J. M. Kaste. 2009. Flow and sediment regimes at tributary junctions on a regulated river: Impact on sediment residence time and benthic macroinvertebrate communities. Hydrological Processes 23:284–296.

Thomson, J. R., D. D. Hart, D. F. Charles, T. L. Nightengale, and D. M. Winter. 2005. Effects of removal of a small dam on downstream macro invertebrate and algal assemblages in a Pennsylvania stream. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 24:192–207.

Tiffan, K. F., C. A. Haskell, and T. J. Kock. 2010. Quantifying the behavioral response of spawning chum salmon to elevated discharges from Bonneville Dam, Columbia River, USA. River Research and Applications 26:87–101.

Tockner, K., M. Pusch, D. Borchardt, and M. Lorang. 2010. Multiple stressors in coupled river–floodplain ecosystems. Freshwater Biology 55:135–151.

Wagner, G. N., S. G. Hinch, L. J. Kuchel, A. Lotto, S. R. M. Jones, D. A. Patterson, J. S. Macdonald, G. Van Der Kraak, M. Shrimpton, K. K. English, S. Larsson, S. J. Cooke, M. C. Healy, and A. P. Farrell. 2005. Metabolic rates and swimming performance of adult Fraser River sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) after a controlled infection with *Parvicapsula minibicornis*. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 62:2124–2133.

Waples, R. S., R. P. Jones, Jr., B. R. Beckman, and G. A. Swan. 1991. Status review for Snake River Fall Chinook salmon. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/NWC-201.

Ward, J. V. 1976. Effects of flow patterns below large dams on stream benthos: A review. Pages 235–253 *in* J. F. Orsborn and C. H. Allman, editors. Instream flow needs symposium, volume II. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Ward, J. V., and J. A. Stanford. 1979. Ecological factors controlling stream zoobenthos with emphasis on thermal modification of regulated streams. Pages 215–236 *in* J. V. Ward and J. A. Stanford, editors. The Ecology of Regulated Streams. Plenum Press, New York.

Warrick, J. A., J. A. Bountry, A. E. East, C. S. Magirl, T. J. Randle, G. Gelfenbaum, A. C. Ritchie, G. R. Pess, V. Leung, and J. J. Duda. 2015. Large-scale dam removal on the Elwha River, Washington, USA: Source-to-sink sediment budget and synthesis. Geomorphology 246:729–750.

Weitkamp, D. E., and M. Katz. 1980. A review of dissolved gas supersaturation literature. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 109:659–702.

Wilcox, A. C., J. E. O'Connor, and J. Major. 2014. Rapid reservoir erosion, hyperconcentrated flow, and downstream deposition triggered by breaching of 38 m tall Condit Dam, White Salmon River, Washington. Journal of Geophysical Research: Earth Surface 119:1376–1394.

Williams, J. G., S. G. Smith, R. W. Zabel, W. D. Muir, M. D. Scheuerell, B. P. Sandford, D. M. Marsh, R. McNatt, and S. Achord. 2005. Effects of the federal Columbia River power system on salmon populations. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NMFS-NWFSC-63.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Woodin, R. M. 1984. Evaluation of salmon fry stranding induced by fluctuating hydroelectric discharge in the Skagit River, 1980–83. Technical Report 83. Washington Department of Fisheries, Olympia, Washington.

Woodward, A., C. Torgersen, J. Chenoweth, K. Beirne, and S. Acker. 2011. Predicting spread of invasive exotic plants into de-watered reservoirs following dam removal on the Elwha River, Olympic National Park, Washington: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2011-1048. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Wootton, T. J., M. S. Parker, and M. E. Power. 1996. Effects of disturbance on river food webs. Science 273:1558–1561.

Yoshiyama, R. M., F. W. Fisher, and P. B. Moyle. 1998. Historical abundance and decline of Chinook salmon in the Central Valley Region of California. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 18:487–521.

Young, P. S., J. J. Cech, Jr., and L. C. Thompson. 2011. Hydropower-related pulsed-flow impacts on stream fishes: A brief review, conceptual model, knowledge gaps, and research needs. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 21:713–731.

Ziemer, R. R., and T. E. Lisle. 1998. Hydrology. Pages 43–68 *in* R. J. Naiman and R. E. Bilby, editors. River ecology and management: Lessons from the Pacific coastal ecoregion. Springer Verlag, New York.

7. Mineral Mining

Potential Adverse Impacts of Mineral Mining

The following factors associated with mineral mining can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, catastrophic mine failures, and abandoned sites and legacy effects of mining. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Complexity of habitat plays an important role in development and survival of freshwater fishes (Bisson et al. 1992, Pearsons et al. 1992, Schlosser 1995, Quinn and Peterson 1996). Channel alterations caused by the development and operation of mining sites can homogenize habitat composition, reduce channel–riparian hydrologic and geomorphic functions, and alter ground and surface water exchange (Bjerklie and LaPerriere 1985, Lisle et al. 1993, McIntosh et al. 1994, Gilvear et al. 2006, USFS 2012).

Riparian vegetation and large woody debris (LWD) are key components to the development and maintenance of EFH (Gregory et al. 1991, Fausch and Northcote 1992, Li et al. 1994, Naiman et al. 1998, Naiman et al. 2005). Riparian vegetation buffers EFH from solar radiation, helping to regulate water temperature (Spence et al. 1996), and can influence the supply of important food items for stream food webs (Allan et al. 2003). LWD creates important instream habitat features, including pools, bars, islands, and side channels (Bilby and Ward 1991, Abbe and Montgomery 1996), and regulates sediment and flow routing, nutrient cycling, and substrate availability for benthic production (Young 2000, Coe et al. 2009, Clinton 2011, Hodson et al. 2014). Riparian vegetation and organic debris, including LWD, are often removed during mine development (NRC 1999).

Mining can reduce the suitability of important stream habitat. For example, large quantities of gravel and other substrates are relocated into instream tailings piles during suction mining, and these pilings might be placed in locations that attract spawning fish (Harvey and Lisle 1998). The piling of gravel tailings at these new locations could be viewed as a net increase in the availability of gravel for use by spawning fish, especially in channels that are gravel-poor. However, substrates in tailings piles are likely unstable, and more susceptible to scour than those located on natural gravel beds (Harvey and Lisle 1999).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Mining activities can alter hydrologic processes that control water quality in EFH (Harvey and Lisle 1998). Instream disruption of substrates at placer mines may alter water exchange and chemistry between surface and groundwater (Bjerklie and LaPerriere 1985).

Diversion of freshwater for mining in upstream locations can impact hydrologic processes and water quality in downstream estuarine EFH. The influx of freshwater into estuary EFH influences abundance and survival of fish and invertebrates inhabiting estuaries (Kimmerer 2002). Freshwater diversions for mines can alter water budgets (e.g., residence times), temperature, and salinity in estuaries, all of which can alter thermal stratification and, in extreme cases, might cause hypoxic or anoxic events (Kennedy et al. 2002).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Instream mineral mining disturbs fine sediments that are then transported and deposited in downstream EFH, impacting fish and invertebrate prey (for reviews, see Wood and Armitage 1997, Berry et al. 2003, Kemp et al. 2011). Increased fine sediments can clog interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damage gill membranes of aquatic organisms, reduce benthic production, and decrease the area of available EFH (Wagener and LaPerriere 1985, Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Brown et al. 1998, Smith and Wegner 2001, Melton 2009). Increased sedimentation can alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995) and impair predator avoidance of fish. Increased turbidity caused by mining can alter fish feeding behavior and physiology (Harvey and Lisle 1998). Conversely, feeding may increase (Gregory 1993), while predation by piscivores could decrease (Gregory and Levings 1998), in moderately turbid water. It is important to note that seasonal streamflow could exacerbate or buffer impacts of sedimentation caused by mines (Pentz and Kostaschuk 1999), and that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Release of contaminants

Mine waste has a high potential to negatively impact water quality in EFH (Moore et al. 1991, Nelson et al. 1991, West et al. 1995, Allan 2004), with subsequent effects on fish populations (Richer et al. 2021). Mine tailings are composed of heavy metals and toxic substances found in ore, as well as chemicals used during the milling process. These substances can infiltrate EFH through instream pilings and when wastewater from mines is allowed to flow into surface or groundwater systems (Nelson et al. 1991, Phillips and Lipton 1995, USEPA 1997 Appendix B, PFMC 1999). Impacts from water quality contamination that results from mining can persist for years, decades, or centuries (e.g., Bouse et al. 2010).

At high concentrations, metals in EFH can cause widespread invertebrate and fish mortality (e.g., Phillips and Lipton 1995). At lower concentrations, immediate symptoms may not be as obvious, as water soluble metals accumulate on substrates and associated biofilms and travel through the aquatic food web (Clements and Rees 1997, Farag et al. 1998). Copper mining in southern California led to metal contamination of coastal sediments (Shumilin et al. 2011) bioaccumulating in invertebrates and fish (Bonar and Matter 2011). In the Sacramento River, Saiki et al. (2001) found elevated metal concentrations (copper, cadmium, and zinc) in macroinvertebrate prey and juvenile Chinook salmon that had been exposed to mine effluent; in addition, trout that fed on invertebrates from metal-contaminated stream reaches had histopathological abnormalities, reduced feeding and growth, and increased mortality (Woodward et al. 1994, Farag et al. 1995, Woodward et al. 1995). It is important to note that impacts of toxic metals on fish vary depending on the metal, species, life stage, and exposure to other stressors (Chapman 1978, Atchison et al. 1987, Hellawell 1988, Mebane et al. 2012).

Natural processes that release contaminants into EFH have become increasingly widespread as a result of mining (e.g., Todd et al. 2007). Acid mine drainage (AMD) occurs when rock containing sulfide minerals is excavated from an open pit or an underground mine, and then reacts with water and oxygen to create sulfuric acid (West et al. 1995, Jennings et al. 2008). AMD increases the amount of metals and acidic compounds in EFH to levels that are toxic to fish, and may render streams uninhabitable by fish (Munshower et al. 1997, Finlayson et al. 2000, Todd et al. 2007). EFH affected by AMD shows reduced biodiversity, as stream communities become dominated by only a few tolerant species, and altered ecosystem processes, such as decomposition (Hogsden and Harding 2012).

Catastrophic mine failures

Catastrophic failures at mines are relatively uncommon and not well studied; however, water bodies, instream and riparian habitats, and the aquatic food web are highly vulnerable to such unpredictable events (Phillips and Lipton 1995, Lemly 2015, Mount Polley Mining Corporation 2015). For example, in August 2014, a massive tailings pond dam failure released 7.3 million m^3 of tailings, 10.6 million m^3 of water, 6.5 million m^3 of interstitial water, and 0.6 million m^3 of construction materials into downstream lake and stream habitats. Subsequent water samples indicated that water from the tailings pond was alkaline and not acid-generating. However, the channel and riparian zone of Hazeltine Creek were obliterated as a result of a massive debris flood, substrates and debris from the mine were deposited into two relatively pristine lakes, and, while not immediately evident, the influx of trace elements from the tailings pond into the environment is likely to impact the food web over time (Mount Polley Mining Corporation 2015, Byrne et al. 2018). Although relatively rare, tailings retention dam or dike failures have the potential to devastate large, expansive networks of EFH. Considering the latent impacts, contingencies for such disasters should be addressed in licensing of mining operations.

Abandoned sites and legacy effects of mining

Creation of waste dumps, tailings impoundments, mine pits, and other facilities that become permanent features of the post-mining landscape can cause fundamental changes in the physical, chemical, and biological characteristics of EFH. Though instream mining is not as common today, past mining activities, such as hydraulic gold mining, have left a legacy of altered stream channels (USFS 2012); contaminated sediments and water continue to impact EFH near to, and downstream of, abandoned instream mine sites (Spence et al. 1996). Contamination related to mining in the Sierra Nevada has persisted for over 120 years after hydraulic mining ceased (Bouse et al. 2010). The effect of metal mining on riparian and aquatic EFH can be spatially extensive, especially in metal-rich regions, because of the ubiquity of mines (Clements et al. 2000) and high loadings of contaminated mine water. Mercury released from hydraulic gold mining in the Sierra Nevada has been found in sediments up to 250 km downstream in the San Francisco estuary (Bouse et al. 2010). Trophic food webs in EFH continue to be affected by abandoned mines (Suchanek et al. 2008); however, the degree of in-situ contamination and toxicity is possibly a function of contaminant(s) and particle size, water chemistry, water temperature, productivity, and species composition (Simpson and Batley 2007, Pinheiro et al. 2019, Silva et al. 2018, Paller et al. 2019). Particle size of mercury was hypothesized to be a key factor affecting assimilation into the ecosystem (e.g., Gray et al. 2000).

Potential Conservation Measures for Mineral Mining

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of mineral mining on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or operation that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of mineral mining on EFH.

General guidelines

- Implement integrated environmental assessments and monitoring programs. For example, long-term sequential sampling should be implemented in water bodies connected to the mine site to determine the impacts of mine operations on EFH. Such a program could involve collection of baseline trophic food web data (i.e., water quality, invertebrates, and fish) including invertebrate and fish abundance and diversity, and metal concentrations in water, sediment, and tissue. Collect pre-development data over a time frame that accounts for temporal variability in physical and biological responses.
- Schedule all maintenance and construction activities when the fewest aquatic species and least vulnerable life stages will be present. This is especially important where listed species are present in the vicinity of, or could be affected by, the operation.
- Obtain a plan of operation from dredge miners before dredge mining begins. An operating plan provides an opportunity for dialog with the miners concerning potential EFH impacts. An operating plan might include the following:
    - ◦ Projected dates of operation.
    - ◦ Descriptions of the types of equipment that will be used.
    - ◦ Ingress/egress locations.
    - ◦ Maps or sketches showing locations where dredging will occur and locations of sensitive areas that should be avoided (spawning gravels, debris jams, etc.).
- For specific guidelines for sand and gravel extraction, see NMFS's *National Gravel Extraction Guidance* (Packer et al. 2005).

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Do not mine in water, near water sources, in riparian areas, near hyporheic zones, and in floodplains. Maximize the distance from waterways to minimize all impacts.
- Place suction mine tailings piles in instream locations that will not interfere with important fish life history events (Harvey and Lisle 1999).
- Restore on-site natural contours and plant native vegetation after use to restore habitat function. Monitor the site for an appropriate time to evaluate performance, and implement additional corrective measures if necessary.
- Do not remove or disturb instream roughness elements during mining activities. Preserve and enhance recruitment of LWD, and replace or restore that which is disturbed.
- Do not dredge in locations where the activity could undermine stream banks or widen the stream channel.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Conduct hydrologic, hydraulic, and geomorphologic modeling in conjunction with sub-basin-specific riparian, fish, and invertebrate data to estimate impacts of development and operation on natural resources (including the acid-generating potential associated with the proposed activities). Modelers must clearly articulate how data were collected, clearly report inputs, outputs,and governing equations, and be able to successfully defend assumptions using vetted sensitivity analyses.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Do not allow mine-generated sediments to directly enter or affect EFH. Reduce the aerial extent of ground disturbance (e.g., through phasing of operations), and stabilize disturbed lands to reduce erosion and downstream impacts. Employ methods such as contouring, mulching, and construction of settling ponds to control sediment transport.
- Do not dredge in locations with fine-textured substrates (predominantly sands, fines, or silt).

Release of contaminants

- Conduct contaminant modeling in conjunction with water quality monitoring; consider hydrologic, geomorphologic, riparian, fish, and invertebrate information to estimate impacts of development and operation on natural resources, including the acid-generating potential associated with the proposed activities. Modelers clearly articulate how data were collected, clearly report inputs, outputs, and governing equations, and defend assumptions using vetted sensitivity analyses.
- Eliminate possible spillage of dirt, fuel, oil, toxic materials, and other contaminants directly or indirectly into EFH. Monitor and report turbidity in real time during operations. Prepare a HAZMAT-type spill prevention plan and maintain spill containment and water repellent/oil absorbent clean-up materials on hand.
- Treat wastewater (acid neutralization, sulfide precipitation, reverse osmosis, electrochemical, or biological treatments) and recycle on-site to minimize discharge or infiltration into surface and groundwater systems near EFH. Test wastewater before discharge for compliance with federal and state clean water standards.
- If mercury collects in sluice boxes or other equipment during dredging or other activities, the mercury must be transferred into a vapor-proof, sturdy, unbreakable container to be safely stored and disposed of or recycled.

Catastrophic mine failures

- Monitor environmental conditions using real-time water quality data—for example, turbidity, conductivity, or pH. Employ empirical, vetted regressions between in-situ instantaneous variables at the site (e.g., conductivity) and trace metals, and transmit to online databases to alert subscribers (operators) when metal concentrations or other "site failure" indicators become elevated.

Abandoned sites and legacy effects of mining

- Improve monitoring of development or abandoned site impacts by enabling access to contemporary and historical data (Kuipers et al. 2006).

- Reclaim areas of mine waste that contain heavy metals, acid materials, or other toxic compounds that might impact EFH.
- Monitor environmental conditions using real-time water quality data—for example, turbidity, conductivity, or pH. Laboratory-verified regressions between in-situ instantaneous variables at the site (e.g., conductivity) and trace metals could then be transmitted to online databases to alert subscribers when metal concentrations or other indicators become elevated.

References

Abbe, T. B., and D. R. Montgomery. 1996. Large woody debris jams, channel hydraulics and habitat formation in large rivers. Regulated Rivers: Research & Management 12:201–221.

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Allan, J. D., M. S. Wipfli, J. P. Caouette, A. Prussian, and J. Rodgers. 2003. Influence of streamside vegetation on terrestrial invertebrate subsidies to salmonid food webs. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 60:309–320.

Atchison, G. J., M. G. Henry, and M. B. Sandheinrich. 1987. Effects of metals on fish behavior: A review. Environmental Biology of Fishes 18:11–25.

Berry, W., N. Rubenstein, and N. Melzian. 2003. The biological effects of suspended and bedded sediment (SABS) in aquatic systems: A review. United States Environmental Protection Agency Internal Report 102. National Health and Environmental Health Effects Laboratory, Narrangenset, Rhode Island.

Bilby, R. E., and J. W. Ward. 1991. Characteristics and function of large woody debris in streams draining old-growth, clear-cut, and second-growth forests in southwestern Washington. Canadian Journal of Fishery and Aquatic Sciences 48:2499–2508.

Bisson, P. A., T. P. Quinn, G. H. Reeves, and S. V Gregory. 1992. Best management practices, cumulative effects, and long-term trends in fish abundance in Pacific Northwest river systems. Pages 189–232 *in* R. Naiman, editor. Watershed Management. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Bjerklie, D. M., and J. D. LaPerriere. 1985. Gold-mining effects on stream hydrology and water quality, Circle Quadrangle, Alaska. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 21:235–242.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Bonar, S. A., and W. J. Matter. 2011. Cumulative effects on freshwater fishes. Pages 193–220 *in* P. R. Krausman and L. R. Harris, editors. Cumulative Effects in Wildlife Management: Impact Mitigation. Taylor and Francis, Boca Raton, Florida.

Bouse, R. M., C. C. Fuller, S. N. Luoma, M. I. Hornberger, B. E. Jaffe, and R. E. Smith. 2010. Mercury-contaminated hydraulic mining debris in San Francisco Bay. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed 8:2010.

Brown, A. V., M. M. Lyttle, and K. B. Brown. 1998. Impacts of gravel mining on gravel bed streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:979–994.

Byrne, P., K. A. Hudson-Edwards, G. Bird, M. G. Macklin, P. A. Brewer, R. D. Williams, and H. E. Jamieson. 2018. Water quality impacts and river system recovery following the 2014 Mount Polley mine tailings dam spill, British Columbia, Canada. Applied Geochemistry 91:64–74.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chapman, G. A. 1978. Toxicities of cadmium, copper, and zinc to four juvenile stages of Chinook salmon and steelhead. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 107:841–847.

Clements, W. H., and D. E. Rees. 1997. Effects of Heavy Metals on Prey Abundance, Feeding Habits, and Metal Uptake of Brown Trout in the Arkansas River, Colorado. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126:774–785.

Clements, W. H., D. M. Carlisle, J. M. Lazorchak, and P. C. Johnson. 2000. Heavy metals structure benthic communities in Colorado mountain streams. Ecological Applications 10(2):626–638.

Clinton, B. D. 2011. Stream water responses to timber harvest: Riparian buffer width effectiveness. Forest Ecology and Management 261:979–988.

Coe, H. J., P. M. Kiffney, G. R. Pess, K. K. Kloehn, and M. L. McHenry. 2009. Periphyton and invertebrate response to wood placement in large Pacific coastal rivers. River Research and Applications 25:1025–1035.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

Farag, A. M., M. A Stansbury, H. L. Bergman, C. Hogstrand, and E. MacConnell. 1995. The physiological impairment of free-ranging brown trout exposed to metals in the Clark Fork River, Montana. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:2038–2050.

Farag, A. M., D. F. Woodward, J. N Goldstein, W. Brumbaugh, and J. S. Meyer. 1998. Concentrations of metals associated with mining waste sediments, biofilm, benthic macroinvertebrates, and fish from the Coeur d'Alene River basin, Idaho. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 34:119–127.

Fausch, K. D., and T. G. Northcote. 1992. Large woody debris and salmonid habitat in a small coastal British Columbia stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49:682–693.

Finlayson, B., R. Fujimura, and Z. Z. Huang. 2000. Toxicity of metal-contaminated sediments from Keswick Reservoir, California, USA. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 19:485–494.

Gilvear, D. J., T. M. Waters, and A. M. Milner. 2006. Image analysis of aerial photography to quantify changes in channel morphology and instream habitat following placer mining in interior Alaska. Freshwater Biology 34:389–398.

Gray, J. E., P. M. Theodorakos, E. A. Bailey, and R. R. Turner. 2000. Distribution, speciation, and transport of mercury in stream-sediment, stream-water, and fish collected near abandoned mercury mines in southwestern Alaska, USA. Science of the Total Environment 260:21–33.

Gregory, R. S. 1993. Effect of turbidity on the predator avoidance behavior of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tschwytscha*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:241–246.

Gregory, R. S., and C. D. Levings. 1998. Turbidity reduces predation on migrating juvenile Pacific salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:275–285.

Gregory, S. V., F. J. Swanson, W. A. McKee, and K. W. Cummins. 1991. An ecosystem perspective of riparian zones. BioScience 41:540–551.

Harvey, B. C., and T. E. Lisle. 1998. Effects of suction dredging on streams: A review and an evaluation strategy. Fisheries 23:8–17.

Harvey, B. C., and T. E. Lisle. 1999. Scour of Chinook salmon redds on suction dredge tailings. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 19:613–617.

Hellawell, J. M. 1988. Toxic substances in rivers and streams. Environmental Pollution 50:61–85.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hodson, A. K., H. Ferris, A. D. Hollander, and L. E. Jackson. 2014. Nematode food webs associated with native perennial plant species and soil nutrient pools in California riparian oak woodlands. Geoderma 228–229:182–191.

Hogsden, K. L., and H. S. Harding. 2012. Consequences of acid mine drainage for the structure and function of benthic stream communities: A review. Freshwater Science 31:108–120.

Jennings, S. R., D. R. Neuman, and P. S. Blicker. 2008. Acid mine drainage and effects on fish health and ecology: A review. Reclamation Research Group, Bozeman, Montana.

Kemp, P., D. Sear, A. Collins, P. Naden, and I. Jones. 2011. Impacts of fine sediment on riverine fish. Hydrological Processes 25:1800–1821.

Kennedy, V. S., R. R. Twilley, J. A. Kleypas, J. H. Cowan, and S. R. Hare. 2002. Coastal and marine ecosystems and global climate change: Potential effects on U.S. resources. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, Arlington, Virginia.

Kimmerer, W. 2002. Effects of freshwater flow on abundance of estuarine organisms: Physical effects or trophic linkages? Marine Ecology Progress Series 243:39–55.

Kuipers, J. R., A. S. Maest, K. A. MacHardy, and G. Lawson. 2006. Comparison of predicted and actual water quality at hardrock mines: The reliability of predictions in environmental impact statements. Kuipers & Associates, Butte, Montana.

Lemly, D. A. 2015. Damage cost of the Dan River coal ash spill. Environmental Pollution 197:55–61.

Li, H. W., G. A. Lamberti, T. N. Pearsons, C. K. Tait, J. L. Li, and J. C. Buckhouse. 1994. Cumulative effects of riparian disturbances along high desert trout streams of the John Day basin, Oregon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:627–640.

Lisle, T. E., F. Iseya, and H. Ikeda. 1993. Response of a channel with alternate bars to a decrease in supply of mixed-sized bed load: A flume experiment. Water Resources Research 29:3623–3629.

McIntosh, B. A., J. R. Sedell, J. E. Smith, R. C. Wissmar, S. E. Clarke, G. H. Reeves, and L. A. Brown. 1994. Management history of eastside ecosystems: Changes in fish habitat over 50 years, 1935 to 1992. General Technical Report PNW-GTR-321. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Portland, Oregon.

Mebane, C. A., F. S. Dillon, and D. P. Hennessy. 2012. Acute toxicity of cadmium, lead, zinc, and their mixture to stream-resident fish and invertebrates. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 31:1334–1348.

Melton, B. 2009. In-stream gravel mining impacts and environmental degradation feedback associated with gravel mining on the Rio Tigre of the OSA Peninsula, Costa Rica, and the proposed ADI Jimenez Gravel Mining Concession. An environmental impact summary and hydrographic analysis of the ADI Jimenez Gravel Mining proposal Environmental Impact Statement. Melton Engineering Services, Austin, Texas.

Moore, J. N., S. N. Luoma, and D. Peters. 1991. Downstream effects of mine effluent on an intermontane riparian system. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:222–232.

Mount Polley Mining Corporation. 2015. Mount Polley Mining Corporation—post event environmental impact assessment report—key findings report. Golder Associates, Ltd., Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada.

Munshower, F. F., D. R. Neuman, S. R. Jennings, and G. R. Phillips. 1997. Effects of land reclamation techniques on runoff water quality from the Clark Fork River floodplain, Montana. EPA Office of Research and Development, Washington, D.C.

Naiman, R. J., H. Decamps, M. E. McClain, and G. E. Likens. 2005. Riparia—ecology, conservation, and management of streamside communities. Elsevier Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Naiman, R. E., K. L. Fetherston, S. J. McKay, and J. Chen. 1998. Riparian forests. Pages 289–323 *in* R. J. Naiman and R. E. Bilby, editors. River ecology and management: Lessons from the Pacific coastal ecoregion. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Nelson, R. L., M. McHenry, and W. S. Platts. 1991. Mining. Pages 425–458 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. MacDonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:72–82.

NRC (National Research Council). 1999. Appendix B. Potential environmental impacts of hardrock mining. National Research Council Committee on Hardrock Mining on Federal Lands. National Research Council, Washington, D.C.

Packer, D. B., K. Griffin, and K. E. McGlynn. 2005. National Marine Fisheries Service National Gravel Extraction Guidance: A review of the effects of in- and near-stream gravel extraction on anadromous fishes and their habitats, with recommendations for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/SPO-70.

Paller, M. H., S. M. Harmon, A. S. Knox, W. W. Kuhne, and N. V. Halverson. 2019. Assessing effects of dissolved organic carbon and water hardness on metal toxicity to *Ceriodaphnia dubia* using diffusive gradients in thin films (DGT). Science of the Total Environment 697:134107.

Pearsons, T. N., H. W. Li, and G. A. Lamberti. 1992. Influence of habitat complexity on resistance to flooding and resilience of stream fish assemblages. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 121:427–436.

Pentz, S. B., and R. A. Kostaschuk. 1999. Effect of placer mining on suspended sediment in reaches of sensitive fish habitat. Environmental Geology 37:78–89.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council). 1999. Appendix A: Identification and description of essential fish habitat, adverse impacts, and recommended conservation measures for salmon. Amendment 14 to the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon.

Phillips, G., and J. Lipton. 1995. Injury to aquatic resources caused by metals in Montana's Clark Fork River basin: Historic perspective and overview. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1990–1993.

Pinheiro, J. P. S., C. B. de Assis, M. Muñoz-Peñuela, F. Barbosa Júnior, T. G. Correia, and R. G. Moreira. 2019. Water temperature and acid pH influence the cytotoxic and genotoxic effects of aluminum in the freshwater teleost *Astyanax altiparanae* (Teleostei: Characidae). Chemosphere 220:266–274.

Quinn, T. P., and N. P. Peterson. 1996. The influence of habitat complexity and fish size on over-winter survival and growth of individually marked juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in Big Beef Creek, Washington. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:1555–1564.

Richer, E. E., M. C. Kondratieff, G. Policky, M. D. Robinson, M. Atwood, and M. R. Myers. 2021. From Gold Mining to Gold Medal Fishery: Evaluating the Fishery Response to Stream Restoration on the Upper Arkansas River, Colorado. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 42:24–46.

Saiki, M. K., B. A. Martin, L. D. Thompson, and D. Welsh. 2001. Copper, cadmium, and zinc concentrations in juvenile Chinook salmon and selected fish-forage organisms (aquatic insects) in the upper Sacramento River, California. Water, Air, and Soil Pollution 132:127–139.

Schlosser, I. J. 1995. Critical landscape attributes that influence fish population dynamics in headwater streams. Developments in Hydrobiology 105:71–81.

Shumilin, E., V. Gordeev, G. Rodriguez Figueroa, L. Demina, and K. Choumiline. 2011. Assessment of geochemical mobility of metals in surface sediments of the Santa Rosalia mining region, western Gulf of California. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 60:8–25.

Silva, V., C. R. Marques, I. Campos, T. Vidal, J. J. Keizer, F. Gonçalves, and N. Abrantes. 2018. Combined effect of copper sulfate and water temperature on key freshwater trophic levels—Approaching potential climatic change scenarios. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety 148:384–392.

Simpson, S. L., and G. E. Batley. 2007. Predicting metal toxicity in sediments: A critique of current approaches. Integrated Environmental Assessment and Management 3:18–31.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Spence, B. C., G. A. Lomnicky, R. M. Hughes, and R. P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501–96–6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, Oregon.

Suchanek, T. H., P. J. Richardson, R. A. Zierenberg, C. A. Eagles-Smith, D. G. Slotten, E. J. Harner, D. A. Osleger, D. W. Anderson, J. J. Cech, Jr., S. G. Schladow, A. E. Colwell, J. F. Mount, P. S. King, D. P. Adam, and K. J. McElroy. 2008. The legacy of mercury cycling from mining sources in an aquatic ecosystem: From ore to organism. Ecological Applications 18:12–28.

Todd, A. S., D. M. McKnight, C. L. Jaros, and T. M. Marchitto. 2007. Effects of acid rock drainage on stocked rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*): An in-situ, caged fish experiment. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 130:111–127.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 1997. EPA's national hardrock mining framework. Appendix B: Potential environmental impacts of hardrock mining. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

USFS (U.S. Forest Service). 2012. Crooked River valley rehabilitation design criteria report. Contract #AG-02RC-C-0038. U.S. Forest Service, Nez Perce National Forest, Idaho.

Wagener, S. M., and J. D. LaPerriere. 1985. Effects of placer mining on the invertebrate communities of interior Alaska streams. Freshwater Invertebrate Biology 4:208–214.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

West, C., L. Galloway, and J. Lyon. 1995. Mines, stormwater pollution, and you. Mineral Policy Center, Washington, D.C.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Woodward, D. F., W. G. Brumbaugh, A. J. Delonay, E. E. Little, and C. E. Smith. 1994. Effects on rainbow trout fry of a metals-contaminated diet of benthic invertebrates from the Clark Fork River, Montana. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:51–62.

Woodward, D. F., A. M. Farag, H. L. Bergman, A. J. DeLonay, E. E. Little, C. E. Smiths, and F. T. Barrows. 1995. Metals-contaminated benthic invertebrates in the Clark Fork River, Montana: Effects on age-0 brown trout and rainbow trout. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1994–2004.

Young, K. A. 2000. Riparian zone management in the Pacific Northwest: Who's cutting what? Environmental Management 26:131–144.

8. Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production

Potential Adverse Impacts of Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production

Oil extraction, shipping, and production can have several negative impacts on EFH. The following factors associated with oil extraction, shipping, and production can impact EFH and are described below (with summarizations from Johnson et al. 2008 where noted): loss and alteration of habitat, release of contaminants, discharge of debris, noise effects, and introduction of invasive species. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Negative impacts of oil extraction, shipping, and production, namely oil spills, pose a major potential threat to EFH along the nearshore (Allison et al. 2003, Huppert et al. 2003, Peterson et al. 2003, McCall and Pennings 2012) and offshore of the U.S. West Coast (Coleman and Williams 2002). Impacts of oil spills vary widely among spill sites and species (Claireaux et al. 2004, Frantzen et al. 2012, Mendelssohn et al. 2012). They can infiltrate intertidal zones, living habitats such as mussel beds (Carls et al. 2001), and upstream into freshwater habitats (Carls et al. 2003). Impacts from oil spills linger, continually affecting EFH for decades (Hayes and Michel 1999, Carls et al. 2004, Culbertson et al. 2008, Iverson and Esler 2010, Fodrie and Heck 2011, McCall and Pennings 2012).

Structures associated with fossil fuel facilities in marine EFH can serve as habitat and influence species assemblages, larval production, and trophic pathways of marine organisms (Love et al. 2000, Fabi et al. 2004, Love and York 2005, Page et al. 2007, Lowe et al. 2009, Manoukian et al. 2010, Macreadie et al. 2011). Fish congregate near oil platforms, using the large structures as habitat (Claisse et al. 2014). Thus, the removal of such structures during decommissioning is the removal of habitat (Bull and Kendall 1994, Helvey 2002, Schroeder and Love 2004, Lowe et al. 2009, Martin and Lowe 2010, Buhl-Mortensen et al. 2010). Conversely, the installation of such structures could impact shellfish beds, hard-bottomed habitats, and aquatic vegetation (Mills and Fonseca 2003), such as eelgrass and kelp; underwater trenching for pipeline and cable installation could affect marsh drainage, freshwater and sediment transport, and increase the inland encroachment of saltwater (Chabreck 1972). Inland encroachment of saltwater can lead to the loss of aquatic vegetation (Pezeshki et al. 1987), causing increased soil erosion and a net loss of organic matter. In freshwater EFH, instream pipeline crossing structures can affect water quality and channel morphology (Lévesque and Dubé 2007), and inland oil development can cause widespread habitat degradation (Jorgenson and Joyce 1994, Ramirez and Mosley 2015).

Release of contaminants

The accidental leaking or spillage of petroleum products can devastate marine (Bue et al. 1998, Dubansky et al. 2013) and freshwater organisms and EFH (Carls et al. 2003). Contaminants from oil spills can linger in EFH for decades (Irvine et al. 2006), causing numerous symptoms in fish behavior (Rooker et al. 2013) and physiology (Carls et al. 1999), including cardiac toxicity and dysfunction (Incardona et al. 2005, Incardona et al. 2012, Incardona et al. 2014), and reduced body condition and growth

(Claireaux et al. 2004). Oil contamination inhibits ecosystem functions important to EFH (Culbertson et al. 2008), affects all life stages of fish (Wertheimer et al. 2000), and impacts benthic organisms and vegetation (Jewett et al. 1999). Furthermore, processes used to clean up oil contamination could also have negative impacts on fish. For example, Milinkovitch et al. (2011) found dispersants used to clean up some oiled habitats were harmful to fish, indicating the importance of selecting the appropriate measures for clean-up in different habitats.

Discharge of debris (adapted from Johnson et al. 2008)

Marine fossil fuel facilities cause discharge of debris, including domestic wastewaters generated from the offshore facility and other trash and debris from human activities associated with the facility (Caselle et al. 2002). Debris—whether floating on the surface, suspended in the water column, covering the benthos, or along the shoreline—can have deleterious impacts on fish and shellfish within benthic and pelagic habitats in the marine environment (NEFMC 1998). Furthermore, debris from fossil fuel transportation activities can be ingested by fish (Hoagland and Kite-Powell 1997).

Noise effects

Potential noise sources associated with fossil fuel facilities include aircraft, construction, pile driving, vessel thrusters, dredging, drilling, explosives, seismic exploration, shipping vessels, sonar and acoustic devices, and general site operations. Undersea noise could interfere with fish communication and orientation (Wahlberg and Westerberg 2005). Electrical cables produce noise that could affect organisms in marine EFH (Richardson et al. 1995). Furthermore, the noise produced during installation of facilities, cables, and pipelines could impact marine organisms and EFH (Hoffmann et al. 2000, Thomsen et al. 2006, Snyder and Kaiser 2009). There remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how and to what degree operational noise will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms (OSPAR 2009, Gill and Bartlett 2010, Hawkins et al. 2014, Cordes et al. 2016).

Introduction of invasive species (adapted from Johnson et al. 2008)

Invasive species indroduced into marine and estuarine waters are a significant threat to marine resources (Carlton 1999). Non-native species can be released unintentionally when ships release ballast water (Niimi 2004). Hundreds of species have been introduced into U.S. waters from overseas and from other regions around North America, including finfish, shellfish, phytoplankton, bacteria, viruses, and pathogens (Drake et al. 2005). The transportation of nonindigenous organisms to new environments can have severe impacts on habitat, food webs, and ecosystems (Omori et al. 1994, Keller and Perrings 2011, Pajuelo et al. 2016, Geraldi et al. 2020). Oil platforms can also serve as vectors for invasive species (Friedlander et al. 2014).

Potential Conservation Measures for Oil Extraction, Shipping, and Production

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency on a site-specific basis to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of oil extraction, shipping, and production on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The options represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of oil extraction, shipping, and production on EFH.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Remove residual oil from sediments if oil will persist in sediment and continue to impact recovery of benthic organisms and vegetation (Iverson and Esler 2010).
- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats in the review process.
- Do not locate projects where they will harm sensitive marine and estuarine resources and habitats.
- Characterize pre-construction habitat and associated biological community with consideration for temporal variability, and monitor post-installation change to the community in response to habitat alteration.
- Prior to construction, identify adaptive management thresholds and response actions to be implemented in the event adverse effects to freshwater and marine species occur as a result of loss or alteration of habitat. Consider cumulative effects from other developments within the species range.
- Use modern construction materials and technologies, proper siting protocols, and standardized operating procedures to reduce the risk of environmental damage and degradation.
- Monitor project components installed on the benthos of aquatic habitat—including lakes, streams, wetlands, and the seafloor—for indications of scour, deposition, or other changes to sediment characteristics.

Release of contaminants

- Utilize systems that detect spills and leaks as rapidly as technologically possible so that action can be taken to avoid or reduce the effect to EFH.
- Provide compensatory mitigation when spills occur.
- Plan a comprehensive response to oil spills and stage response equipment.
- Develop a spill clean-up plan and protocols, and make clean-up equipment available on-site for quick response times.

Noise effects

- Time construction and operation to avoid impacts to sensitive life stages and species.
- Prescribe acoustic monitoring for the operational phase, and require that acoustic outputs remain below NMFS acoustic thresholds.
- Do not conduct in-water blasting. If necessary, conduct such activities only when sensitive species are not present in EFH within proximity to the construction activity.

- Pile driving noise: see conservation measures in PFMC (2019), Section 17.1: Pile Driving.
- Vessel noise: see conservation measures in PFMC (2019), Section 11.2: Operation and Maintenance of Vessels.
- Exclude vessels or limit specific vessel activities, such as high-intensity, low-frequency sonar, to known sensitive EFH if evidence indicates that these activities could have an effect on aquatic organisms.

Introduction of invasive species

- Implement invasive species awareness and training efforts that include the use of invasive species identification guides and reporting forms for encounters with priority invasive species.
- Examine and, if necessary, treat all vehicles entering the project area for invasive species.

References

Allison, G. W., S. D. Gaines, J. Lubchenco, and H. P. Possingham. 2003. Ensuring persistence of marine reserves: Catastrophes require adopting an insurance factor. Ecological Applications 13:8–24.

Bue, B. G., S. Sharr, and J. E. Seeb. 1998. Evidence of Damage to Pink Salmon Populations Inhabiting Prince William Sound, Alaska, Two Generations after the *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127(1):35–43.

Buhl-Mortensen, L., A. Vanreusel, A. J. Gooday, L. A. Levin, I. G. Priede, P. Buhl-Mortensen, H. Gheerardyn, N. J. King, and M. Raes. 2010. Biological structures as a source of habitat heterogeneity and biodiversity on the deep ocean margins. Marine Ecology 31(1):21–50.

Bull, A. S., and J. J. Kendall. 1994. An indication of the process: Offshore platforms as artificial reefs in the Gulf of Mexico. Bulletin of Marine Science 55:1086–98.

Carls, M. G., S. D. Rice, and J. E. Hose. 1999. Sensitivity of fish embryos to weathered crude oil: Part I. Low-level exposure during incubation causes malformations, genetic damage, and mortality in larval Pacific herring (*Clupea pallasi*). Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 18(3):481–493.

Carls, M. G., M. M. Babcock, P. M. Harris, G. V. Irvine, J. A. Cusick, and S. D. Rice. 2001. Persistence of oiling in mussel beds after the Exxon Valdez oil spill. Marine Environmental Research 51:167–190.

Carls, M. G., S. D. Rice, G. D. Marty, and D. K. Naydan. 2004. Pink salmon spawning habitat is recovering a decade after the Exxon Valdez oil spill. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 133:834–844.

Carls, M. G., R. E. Thomas, M. R. Lilly, and S. D. Rice. 2003. Mechanism for transport of oil-contaminated groundwater into pink salmon redds. Marine Ecology Progress Series 248:245–255.

Carlton, J. T. 1999. The scale and ecological consequences of biological invasions in the world's oceans. In: Sandlund OT, Schei PJ, Viken A (eds) Invasive species and biodiversity management. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 195–212

Caselle, J. E., M. S. Love, C. Fusaro, and D. Schroeder. 2002. Trash or habitat? Fish assemblages on offshore oilfield seafloor debris in the Santa Barbara Channel, California. ICES Journal of Marine Science 59:258–265.

Chabreck, R. H. 1972. Vegetation, water and soil characteristics of the Louisiana coastal region. LSU Agricultural Experiment Station Reports 77. Available: digitalcommons.lsu.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1146&context=agexp (September 2022).

Claireaux, G., Y. Désaunay, F. Akcha, B. Aupérin, G. Bocquené, H. Budzinski, J. Cravedi, F. Davoodi, R. Galois, C. Gilliers, C. Goanvec, D. Guérault, N. Imbert, O. Mazéas, G. Nonnotte, L. Nonnotte, P. Prunet, P. Sébert, and A. Vettier. 2004. Influence of oil exposure on the physiology and ecology of the common sole *Solea solea*: Experimental and field approaches. Aquatic Living Resources 17:335–351.

Claisse, J. T., D. J. Pondella, M. Love, L. A. Zahn, C. M. Williams, J. P. Williams, and A. S. Bull. 2014. Oil platforms off California are among the most productive marine fish habitats globally. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 111:15462–15467.

Coleman, F. C., and S. L. Williams. 2002. Overexploiting marine ecosystem engineers: Potential consequences for biodiversity. Trends in Ecology & Evolution 17:40–44.

Cordes, E. E., D. O. B. Jones, T. A. Schlacher, D. J. Amon, A. F. Bernardino, S. Brooke, R. Carney, D. M. DeLeo, K. M. Dunlop, E. G. Escobar-Briones, A. R. Gates, L. Génio, J. Gobin, L.-A. Henry, S. Herrera, S. Hoyt, M. Joye, S. Kark, N. C. Mestre, A. Metaxas, S. Pfeifer, K. Sink, A. K. Sweetman, and U. Witte. 2016. Environmental Impacts of the Deep-Water Oil and Gas Industry: A Review to Guide Management Strategies. Frontiers in Environmental Science 4. DOI: 10.3389/fenvs.2016.00058

Culbertson, J. B., I. Valiela, M. Pickart, E. E. Peacock, and C. M. Reddy. 2008. Long-term consequences of residual petroleum on salt marsh grass. Journal of Applied Ecology 45:1284–1292.

Drake, J. M. 2005. Risk Analysis for Invasive Species and Emerging Infectious Diseases: Concepts and Applications. American Midland Naturalist 153(1):4–19.

Dubansky, B., A. Whitehead, J. T. Miller, C. D. Rice, and F. Galvez. 2013. Multi-tissue molecular, genomic, and developmental effects of the *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill on resident gulf killifish (*Fundulus grandis*). Environmental Science & Technology 47:5074–5082.

Fabi, G., F. Grati, M. Puletti, and G. Scarcella. 2004. Effects on fish community induced by installation of two gas platforms in the Adriatic Sea. Marine Ecology Progress Series 273:187–197.

Fodrie, F. J., and K. L. Heck, Jr. 2011. Response of coastal fishes to the Gulf of Mexico oil disaster. PLOS ONE 6:e21609.

Frantzen, M., I. Falk-Petersen, J. Nahrgang, T. J. Smith, G. H. Olsen, T. A. Hangstad, and L. Camus. 2012. Toxicity of crude oil and pyrene to the embryos of beach spawning capelin (*Mallotus villosus*). Aquatic Toxicology 108:42–52.

Friedlander, A. M., E. Ballesteros, M. Fay, and E. Sala. 2014. Marine Communities on Oil Platforms in Gabon, West Africa: High Biodiversity Oases in a Low Biodiversity Environment. PLOS ONE 9:e103709.

Geraldi, N. R., A. Anton, J. Santana-Garcon, S. Bennett, N. Marbà, C. E. Lovelock, E. T. Apostolaki, J. Cebrian, D. Krause-Jensen, P. Martinetto, J. M. Pandolfi, and C. M. Duarte. 2020. Ecological effects of non-native species in marine ecosystems relate to co-occurring anthropogenic pressures. Global Change Biology 26(3):1248–1258.

Gill, A. B., and M. Bartlett. 2010. Literature review on the potential effects of electromagnetic fields and subsea noise from marine renewable energy developments on Atlantic salmon, sea trout and European eel. Scottish Natural Heritage Commissioned Report No. 401. Cranfield University, Bedford, United Kingdom. Available: tethys.pnnl.gov/sites/default/files/publications/Gill_and_Bartlett_2010.pdf (September 2022).

Hawkins, A. D., and A. Popper. 2014. Assessing the impacts of underwater sounds on fishes and other forms of marine life. Acoustics Today 10:30–41.

Hayes, M. O., and J. Michel. 1999. Factors determining the long-term persistence of “Exxon Valdez” oil in gravel beaches. Marine Pollution Bulletin 38:92–101.

Helvey, M. 2002. Are southern California oil and gas platforms essential fish habitat? ICES Journal of Marine Science 59:266–271.

Hoagland, P., and H. L. Kitte-Powell. 1997. Characterisation and mitigation of marine debris in the Gulf of Maine. A report prepared for the U.S. Gulf of Maine Association. Contract No. GM 97-13. Woods Hole Research Consortium, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

Hoffmann, E., J. Astrup, F. Larsen, and S. Munch-Petersen. 2000. Effects of marine wind farms on the distribution of fish, shellfish and marine mammals in the Horns Rev area. Elsamprojekt A/S Baggrundsrapp 24:1–42.

Huppert, D. D., R. L. Johnson, J. Leahy, and K. Bell. 2003. Interactions between human communities and estuaries in the Pacific Northwest: Trends and implications for management. Estuaries 26:994–1009.

Incardona, J. P., M. G. Carls, H. Teraoka, C. A. Sloan, T. K. Collier, and N. L. Scholz. 2005. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-independent toxicity of weathered crude oil during fish development. Environmental Health Perspectives 113:1755–1762.

Incardona, J. P., L. D. Gardner, T. L. Linbo, T. L. Brown, A. J. Esbaugh, E. M. Mager, J. D. Stieglitz, B. L. French, J. S. Labenia, C. A. Laetz, M. Tagal, C. A. Sloan, A. Elizur, D. D. Benetti, M. Grosell, B. A. Block, and N. L. Scholz. 2014. *Deepwater Horizon* crude oil impacts the developing hearts of large predatory pelagic fish. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the USA 111:1510–1518.

Incardona, J. P., C. A. Vines, B. F. Anulacion, D. H. Baldwin, H. L. Day, B. L. French, J. S. Labenia, T. L. Linbo, M. S. Myers, O. P. Olson, C. A. Sloan, S. Sol, F. J. Griffin, K. Menard, S. G. Morgan, J. E. West, T. K. Collier, G. M. Ylitalo, G. N. Cherr, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Unexpectedly high mortality in Pacific herring embryos exposed to the *Cosco Busan* oil spill in San Francisco Bay. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 109:51–58.

Irvine, G. V., D. H. Mann, and J. W. Short. 2006. Persistence of 10-year-old *Exxon Valdez* oil on Gulf of Alaska beaches: The importance of boulder-armoring. Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:1011–1022.

Iverson, S. A., and D. Esler. 2010. Harlequin duck population injury and recovery dynamics following the 1989 *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Ecological Applications 20:1993–2006.

Jewett, S. C., T. A. Dean, R. O. Smith, and A. Blanchard. 1999. "Exxon Valdez" oil spill: Impacts and recovery in the soft-bottom benthic community in and adjacent to eelgrass beds. Marine Ecology Progress Series 185:59–83.

Johnson M. R., C. Boelke, L. A. Chiarella, P. D. Colosi, K. Greene, K. Lellis-Dibble, H. Ludemann, M. Ludwig, S. McDermott, J. Ortiz, D. Rusanowsky, M. Scott, and J. Smith. 2008. Impacts to marine fisheries habitat from nonfishing activities in the northeast United States. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-209.

Jorgenson, M. T., and M. R. Joyce. 1994. Six strategies for rehabilitating land disturbed by oil development in Arctic Alaska. ARCTIC 47:374–390.

Keller, R. P., and C. Perrings. 2011. International Policy Options for Reducing the Environmental Impacts of Invasive Species. BioScience 61(12):1005–1012.

Lévesque, L. M., and M. G. Dubé. 2007. Review of the effects of in-stream pipeline crossing construction on aquatic ecosystems and examination of Canadian methodologies for impact assessment. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 132(1-3):395–409.

Love, M. S., and A. York. 2005. A comparison of the fish assemblages associated with an oil/gas pipeline and adjacent seafloor in the Santa Barbara Channel, Southern California Bight. Bulletin of Marine Science 77(1):101–118.

Love, M. S., J. E. Caselle, and L. Snook. 2000. Fish assemblages around seven oil platforms in the Santa Barbara Channel area. Fishery Bulletin 98(1):96–117.

Lowe, C. G., K. M. Anthony, E. T. Jarvis, and L. F. Bellquist. 2009. Site fidelity and movement patterns of groundfish associated with offshore petroleum platforms in the Santa Barbara Channel. Marine and Coastal Fisheries: Dynamics, Management, and Ecosystem Science 1:71–89.

Macreadie, P. I., A. M. Fowler, and D. J. Booth. 2011. Rigs-to-reefs: Will the deep sea benefit from artificial habitat? Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 9:455–461.

Manoukian, S., A. Spagnolo, G. Scarcella, E. Punzo, R. Angelini, and G. Fabi. 2010. Effects of two offshore gas platforms on soft-bottom benthic communities (northwestern Adriatic Sea, Italy). Marine Environmental Research 70(5):402–410.

Martin, C. J. B., and C. G. Lowe. 2010. Assemblage Structure of Fish at Offshore Petroleum Platforms on the San Pedro Shelf of Southern California. Marine and Coastal Fisheries 2(1):180–194.

McCall, B. D., and S. C. Pennings. 2012. Disturbance and recovery of salt marsh arthropod communities following BP *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill. PLOS ONE 7:e32735.

Mendelssohn, I. A., G. L. Andersen, D. Baltz, R. Caffey, K. R. Carman, J. W. Fleeger, S. B. Joye, Q. Lin, E. Maltby, E. Overton, and L. Rozas. 2012. Oil impacts on coastal wetlands: Implications for the Mississippi River Delta ecosystem after the *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill. BioScience 62:562–574.

Milinkovitch, T., A. Ndiaye, W. Sanchez, S. Le Floch, and H. Thomas-Guyon. 2011. Liver antioxidant and plasma immune responses in juvenile golden grey mullet (*Liza aurata*) exposed to dispersed crude oil. Aquatic Toxicology 101:155–164.

Mills, K., and M. Fonseca. 2003. Mortality and productivity of eelgrass *Zostera marina* under conditions of experimental burial with two sediment types. Marine Ecology Progress Series 255:127–134.

NEFMC (New England Fishery Management Council). 1998. Evaluation of existing overfishing definitions and recommendations for new overfishing definitions to comply with the Sustainable Fisheries Act: Final Report. New England Fishery Management Council, Newburyport, Massachusetts.

Niimi, A. J. 2004. Role of container vessels in the introduction of exotic species. Marine Pollution Bulletin 49(9-10):778–782.

Omori, M., S. van der Spoel, and C. P. Norman. 1994. Impact of human activities on pelagic biogeography. Progress in Oceanography 34(2):211–219.

OSPAR (The Oslo and Paris Commission). 2009. Agreement on CEMP Assessment Criteria for the QSR 2010. OSPAR Agreement 2009-2. OSPAR Commission. Available: qsr2010.ospar.org/media/assessments/p00390_supplements/09-02e_Agreement_CEMP_Assessment_Criteria.pdf (September 2022).

Page, H. M., J. E. Dugan, D. M. Schroeder, H. M. Nishimoto, M. S. Love, and J. C. Hoesterey. 2007. Trophic links and condition of a temperate reef fish: Comparisons among offshore oil platforms and natural reef habitats. Marine Ecology Progress Series 344:245–256.

Pajuelo, J. G., J. A. González, R. Triay-Portella, J. A. Martín, R. Ruiz-Díaz, J. M. Lorenzo, and Á. Luque. 2016. Introduction of non-native marine fish species to the Canary Islands waters through oil platforms as vectors. Journal of Marine Systems 163:23–30.

Peterson, C. H., S. D. Rice, J. W. Short, D. Esler, J. L. Bodkin, B. E. Ballachey, and D. B. Irons. 2003. Long-term ecosystem response to the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Science 302:2082–2086.

Pezeshki, S. R., R. D. Delaune, and W. H. Patrick. 1987. Response of bald cypress (*Taxodium distichum* L. var. Distichum) to increases in flooding salinity in Louisiana's Mississippi River deltaic plain. Wetlands 7(1):1–10.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council). 2019. Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan for the California, Oregon, and Washington Groundfish Fishery, Appendix D: Nonfishing Effects on West Coast Groundfish Essential Fish Habitat and Recommended Conservation Measures. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon. Available: Www.pcouncil.org/documents/2019/06/groundfish-fmp-appendix-d.pdf/ (April 2022).

Ramirez, P., and S. B. Mosley. 2015. Oil and gas wells and pipelines on U.S. wildlife refuges: Challenges for managers. PLOS ONE 10:e0124085.

Richardson, W. J., C. R. Greene, Jr., C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thomson. 1995. Marine mammals and noise. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Rooker, J. R., L. L. Kitchens, M. A. Dance, R. J. D. Wells, B. Falterman, and M. Cornic. 2013. Spatial, temporal, and habitat-related variation in abundance of pelagic fishes in the Gulf of Mexico: Potential implications of the *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill. PLOS ONE 8:e76080.

Schroeder, D. M., and M. S. Love. 2004. Ecological and political issues surrounding decommissioning of offshore oil facilities in the southern California Bight. Ocean and Coastal Management 47:21–48.

Snyder, B., and M. J. Kaiser. 2009. Ecological and economic cost-benefit analysis of offshore wind energy. Renewable Energy 34(6):1567–1578.

Thomsen, F., K. Lüdemann, R. Kafeman, and W. Piper. 2006. Effects of offshore wind farm noise on marine mammals and fish. COWRIE Ltd., Hamburg, Germany.

Wahlberg, M., and H. Westerberg. 2005. Hearing in fish and their reactions to sounds from offshore wind farms. Marine Ecology Progress Series 288:295–309.

Wertheimer, A. C., R. A. Heintz, J. F. Thedinga, J. M. Maselko, and S. D. Rice. 2000. Straying of adult pink salmon from their natal stream following embryonic exposure to weathered *Exxon Valdez* crude oil. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 129:989–1004.

9. Energy-Related Activities

Global demands on energy resources have increased rapidly, and the movement to reduce the human carbon footprint has driven the development of alternative renewable energy sources, such as waves, tidal and oceanic currents, offshore wind, and different forms of fossil fuels (Langhamer et al. 2010, Spaulding et al. 2010, Frid et al. 2012, Moriarty and Honnery 2012, Davies et al. 2014). Located within EFH, marine renewable energy facilities and associated electric cables and pipes are expected to impact EFH and associated organisms in both marine and freshwater environments (Petersen and Malm 2006, Gallaway et al. 2007, Weilgart 2007, Inger et al. 2009, Punt et al. 2009, Snyder and Kaiser 2009, Kirby 2010, Langhamer 2012, Reubens et al. 2013b; Leeny et al. 2014, Ramirez and Mosley 2015). It is thought that the development and mere presence of such structures could have several effects on physical and biological processes in EFH (for a comprehensive review, see Boehlert and Gill 2010). However, because the technology is still developing, empirical information on impacts to EFH along the U.S. West Coast, and globally, is limited (Boehlert et al. 2008, McClure et al. 2010, Miller and Schaefer 2010, Ward et al. 2010, Polagye et al. 2011, Shields et al. 2011, Shumchenia et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012, Broadhurst et al. 2014, Copping et al. 2014, Gill et al. 2014, Shields and Payne 2014, Lindeboom et al. 2015).

This chapter is divided into four sections that outline some of the adverse impacts of energy-related activities on EFH, including factors associated with Wave and Tidal Energy Facilities, Cables and Pipelines, Offshore Wind Facilities, and Liquefied Natural Gas. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these possible effects on EFH are provided in each section.

Wave and Tidal Energy Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of wave and tidal energy facilities

The following factors associated with wave and tidal energy facilities can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, entrainment and impingement, noise effects, and alteration of electromagnetic fields. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Sedimentary habitat dominates the Pacific Northwest ocean seafloor and is teeming with life, providing nursery and foraging habitat (Henkel et al. 2014). Wave and tidal energy facilities will introduce artificial habitat into the ocean and estuaries, affecting EFH and potentially compounding impacts to often previously compromised EFH (Gill 2005). Wave and tidal energy structures sited in soft-bottom habitat may act like artificial reefs on the seafloor and in the water column, altering predation pressure and natural species composition and providing a vector for invasive species by increasing the area of reef-type habitat in native pelagic EFH (Boehlert and Gill 2010, Henkel et al. 2014). Bottom structures (e.g., devices, anchors, moorings, cables) may alter water flow and cause scour, deposition, or other sedimentary grain size changes up to an estimated 20 meters from installations, affecting the prey base for EFH-dependent fish in response to sediment changes (Henkel et al. 2014, Frid et al. 2012). Bottom structures installed on the seafloor may be damaged by snagged fishing gear, resulting in additional disturbance or damage to marine habitat from repair of damaged facilities. Biofouled project equipment may lead to attraction of large predators (Frid et al. 2012), altering species composition and predator–prey relationships in the vicinity. Structures floating in pelagic waters may attract adult or juvenile fish seeking shelter, refuge from predators, food, or the opportunity to increase encounter rate with other conspecifics (Kramer et al. 2015). Facilities located near sensitive EFH could negatively impact various life stages of fish and organisms (Witt et al. 2012), and operation of turbine arrays could impede movements of migrating fish (Hammar et al. 2013).

Altered hydrology

Hydrologic functionality in marine habitats is important to EFH functionality and marine organisms (Goodwin and Williams 1992, Findlay et al. 2002, Burrows 2012). Wave and tidal facilities utilize marine and estuarine hydrologic processes such as swells, waves, tides, and currents to generate power (Frid et al. 2012). Tidal energy facilities could alter water circulation patterns and tidal regimes (Yang et al. 2014), affecting water flow and depth and affecting habitat accessibility, temperature regime, water quality (NEFMC 1998), and impacting marine organisms (Boehlert et al. 2008, Frid et al. 2012, Broadhurst et al. 2014). Estuarine tidal energy structures could change spatial water flow and sediment deposition patterns, potentially altering habitat suitability as fish spawning or nursery areas (Frid et al. 2012). Wave energy facilities could alter wave structure and water flow, features of marine EFH (Frid et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012) that could be important to marine vegetation (Mork 1996, Burrows 2012), the transport of larvae, and structuring of fish assemblages (Layman 2000, Jordaan et al. 2011, Frid et al. 2012).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Construction, decommissioning, and cable burial at wave and tidal facilities could disturb sedimentary habitat and cause increased sedimentation (Frid et al. 2012, Henkel et al. 2014). The impact of increased suspended sediments on aquatic organisms depends on the magnitude of change and the duration of exposure (Newcombe and Jensen 1996). Increased sedimentation can impact feeding ability (Langhamer et al. 2010), injure gills (Lake and Hinch 1999), and lead to increased mortality in aquatic organisms (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Shallow waters, rocky reefs and rises, marshes, wetlands, and estuaries may be particularly vulnerable to increased sedimentation because lower water volumes could decrease dilution and dispersal of suspended sediments (Gowen 1978).

Increased sedimentation could also lead to increased turbidity. Turbidity reduces light availability, which can impact habitat features and aquatic organisms. Light availability influences depth distribution, density, and productivity of eelgrass and other types of submerged aquatic vegetation that provide both habitat structure and energy for nearshore and estuarine EFH (Dennison and Alberte 1982, Dennison and Alberte 1985, Dennison and Alberte 1986, Thom et al. 2003, Zimmerman 2006). Increased turbidity from wave and tidal facilities could affect the development of phytoplankton blooms, affecting organisms at higher trophic levels (Frid et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012). Even slight reductions in light availability can result in lower rates of photosynthesis for submerged aquatic vegetation (Dennison 1987) such as eelgrass and phytoplankton (Cloern 1987), resulting in less forage material for benthic invertebrates and fish.

Release of contaminants

Chemical spills are a possibility during project activities (Boehlert and Gill 2010), including from vessel support or devices themselves (Henkel et al. 2014). Testing of nascent technologies for research or demonstration of technical feasibility may necessitate higher-frequency installation and decommissioning cycles, increasing risks associated with construction activities. Other contamination may result from leaching of anti-fouling paints and heavy metal concentrations when heat exchangers are used, which can have toxic effects on aquatic ecosystems (Boehlert and Gill 2010, Henkel et al. 2014). Recent studies link the potential for chemical pollution from marine renewable energy facilities to adverse effects on a variety of marine species (Shields and Payne 2014, Kramer et al. 2010).

Entrainment and impingement

Tidal and wave energy facilities could impinge or entrain fish (Frid et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012). Impacts of turbines on migrating fish has been highlighted as a major area of concern (Henderson and Bird 2010), and moving parts of facilities could cause collisions or blade strikes, harming organisms (Boehlert and Gill 2010, Henkel et al. 2014). Furthermore, mooring lines designed to secure floating wave devices may present entanglement risks for marine mammals, sea turtles, and other animals if the lines are slack or capable of making loops, and lines may accumulate marine debris that could act as a web, increasing the risk (Henkel et al. 2014). Collision risk may be highest for baleen whales or young animals with less experience navigating through the water (Henkel et al. 2014). However, empirical information regarding marine species interactions with wave and tidal facilities is sparse.

Noise effects

Construction, operation, and decommissioning of wave and tidal energy facilities will generate considerable noise at levels potentially damaging to marine life (Frid et al. 2012). Several fish and marine mammal species could be affected by noise generated by wave energy facilities (Haikonen et al. 2013). Noise can affect fish and marine mammal behavior, communication, and, in extreme cases, cause direct tissue damage, resulting in immediate or delayed mortality (Hastings and Popper 2005, Thomsen et al. 2006, Popper and Hastings 2009, Frid et al. 2012, Henkel et al. 2014, Popper et al. 2014). Behavioral changes can result in increased susceptibility to predation or disruption of feeding, reproduction, or migration (Popper et al. 2014). Many fish species have swim bladders or other gas-filled structures that can detect sound pressure and are more susceptible to physical damage (e.g., barotrauma) from loud, sudden sounds. For example, in the case of underwater explosions, fish with swim bladders are susceptible to barotrauma 100 times farther away from the explosion than non-swim-bladder fish (Popper et al. 2014). These species are most likely to show behavioral changes from sound (Popper et al. 2014), possibly including altered migration and schooling, which can impact foraging, predator avoidance, or reproductive success. The Clupeiformes (e.g., Pacific herring, American shad, Pacific sardine, northern anchovy), gadids (e.g., Pacific cod) and juvenile salmonids (e.g., Chinook salmon) have been shown to respond to sound (Knudsen et al. 1997, Thomsen et al. 2006). Sounds produced at frequencies similar to vocalizations of marine mammals or their prey may impair communication, navigation, feeding, and avoidance of predators (Henkel et al. 2014). Conditions at wave energy sites in the ocean may be characterized by high ambient noise produced by existing natural (e.g., surf) and anthropogenic (e.g., shipping traffic) sources; thus, new energy facility noise generation should be assessed in the context of cumulative effects of the entire system (Frid et al. 2012). Operational facility noise may or may not be audible above ambient conditions, so the acoustic signature of facilities should be characterized through post-installation study (Henkel et al. 2014, Frid et al. 2012). Both tidal and wave energy facilities have the potential for adverse impacts by creating a source of anthropogenic noise (Frid et al. 2012). Operational and construction noise can be potentially damaging to marine life, but more research is needed (Frid et al. 2012) to determine the hearing sensitivity of marine species in EFH and to fine-tune thresholds at which negative impacts could be expected to occur.

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

The Earth's magnetic field is naturally present throughout all parts of the ocean at all times, and is relied upon by some marine species for essential life functions (Lohmann et al. 2008a, Gill et al. 2014). Electrical transmission cables from wave energy facilities produce electromagnetic fields (EMF) that could affect organisms living in EFH (reviewed by Gill et al. 2012). Other project components including interarray cables, subsea transformers, or devices themselves may also produce EMF; however, the strength of project-related EMF signatures relative to natural EMF is not well understood. Wave facilities, in particular, are expected to contain a relatively high concentration of electrical transmission cables (Witt et al. 2012), which could interfere with behavior of electro- and magnetosensitive fish and marine mammals (Gill et al. 2005). Some elasmobranchs (sharks, skates, and rays) use electroreception to locate prey, and use magnetic fields to orient themselves for migration and habitat use (Normandeau et al. 2011, Frid et al. 2012). Magnetic fields guide orientation and navigation of some marine animals (e.g., isopods, lobsters, rays) as well as orientation, navigation, and homing of long-distance ocean migrants like sea turtles, salmonids, scombrids (tunas and mackerels), and whales (Boles and Lohmann 2003, Lohmann et al. 2008a, Lohmann et al. 2008b, Normandeau et al. 2011). Recent studies on juvenile Chinook salmon and other salmonid species have demonstrated the role of magnetic fields in their migratory behavior in the ocean (Lohmann et al. 2008b, Putman et al. 2013, Putman et al. 2014), raising concern that artificial magnetic fields can disrupt this migratory behavior. However, there is little empirical evidence that demonstrates how electromagnetic fields from wave and tidal facilities will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms.

Potential conservation measures for wave and tidal energy facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of wave and tidal energy facilities on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of wave and tidal energy facilities on EFH.

General guidelines

- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic and riparian habitats in the review process for wave and tidal facility construction and operations.
- Do not locate projects in areas that may result in adverse effects to sensitive freshwater, marine, and estuarine resources and habitats.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Characterize pre-construction habitat and associated biological community with consideration for temporal variability, and monitor post-installation change to the community in response to habitat alteration.
- If feasible, monitor during construction activities to help identify and remediate impacts to EFH.
- Prior to construction, identify adaptive management thresholds and response actions to be implemented in the event adverse effects to marine species occur as a result of loss or alteration of habitat.
- Consider cumulative effects from other developments within the species range.

Altered hydrology

- Monitor project components installed on the seafloor for indications of scour, deposition, or other changes to sediment characteristics.
- Monitor water quality parameters after installation of shallow-water or estuarine project components.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Conduct pre-construction contaminant surveys of the sediment in excavation or scour areas.
- Site facilities on the coarsest substrate possible to reduce siltation and turbidity.

Release of contaminants

- Do not permit construction of barrage-type tidal energy facilities due to their potential for large impacts to migratory fishery resources and the ecosystem.
- Include impacts associated with the decommissioning and/or dismantling of wave or tidal energy facilities as part of the environmental analyses. Contingency for removal of structures should be required as part of any permits or licenses.
- For all projects, require pre-construction assessments for analysis of potential impacts to fishery resources. Assessments should include comprehensive monitoring of the timing, duration, and utilization of the area by migratory, diadromous, and resident fish stock species. Compare assessments to potential impacts from the project, and develop contingency planning using avoidance measures and/or adaptive management.
- Time construction of facilities to avoid impacts to sensitive life stages and species. Recommended seasonal work windows are generally tailored to specific project areas as appropriate to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Develop a comprehensive oil spill response plan that includes staging of spill-response equipment.

Entrainment and impingement

- Engineer sluices, water intakes, and turbines to reduce fish entrainment. Use rotary turbines when applicable.
- Apply NOAA Fisheries screening criteria to minimize or avoid entrainment.
- Identify any moving parts and determine if animal exclusion devices can be engineered to minimize impingement.
- Require that mooring lines be designed to prevent looping and be maintained free of debris to reduce entanglement risk.

Noise effects

- Require that noise impacts be monitored and minimized.
- Pile driving noise: see conservation measures in PFMC (2019), Section 17.1: Pile Driving.
- Vessel noise: see conservation measures in PFMC (2019), Section 11.2: Operation and Maintenance of Vessels.
- Implement technologies that minimize the levels of underwater sound.

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

- Conduct studies that measure pre-construction on-site ambient EMFs and post-installation EMFs generated from wave and tidal energy facilities, and identify how they may impact aquatic organisms and EFH.
- Require pre-construction analysis of anticipated EMFs generated by proposed project facilities based on best available science from energized cables and components elsewhere.

Cables and Pipelines

Potential adverse impacts of cables and pipelines

The following factors associated with cables and pipelines can impact marine, estuarine, and freshwater EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, impacts to organisms, noise effects, and alteration of electromagnetic fields. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following sections.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Cables and pipelines installed unburied in marine EFH can serve as habitat, and influence species assemblages and larval production of fish (Love and York 2005, Love et al. 2005, Buhl-Mortensen et al. 2010). Thus, the removal of such structures is the removal of habitat, impacting EFH and marine aquatic organisms (Bull and Kendall 1994, Schroeder and Love 2004, Lowe et al. 2009). Unburied cables and pipelines laid on the seafloor pose additional hazards to bottom fishing, which may snag and damage the cable or pipeline, resulting in additional disturbance or damage to marine habitat from repair of damaged facilities. Unburied cables can scour the seafloor, altering habitats to varying degrees depending on substrate type. Conversely, the installation of pipelines can impact shellfish beds, hard-bottomed habitats, and aquatic vegetation (Gowen 1978), and underwater trenching in rivers and estuaries for pipeline and cable installation could affect marsh drainage and freshwater and sediment transport, and increase the inland encroachment of saltwater (Chabreck 1972). Inland encroachment of saltwater can lead to the loss of aquatic vegetation (Pezeshki et al. 1987), causing increased soil erosion and a net loss of organic matter (Craig et al. 1979). In freshwater EFH, instream pipeline crossing structures can affect water quality, channel morphology (Lévesque and Dubé 2007), and fish passage.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Installation, maintenance, and removal of cables and pipelines within or adjacent to waterbodies can release suspended sediments into the water column. The relative severity of impacts from increased suspended sediment on aquatic organisms depends on both abiotic factors, especially concentration and duration of exposure (Newcombe and Jensen 1996), and biotic factors, such as trophic level and life stage of the affected organism. Increased sedimentation can injure gills (Lake and Hinch 1999), leading to reduced growth and increased mortality of aquatic organisms (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Long-term effects of suspended sediment also include reduced light penetration, with lowered photosynthesis rates and primary production (Gowen 1978). Slight reductions in light availability can also result in lower rates of photosynthesis for phytoplankton, a key basal resource (Cloern 1987) ultimately resulting in less energy available for benthic invertebrates and fish living in EFH. Light availability influences depth distribution, density, and productivity of eelgrass, an important structural feature in nearshore and estuarine EFH (Dennison and Alberte 1982, Dennison and Alberte 1985, Dennison and Alberte 1986, Zimmerman 2006).

The installation of pipelines in freshwater EFH can also increase sedimentation and turbidity (Reid and Anderson 1999), thereby altering habitat conditions and associated aquatic food webs. Fine sediment loading above natural background levels contributes to: embedding of substrates, which can negatively affect salmonids by reducing availability of spawning and rearing habitat, and the ability of fish to obtain food, because salmonids are visual foragers (Hall and Lanz 1969, Burns 1970, Tripp and Poulin 1992, Waters 1995, Suttle et al. 2004). Riparian clearing can also increase streams' susceptibility to erosion, sedimentation, and temperature changes, as well as changes in organic matter dynamics via the loss of detrital inputs. These changes will likely negatively affect fish populations, including cold-water fish like salmonids, via changes in habitat quality, water temperature, and prey availability.

Impacts to organisms

Unburied cables and pipelines have the potential to alter species abundance and composition in marine EFH because they can serve as artificial substrates that attract and concentrate species that otherwise might not be present (Bohnsack et al. 1994, Pickering and Whitmarsh 1997, Bortone 1998, OSPAR 2009). Subsea pipelines that are placed on the substrate also have the potential to create physical barriers to benthic invertebrates during migration and movement. For example, the migration of American lobster (*Homarus americanus*) between inshore and offshore habitats can be adversely affected if pipelines are not buried to sufficient depths (Fuller 2003).

Release of contaminants

Contaminants can be released into the environment, either during pipeline installation (Gowen 1978)or if pipelines are broken or ruptured by unintentional activities (e.g., shipping accidents, catastrophic failures). The accidental leaking or spillage of petroleum products can devastate marine (Bue et al. 1998, Dubansky et al. 2013) and freshwater organisms and EFH (Carls et al. 2003). Oil contamination causes numerous effects on fish physiology, including cardiac toxicity and dysfunction (Incardona et al. 2005, 2012) and reduced body condition and growth (Claireaux et al. 2004). Furthermore, processes used to clean up oil contamination could also have negative impacts on fish. For example, Milinkovitch et al. (2011) found that in some habitats, oil that was dispersed was harmful to fish, indicating the importance of selecting the appropriate measures for cleanup in different habitats.

During construction, horizontal directional drilling (HDD) may be used to string a pipeline or cable under a waterbody, shoreline, or sensitive wetland. During HDD operations, “frac-outs” may occur, in which environmental damage is caused by drilling fluids leaking from the drill hole into habitat such as fish-bearing streams.

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

The Earth’s magnetic field is naturally present throughout all parts of the ocean at all times, and is relied upon by some marine species for essential life functions (Lohmann et al. 2008a). Electrical transmission cables from marine energy facilities produce electromagnetic fields (EMFs) that could affect electro- and magnetosensitive organisms living in EFH (Gill et al. 2005, Öhman et al. 2007, Fisher and Slater 2010, Gill et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012, Gill et al. 2014). Wave facilities, in particular, are expected to contain a relatively high concentration of electrical transmission cables (Witt et al. 2012), but the issues caused by cable EMFs are similar for wave, wind, or tidal projects (Gill et al. 2014). Where cables converge with each other or with natural geomagnetic lines, the EMF becomes more complex, with some signals being additive and others canceling each other out (Gill et al. 2014). EMFs could interfere with fish and mammal behaviors (e.g., migration) or physiology (e.g., swimming), and impacts on fish could correlate with distance from undersea cables (Gill and Bartlett 2010, Gill et al. 2005). Some elasmobranchs (sharks, skates, and rays) use magnetic fields to orient themselves for migration and habitat use (Normandeau et al. 2011, Frid et al. 2012), and magnetic fields guide navigation and orientation of some marine animals like isopods, lobsters, and rays—as well as orientation, navigation, and homing of long-distance ocean migrants like sea turtles, salmonids, scombrids (tunas and mackerels), and possibly whales (Boles and Lohmann 2003, Lohmann et al. 2008a, 2008b, Normandeau et al. 2011). Recent studies on juvenile Chinook salmon and other salmonid species have demonstrated the role of magnetic fields in their migratory behavior in the ocean (Lohmann et al. 2008b, Putman et al. 2013, Putman et al. 2014), raising concern that artificial magnetic fields can disrupt this migratory behavior. However, there remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how and to what degree electromagnetic fields from marine energy facility cables will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms (Woodruff et al. 2011, Lindeboom et al. 2015). Cable burial of 1–1.5 meters does not dampen B-field emission, but does create a physical barrier between epibenthic organisms and the cable skin, where signals are strongest (Gill et al. 2014). Cable shielding can contain electric fields (E-fields) and could theoretically contain magnetic fields (B-fields), but design and cost limitations make it infeasible to heighten precautions while there is insufficient evidence to require redesign of EMF-emitting cables (Gill et al. 2012). This emphasizes the need to advance the study of E- and B-fields and how fish respond to natural and altered signals to determine whether such requirements are warranted (Gill et al. 2012).

Noise effects

Noise produced during installation of electrical cables associated with marine energy facilities and pipelines associated with LNG facilities could impact marine organisms and EFH (e.g., Wyatt 2008). Noise produced during construction of natural gas pipelines could originate from in-water blasting and could affect anadromous or marine species. Noise can affect fish and marine mammal behavior, communication, and, in extreme cases, cause direct tissue damage, resulting in immediate or delayed mortality (Hastings and Popper 2005, Thomsen et al. 2006, Popper and Hastings 2009, Frid et al. 2012, Henkel et al. 2014, Popper et al. 2014). Behavioral changes can result in increased susceptibility to predation or disruption of feeding, reproduction, or migration (Popper et al. 2014). Many fish species have swim bladders or other gas-filled structures that can detect sound pressure and are more susceptible to physical damage (e.g., barotrauma) from loud, sudden sounds. For example, in the case of underwater explosions, fish with swim bladders are susceptible to barotrauma 100× farther away from the explosion than non-swim-bladder fish (Popper et al. 2014). These species are most likely to show behavioral changes from sound (Popper et al. 2014), possibly including altered migration and schooling, which can impact foraging, predator avoidance, or reproductive success. The Clupeiformes (e.g., Pacific herring, American shad, Pacific sardine, northern anchovy), gaddids (e.g., Pacific cod), and juvenile salmonids (e.g., Chinook salmon) have all been shown to respond to sound (Knudsen et al. 1997, Thomsen et al. 2006). Sounds produced at frequencies similar to vocalizations of marine mammals or their prey may mask communication and affect the animal's ability to communicate, navigate, feed, or avoid predation (Henkel et al. 2014). While construction may impose acoustic risks, there remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how and to what degree operational noise from marine energy facility cables will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms (OSPAR 2009, Gill and Bartlett 2010).

Potential conservation measures for cables and pipelines

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of cables and pipelines on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of cables and pipelines on EFH.

General guidelines

- Plan access routes and staging areas for equipment to avoid passage through sensitive resources such as Habitat Areas of Particular Concern.
- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats in the review process for cable and pipeline construction and operations.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Align cable and pipeline crossings along the least environmentally damaging route. Avoid sensitive habitats such as hard-bottom (e.g., rocky reefs), SAV, oyster reefs, emergent marsh, and mud flats.
- Use existing rights-of-way whenever possible to lessen overall encroachment and disturbance of wetlands.
- Use horizontal directional drilling (HDD) where cables or pipelines would cross sensitive habitats, such as intertidal mudflats and vegetated intertidal zones, to avoid surface disturbances.
- Avoid the use of open trenching for installation in freshwater and shoreline habitats.
- Immediately backfill trenches to reduce the impact duration.
- During the permitting phase, require evaluation of impacts to EFH that may occur during the decommissioning phase, including impacts during the demolition phase and impacts resulting from short- and long-term habitat loss.

- Prescribe fish passage guidance to ensure fish access to suitable habitat and minimize loss of EFH during migration.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Use silt curtains or other types of sediment control to protect sensitive freshwater habitats and resources.
- Avoid construction of permanent access channels in freshwater habitats, since they disrupt natural drainage patterns and destroy wetlands through excavation, filling, and bank erosion.
- Minimize riparian clearing and restore necessary disturbance areas immediately following completion of pipeline construction to minimize potential erosion in streams.
- Avoid conducting activities that increase turbidity during periods of the year when eelgrass is growing rapidly and is most sensitive to reductions in light (generally starting in July in the Pacific Northwest; Phillips 1984).

Impacts to organisms

- Avoid burying pipelines and submerged cables in areas where scouring or wave activity will eventually expose them, as this can result in impacts to EFH.
- Conduct construction during times of year that will have the least impact on sensitive habitats and species. Appropriate work windows can be established based on preconstruction biological sampling spanning multiple seasons and years. Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.

Release of contaminants

- Ensure that oil and gas pipeline systems include leak detection capabilities to minimize potential impacts from spills.
- Stream-crossing plans involving HDD should include risk assessment for frac-out based on geotechnical analysis, and contingency planning to address frac-out if it occurs (construction stoppage, cleanup, and remediation). Employ measures to avoid/minimize impacts to sensitive fishery habitats from potential frac-outs, including:
  - Use only nonpolluting, water-based lubricants.
  - Monitor drill stem pressures to identify potential frac-outs.
  - If frac-outs are suspected, cease drilling operations immediately.
  - Implement aboveground monitoring to identify potential frac-outs.
  - Develop spill clean-up plan and protocols, and on-site availability of clean-up equipment to quickly respond to frac-outs.

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

- Measure natural on-site EMFs prior to construction, for comparison to post-installation monitoring.
- Conduct studies that identify how EMFs generated from pipes and cables impact aquatic organisms and EFH. Cable orientation relative to the geomagnetic field can increase the intensity of the local magnetic field (Normandeau et al. 2011) and should be studied in situ for each project.

Noise effects

- Conduct studies that identify how noise generated from pipes and cables impacts aquatic organisms and EFH.
- Prescribe acoustic monitoring for the operational phase of marine energy installations, and require that acoustic outputs remain below NMFS acoustic thresholds.
- Do not conduct in-water blasting. If necessary, conduct such activities only when sensitive species are not present in EFH within proximity to the construction activity.

Offshore Wind Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of offshore wind facilities

The following factors associated with offshore wind facilities can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, impacts to organisms, noise effects, and alteration of electromagnetic fields. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Offshore wind facilities introduce artificial habitat into the ocean, potentially compounding impacts to previously compromised EFH (Gill 2005). This novel habitat could act as stepping stones for colonization, which may support the spread of existing and introduced species in the area because it increases the area of reef-type habitat in native pelagic EFH (Boehlert and Gill 2010, Wilson et al. 2010). Such shifts in EFH could also have implications for commercial fisheries if aggregations of vulnerable life stages are redistributed because of wind facilities (Reubens et al. 2014). The addition of novel habitats created by facilities located near sensitive EFH could impact abundance and distribution of aquatic organisms (Witt et al. 2012). Turbines sited in shallower nearshore habitats increase shade in eelgrass meadows and kelp beds, and anchors could alter sea-bottom topography, impacting echinoderms and other benthic organisms (Schläppy et al. 2014) and many other species reliant on EFH.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Installation and decommissioning of large anchor systems or other seafloor components of offshore wind facilities could cause increased sedimentation (Frid et al. 2012). The impacts of increased suspended sediments on aquatic organisms depend on the magnitude of increase in concentration and the duration of exposure (Newcombe and Jensen 1996). Increased sedimentation can impact feeding ability (Langhamer et al. 2010), injure gills (Lake and Hinch 1999), and lead to reduced growth and increased mortality in aquatic organisms (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Increased sedimentation could also lead to increased turbidity. However, reduction of fine sediments related to a wind energy facility could also have positive short-term effects on fish densities (van Deurs et al. 2012).

Impacts to organisms

Offshore wind facilities have the potential to alter species abundance and composition in marine EFH (Wilhelmsson et al. 2006, Wilhelmsson and Malm 2008, Andersson and Öhman 2010, Stenberg et al. 2015), and such shifts could alter predation and impact food web structure (Bergström et al. 2013, Russell et al. 2014). Floating wind turbines may require ballast or other water intakes that present fish entrainment or impingement potential if not properly designed to avoid these risks. Mooring lines designed to secure floating wind devices may present entanglement risks for marine mammals, sea turtles, and other animals if the lines are slack or capable of making loops, or lines may accumulate marine debris that could act as a web, increasing the risk (Henkel et al. 2014). Collisions between marine life and wind turbine structures could occur; the risk may be highest for baleen whales or young animals with less experience navigating through the water (Henkel et al. 2014). Facility components can serve as artificial reefs, providing hard substrate to which organisms may attach (Bailey et al. 2014), or acting as artificial substrates that attract and concentrate species that otherwise might not be present (Bohnsack et al. 1994, Pickering and Whitmarsh 1997, Bortone 1998, OSPAR 2009). Conversely, facility noise or structures may invoke an avoidance response by marine mammals or other marine species, potentially leading to long-term impacts linked to changes in energetic costs, survival, or fecundity (Bailey et al. 2014). Impacts can vary widely among different habitats (Vandendriessche et al. 2015). Offshore wind facilities could have numerous other impacts on marine fish that would be difficult to evaluate if no baseline data were available (Wilson et al. 2010). Other impacts could include alteration to population dynamics (Wilson et al. 2010), site fidelity (Reubens et al. 2013a), noise effects (Frid et al. 2012), and contaminants introduced to EFH during operations (Boehlert and Gill 2010).

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

Electrical transmission cables, inter-array cables suspended in the water column, subsea transformers, or devices themselves may produce electromagnetic fields (EMFs); however, the strength of project-related EMF signatures relative to natural EMF is not well understood. Cable orientation relative to the geomagnetic field can increase the intensity of the local magnetic field (Normandeau et al. 2011) and should be measured for each proposed project site prior to construction. EMFs produced by marine energy facility cables or devices could affect electro- and magnetosensitive organisms living in EFH (Gill et al. 2005, Öhman et al. 2007, Snyder and Kaiser 2009, Fisher and Slater 2010, Gill et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012, Gill et al. 2014). EMFs could interfere with fish behaviors (e.g., migration) or physiology (e.g., swimming), and impacts on fish could correlate with distance from the source of emission (Gill and Bartlett 2010). Some elasmobranchs use electroreception to detect bioelectric fields emitted by prey, conspecifics, and predators (Gill et al. 2014), and use magnetic fields to orient themselves for migration and habitat use (Normandeau et al. 2011, Frid et al. 2012). Some fish (e.g. lampreys, sturgeon) are electrosensitive and may be repulsed by strong E-fields (Gill et al. 2014). Magnetic fields guide navigation and orientation of some marine animals like isopods, lobsters, and rays, as well as orientation, navigation, and homing of long-distance ocean migrants like sea turtles, salmonids, scombrids (tunas and mackerels), and whales (Boles and Lohmann 2003, Lohmann et al. 2008a, 2008b, Normandeau et al. 2011). Recent studies on juvenile Chinook salmon and other salmonid species have demonstrated the role of magnetic fields in their migratory behavior in the ocean (Lohmann et al. 2008b, Putman et al. 2013, Putman et al. 2014), raising concern that artificial magnetic fields can disrupt this migratory behavior. However, there remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how, and to what degree, electromagnetic fields from marine energy facility cables will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms (Woodruff et al. 2011, Lindeboom et al. 2015).

Noise effects

Noise from the construction and operation of offshore wind farms could disrupt normal behavior within a large area (Popper et al. 2014) for marine species including mammals, sea turtles, and fish (Wahlberg and Westerberg 2005, Madsen et al. 2006), and could impact EFH (Thomsen et al. 2006, Snyder and Kaiser 2009). The area of potential effect can be vast because sound propagates long distances underwater, and potentially affected species may be highly mobile or migratory (Bailey et al. 2014). Sound perceived by fish and marine mammals can lead to effects on hearing, fitness, injury, and even survival (Popper et al. 2014, Henkel et al. 2014). Underwater noise measured at offshore wind facilities off Denmark and Sweden showed that turbine noise was only detectable over ambient levels at frequencies below 315–500 Hz, and the zone of audibility for mammals may extend 6.4 km, depending on transmission loss (Tougaard et al. 2009). However, most studies of marine species' response to installed wind farms have been conducted in relatively shallow (e.g., <50 m) waters at offshore wind facilities in Europe, whereas emerging floating-foundation technologies designed for deeper waters (300–700 m; Bailey et al. 2014) will be more likely for U.S. West Coast project proposals. Marine species such as the blue whale or fin whale migrating through deeper waters may be susceptible to other impacts from facility-produced sound, such as masking of communication within their call frequencies (Bailey et al. 2014). Sounds produced at frequencies similar to vocalizations of marine mammals or their prey may mask communication and affect navigation, feeding, and predator avoidance (Henkel et al. 2014). There remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how and to what degree operational noise will negatively impact fish, mammals, and other aquatic organisms (OSPAR 2009, Gill and Bartlett 2010, Bailey et al. 2014).

Potential conservation measures for offshore wind facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of offshore wind facilities on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of offshore wind facilities on EFH.

General guidelines

- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats in the review process for offshore wind energy facility construction and operations.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Avoid placing cables associated with offshore wind facilities near HAPC and sensitive benthic habitats, such as SAV.
- Monitor fish attraction to anchors, mooring lines, and facility components on the seafloor and in the water column, and identify any negative community change effects that occur as a result of habitat conversion.
- Design mooring and anchoring systems to the minimum necessary for device stability, in order to minimize scour and avoid unnecessary alteration and conversion of benthic habitat.
- Plan construction procedures to occur as quickly and efficiently as possible, to minimize the duration of disruption on the seafloor.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Use the minimum practicable scour protection for turbines and associated structures and cables, in order to avoid alteration/conversion of benthic habitat.
- Bury cables to an adequate depth, in order to minimize the need for maintenance activities and to reduce conflicts with other ocean uses.

Impacts to organisms

- Conduct preconstruction biological surveys in consultation with resource agencies to determine the extent and composition of biological populations or habitat in the proposed impact area.
- Time construction of facilities to avoid impacts on sensitive life stages and species. Construction in the Pacific Ocean may be technically constrained to the summer season, but may be tailored as necessary based on recommended seasonal work windows specific to regional environmental conditions and sensitive species life histories.
- Make contingency plans and response equipment available at the offshore wind facility to respond to spills associated with maintenance activities.

Alteration of electromagnetic fields

- Measure natural EMF for each proposed project site prior to construction.
- Conduct studies that identify how EMFs generated from offshore wind facilities impact aquatic organisms and EFH.

Noise effects

- Define the area of potential effect, which may vary by project location and affected species.
- Conduct studies that document pre-construction ambient sound of the project area in various sea states. Determine appropriate thresholds above ambient conditions at which marine species could be negatively affected.
- Conduct studies to characterize noise generated from offshore wind facilities and identify how it may impact aquatic organisms and EFH.
- Require a slowly progressing "soft start" for construction activities expected to be audible above background noise, to allow marine animals to vacate the area.

Liquefied Natural Gas

Potential adverse impacts of liquefied natural gas

The following factors associated with transport and processing (i.e., gasification or liquefaction) of liquefied natural gas (LNG) can impact EFH and were summarized below based on Johnson et al. (2008): loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, invasive organisms, entrainment and impingement, noise effects, impacts to water quality, and discharge of debris. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following sections.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Structures associated with LNG in marine EFH can serve as habitat, and influence species assemblages and larval production of marine organisms (Love et al. 1999, Fabi et al. 2004, Manoukian et al. 2010). New construction of pilings in estuaries results in fill of subtidal habitat and impacts the vertical structure in the water column. Installation of rip-rap or sheet-piling for berth areas will simplify deep-water estuarine habitats, inhibiting the productive capacity for fish and wildlife. Such structures could impact shellfish beds, hard-bottomed habitats, and aquatic vegetation (Gowen 1978, Mills and Fonseca 2003), and underwater trenching for pipeline and cable installation could affect marsh drainage, freshwater, and sediment transport, and increase the inland encroachment of saltwater (Chabreck 1972). Inland encroachment of saltwater can lead to the loss of aquatic vegetation (Pezeshki et al. 1987), causing increased soil erosion and a net loss of organic matter (Craig et al. 1979).

Dredging of estuarine bottom material may be necessary to create space for LNG slip areas, docking facilities, turning basins, access channels, etc. The extent of dredging may vary by project, but maintenance dredging will likely be necessary and will result in repeated and lasting loss and alteration of habitat (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). Dredging will negatively impact communities and habitats by direct removal, disturbance, and restructuring of the benthic substrata (Armstrong et al. 1981, Newell et al. 1998) and possibly native eelgrass (*Zostera marina*) meadows (Erftemeijer and Lewis 2006) and kelp forests. Eelgrass meadows, and other submerged aquatic vegetation, provide critical cover and energy resources for a number of fish and wildlife species (Kentula and DeWitt 2003, Thom et al. 2003). Macroinvertebrate and fish/shellfish species complexity is typically greater within eelgrass stands than in locations where eelgrass is not present (Hosack et al. 2006).

Facility installation may alter existing habitat in ways that affect physical habitat, the estuarine community composition, and predator–prey relationships. Construction of pilings provides perch opportunities for piscivorous birds that increase predation risk to species like juvenile salmonids. Artificial lighting from over-water structures may affect fish predation, disorient migrating fish (e.g., juvenile salmonids), affect photosynthesis of aquatic vegetation, disrupt foraging behavior, or influence wildlife that predate on fish in estuarine EFH. Dredging may significantly alter the prey base relied upon by demersal fish, including starry flounder, English sole, sand sole, staghorn sculpins, and sturgeon (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001).

Altered hydrology

LNG tankers can alter hydrologic regimes through the discharge of brine from onboard desalination operations, altering salinities in coastal and estuarine EFH (Dodson et al. 1972, Leggett and O'Boyle 1976, Schlenk and Lavado 2011). Dredging estuarine systems to convert shallower habitats to deep-water channels to accommodate large tankers may alter water flow and composition (e.g., salinity, turbidity; Johnston 1981, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Van Maren et al. 2015). Effects on marine and estuarine organisms from saline intrusion associated with increased dredging would only be detectable through monitoring (Miller et al. 1990, Newell et al. 1998). Construction of new LNG terminal facilities or natural gas pipelines may interfere with tidal processes or floodplain connectivity. Filling wetlands or clearing vegetation on floodplains could alter hydrology. Waterbody crossings may necessitate dewatering or water diversion.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Dredging activities associated with construction and maintenance of the slip, berth, and turning basin will result in initial and intermittent disturbance (for maintenance) to the estuarine water column by increasing turbidity and increasing the load of suspended sediments (Van Maren et al. 2015). The primary ecological impacts associated with dredging, siltation, turbidity, and unnatural loadings of suspended sediment in estuaries include: a) reduced survival and growth of phytoplankton and zooplankton (Irwin and Claffey 1966, Cloern 1987); b) altered feeding capacity and subsequent reduction in planktivorous organisms (Bash et al. 2001, Horppila et al. 2004, Carter et al. 2009); c) direct disturbance and entrainment of bottom fish and benthic epifaunal and infaunal invertebrate communities; d) smothering and burial of benthos; and e) decreased survival and growth of submerged aquatic vegetation and microbenthic algae. The impacts of increased suspended sediments on aquatic organisms depend on the magnitude of increase in concentration and the duration of exposure (Newcombe and Jensen 1996). Increased sedimentation can impact feeding ability (Langhamer et al. 2010), injure gills (Lake and Hinch 1999), and lead to increased mortality in aquatic organisms (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Increased turbidity could alter algal blooms, affecting higher trophic organisms (Frid et al. 2012, Witt et al. 2012). Shallow waters, rocky reefs and rises, marshes, wetlands, and estuaries may be particularly vulnerable to increased sedimentation and turbidity because lower water volumes could decrease dilution and dispersal of suspended sediments (Gowen 1978).

Release of contaminants

There is limited information and experience regarding impacts of LNG spills or leaks; however, because of the toxic nature of natural gas, acute impacts to nearby resources and habitats should be anticipated. Contaminants can be released into the environment, whether during pipeline installation (Gowen 1978) or if pipelines are broken or ruptured by unintentional activities, such as shipping accidents and catastrophic failures. The accidental leaking or spillage of petroleum products can devastate marine (Bue et al. 1998, Dubansky et al. 2013) and freshwater organisms and EFH (Carls et al. 2003). Furthermore, biocides are often used at LNG structures to prevent pipeline and engine fouling from marine organisms. The release of biocides into EFH can contaminate, bioaccumulate, and cause death in nontarget fishes and organisms (Bao et al. 2011, Guardiola et al. 2012). Hydrostatic testing of installed pipelines would necessitate diversion of water and subsequent discharge back to the source waterbody, and discharge could contain contaminants. Accidental release of natural gas liquids or a cloud of toxic gas from an LNG facility would pose threats to human safety and other living organisms in the vicinity.

Invasive organisms

Introduction of invasive species into marine and estuarine waters may pose a significant threat to living marine resources (Carlton 2001). Non-native species can be released unintentionally when ships release ballast water (Niimi 2004). Hundreds of species have been introduced into U.S. waters from overseas and from other regions around North America, including finfish, shellfish, phytoplankton, bacteria, viruses, and pathogens (Drake et al. 2005). LNG tankers entering U.S. waters are generally loaded with cargo and do not need to release large amounts of ballast water. However, even small amounts of released ballast water have the potential to contain invasive species, and vessels can transport invasive species attached to ship hulls. Once introduced, invasive species are expected to flourish in newly disturbed slip areas. Throughout the world, aquatic invasive species are found most prominently in locations with low velocity or no current where transient ships dock (Ruiz et al. 1997). In addition, as vessels are unloaded and ballast is taken on in U.S. waters, the water may contain species that are potentially invasive to other locations. The transportation of nonindigenous organisms to new environments can have severe impacts on habitat (Omori et al. 1994, Keller and Perrings 2011).

Entrainment and impingement

Intake structures for traditional power plants can result in impingement and entrainment of marine organisms (Enright 1977, Helvey 1985, Callaghan 2004). Depending on the geographic location and the water depth of the intake pipe, phytoplankton, zooplankton, and fish eggs and larvae could be entrained in LNG systems. Juvenile fish can also be impinged on screens of water intake structures (Hanson et al. 1977). Increased ship operations associated with LNG facilities could increase the potential for impingement and entrainment of aquatic organisms (Ashe et al. 2013). Gravity or pumped water diversions increase risks for entrainment or impingement of game fish, food fish, and fish species protected under ESA (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). LNG facilities may require water intake for ballast and cooling water, terminal fire systems, re-deluge fire pumps, reverse osmosis, hydrostatic testing, concrete mixing, road construction, and soil maintenance.

Noise effects

Potential noise sources associated with LNG facilities include aircraft, construction, pile driving, vessel thrusters, dredging, drilling, explosives, seismic exploration, shipping vessels, sonar and acoustic devices, and general site operations. For a comprehensive review see Wyatt (2008).

Undersea noise could interfere with fish communication and orientation (Wahlberg and Westerberg 2005). Furthermore, the noise produced during installation of facilities, cables, and pipelines could impact marine organisms and EFH (Thomsen et al. 2006, Snyder and Kaiser 2009). Noise can affect fish behavior, communication, and, in extreme cases, cause direct tissue damage, resulting in immediate or delayed mortality (Hastings and Popper 2005, Thomsen et al. 2006, Popper and Hastings 2009, Frid et al. 2012, Popper et al. 2014). Behavioral changes can result in increased susceptibility to predation or disruption of feeding, reproduction, or migration (Popper et al. 2014). Many fish species have swim bladders or other gas-filled structures that can detect sound pressure and are more susceptible to physical damage from loud, sudden sounds. In-water blasting, if required, may injure fish and wildlife due to percussion shock waves produced by the energy associated with the explosion. This percussion can cause direct injury and stressors, including bursting of the swim bladder, hemorrhaging, damage to sensory organs, and triggering of displacement behavior in fish species (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). For example, in the case of underwater explosions, fish with swim bladders are susceptible to barotrauma 100× farther away from the explosion than non-swim bladder fish (Popper et al. 2014). These species are most likely to show behavioral changes from sound (Popper et al. 2014), possibly including altered migration and schooling, which can impact foraging, predator avoidance, or reproductive success. The Clupeiformes (e.g., Pacific herring, American shad, Pacific sardine, northern anchovy), gaddids (e.g., Pacific cod), and juvenile salmonids (e.g., Chinook salmon) have been shown to respond to sound (Thomsen et al. 2006, Knudsen et al. 1997). Sounds produced at frequencies similar to vocalizations of marine mammals or their prey may affect communication, navigation, feeding, or avoidance of predators (Henkel et al. 2014). Harbor porpoises, a species found in the nearshore and in bays, may be particularly sensitive to even low levels of exposure to human-produced sounds (Henkel et al. 2014). There remains little empirical evidence that demonstrates exactly how and to what degree operational noise will negatively impact fish and other aquatic organisms (OSPAR 2009, Gill and Bartlett 2010).

Impacts to water quality

Natural gas is condensed to a liquid by cooling it to –260°F, producing liquefied natural gas that can be stored and transported by ships to and from terminals in the United States (USDOE 2005). Regasification occurs at receiving terminals and satellite facilities around the United States, where LNG is transferred to warming systems that use ambient temperature from air or seawater to vaporize the cryogenic liquid (USDOE 2005). The operation of LNG facilities produces thermal effluent, and altered temperatures can adversely affect marine organisms (Isreal et al. 2011). Ships loading at LNG facilities may discharge heated engine-cooling water, creating a plume of warm water that may stress fish. Dredging activities that elevate turbidity also contribute to higher water temperatures and limited reductions of concentrations of dissolved oxygen in the water column (USACE 1983, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). Upland and riparian clearing for construction of pipelines and facilities can result in shade loss adjacent to streams that can increase water temperatures.

Discharge of debris

LNG facilities can result in the discharge of debris, including domestic wastewater generated from the offshore facility and other trash and debris from human activities associated with the facility (PFMC 1999). Debris, either floating on the surface, suspended in the water column, covering the benthos, or along the shoreline, can have deleterious impacts on fish and shellfish within benthic and pelagic habitats in the marine environment (NEFMC 1998). Furthermore, debris from natural gas transportation activities can be ingested by fish (Hoagland and Kite-Powell 1997).

Potential conservation measures for liquefied natural gas

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of LNG on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of liquefied natural gas on EFH.

General guidelines

- Address cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development projects on aquatic habitats by considering them in the project review process of LNG facility construction and operation. Based on predicted impacts to EFH, a determination can be made regarding the most suitable location and operational procedures for LNG facilities. Ideally, such an analysis would be done at the regional or national level based on natural gas usage and need. However, such analysis is not the case for all activities.
- Require analysis of potential adverse effects to all EFH listed species including native, pelagic, salmonid, and non-salmonid (e.g., eulachon) ESA-listed species potentially present. Impacts on all life stages present (e.g., rockfish juveniles) must be considered.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Conduct preconstruction biological surveys in consultation with resource agencies to determine the extent and composition of biological populations or habitat in the proposed impact area.
- Offsite mitigation, if proposed, should be located in habitat similar to that altered by the project, with similar species assemblages.
- Provide detailed monitoring plans should be developed for mitigation activities to evaluate native condition, alteration from project activities, and successful recovery of ecological

function and processes.

- Monitor stream crossing restoration to ensure the trench or otherwise disturbed area does not scour or result in diversion of flow.
- Provide a thorough analysis of lighting needs during project construction and operation, and assess the potential biological effects of such lighting on EFH species. Develop measures to minimize potential effects (e.g., alter light intensity, color, or direction).
- Perform dredging or other construction activities during the appropriate in-water work window to mitigate impacts to less than significant levels.

Altered hydrology

- Require applicant to ensure natural gas pipelines are sufficiently deep along the entirety of the route so as not to interfere with restoration activities (e.g., placement of large woody debris or reestablishment of channel function, tidal processes, or floodplain connectivity).

Impacts to water quality

- Locate facilities that use surface waters for regasification and engine-cooling purposes away from areas of high biological productivity (e.g., estuaries).
- Regulate discharge temperatures (both heated and cooled effluent) such that they do not appreciably alter the temperature regimes of the receiving waters. Implement strategies to diffuse the heated effluent.
- Use regasification and liquefaction systems that neither rely on surface waters nor affect water temperature in the surrounding waters. If a water-sourced system is necessary, use a closed-loop rather than an open-loop system.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Schedule dredging and excavation activities when the fewest species and least-vulnerable life stages are present. Appropriate work windows can be established based on the multiple season biological sampling. Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Do not conduct activities that increase turbidity during periods of the year when eelgrass is growing rapidly and is most sensitive to reductions in light (generally starting in July in the Pacific Northwest; Phillips 1984).

Release of contaminants

- Do not use biocides (e.g., aluminum, copper, chlorine compounds) to prevent fouling, where possible. The least damaging antifouling alternatives should be implemented.
- Provide real-time monitoring and leak detection systems at natural gas production and transportation facilities that preclude gas from entering the environment.
- Ensure that gas production and transportation facilities have developed and implemented adequate gas spill response plans. Assist government agencies responsible for gas spills (e.g., U.S. Coast Guard, state and local resource agencies) in developing response plans and protocols, including identification of sensitive marine habitats and development and implementation of appropriate gas spill response measures.

- Require a plan for notification of unintentional spills that alerts state and federal fish and wildlife agencies.
- Require that hydrostatic test water be analyzed for relevant water-quality parameters prior to being discharged back to the source waterbody.

Discharge of debris

- Implement operational monitoring plans to analyze impacts resulting from intake and discharge structures, and link them to a plan for adaptive management.

Entrainment and impingement

- Design intakes that do not impinge or entrain aquatic organisms. Use vaporization systems that do not rely on surface waters as a heat source (e.g., ambient air systems). If a water- sourced system must be used, use closed-loop systems that minimize the volume of water utilized for regasification. Do not use open-loop systems.
- Install fish-screening systems at all ballast and cooling water intakes and all surface water points of diversion. Screen intakes must comply with NMFS screening guidance.[6]
- Acquire written verification of screen inspection and approval by state and federal fish screen experts prior to the withdrawal of any water.
- Require site-specific waterbody crossing plans with fish passage plans for review and approval prior to any construction activity.

Noise effects

- Conduct construction and maintenance activities during periods when activity noisewon't impact organisms inhabiting EFH (e.g., van Staveren et al. 2010).
- When possible, avoid potentially damaging noise effects of activities when ESA-managed species are most abundant, especially sensitive life stages (see PFMC 2019).
- Install hydrophones to document pre-, during, and post-construction and operational noise levels.

Introduction of invasive species

- Develop and adhere to ballast water management guidelines as a first line of defense to prevent introduction of invasive species.
- Monitor newly disturbed areas (e.g., vessel slips) for colonization by invasive species.
- Develop a plan for elimination or control of invasive species if detected. Prescribe changes to project operations that may be implemented to prevent further introduction.

References

Andersson, M. H., and M. C. Öhman. 2010. Fish and sessile assemblages associated with wind-turbine constructions in the Baltic Sea. Marine and Freshwater Research 61:642–650.

Armstrong, D., B. Stevens, and J. Hoeman. 1981. Distribution and abundance of Dungeness crab and crangon shrimp, and dredging-related mortality of invertebrates and fish in Grays Harbor, Washington. Technical Report to Washington State Department of Fisheries and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. University of Washington, Seattle.

---

[6] https://repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/4045/

Ashe, E., J. Wray, C. R. Picard, and R. Williams. 2013. Abundance and survival of Pacific humpback whales in a proposed critical habitat area. PLOS ONE 9:e75228.

Bailey, H., K. L. Brookes, and P. M. Thompson. 2014. Assessing environmental impacts of offshore wind farms: Lessons learned and recommendations for the future. Aquatic Biosystems 10:8.

Bao, V. W. W., K. M. Y. Leung, J. Qiu, and M. H. M. Lam. 2011. Acute toxicities of five commonly used antifouling booster biocides to selected subtropical and cosmopolitan marine species. Marine Pollution Bulletin 62:1147–1151.

Bash, J., C. Berman, and S. Bolton. 2001. Effects of turbidity and suspended solids on salmonids. Center for Streamside Studies. University of Washington, Seattle.

Bergström, L., F. Sundqvist, and U. Bergström. 2013. Effects of an offshore wind farm on temporal and spatial patterns in the demersal fish community. Marine Ecology Progress Series 485:199–210.

Boehlert, G. W., G. R. McMurray, and C. E. Tortorici, editors. 2008. Ecological Effects of Wave Energy Development in the Pacific Northwest. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/SPO-92.

Boehlert, G. W., and A. G. Gill. 2010. Environmental and ecological effects of ocean renewable energy development: A current synthesis. Oceanography 23:68–81.

Bohnsack, J. A., D. E. Harper, D. B. McClellan, and M. Hulsbeck. 1994. Effects of reef size on colonisation and assemblage structure of fishes at artificial reefs off southeastern Florida, USA. Bulletin of Marine Science 55:796–823.

Boles, L. C., and K. J. Lohmann. 2003. True navigation and magnetic maps in spiny lobsters. Nature 421:60–63.

Bortone, S. A. 1998. Resolving the attraction–production dilemma in artificial reef research: Some yeas and nays. Fisheries 23:6–10.

Broadhurst, M., S. Barr, and C. D. L. Orme. 2014. In-situ ecological interactions with a deployed tidal energy device; an observational pilot study. Ocean & Coastal Management 99:31–38.

Bue, B. G., S. Sharr, and J. E. Seeb. 1998. Evidence of damage to pink salmon populations inhabiting Prince William Sound, Alaska, two generations after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:35–43.

Buhl-Mortensen, L., A. Vanreusel, A. J. Gooday, L. A. Levin, I. G. Priede, P. Buhl-Mortensen, H. Gheererdyn, N. J. King, and M. Raes. 2010. Biological structures as a source of habitat heterogeneity and biodiversity on the deep ocean margins. Marine Ecology 31:21–50.

Bull, A. S., and J. J. Kendall, Jr. 1994. An indication of the process: Offshore platforms as artificial reefs in the Gulf of Mexico. Bulletin of Marine Science 55:1086–1098.

Burns, J. W. 1970. Spawning bed sedimentation studies in northern California streams. California Fish and Game 56:253–270.

Burrows, M. T. 2012. Influences of wave fetch, tidal flow and oceans colour on subtidal rocky communities. Marine Ecology Progress Series 445:193–207.

Callaghan, T. P. 2004. Entrainment and impingement of organisms in power plant cooling. Pages 447–457 *in* C. J. Cleveland, editor. Encyclopedia of Energy, volume 2. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Carls, M. G., R. E. Thomas, M. R. Lilly, and S. D. Rice. 2003. Mechanism for transport of oil-contaminated groundwater into pink salmon redds. Marine Ecology Progress Series 248:245–255.

Carlton, J. T. 2001. Introduced species in U.S. coastal waters: Environmental impacts and management priorities. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, Virginia.

Carter, M. W., D. E. Shoup, J. M. Dettmers, and D. H. Wahl. 2009. Effects of turbidity and cover on prey selectivity of adult smallmouth bass. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 139:353–361.

Chabreck, R. H. 1972. Vegetation, water, and soil characteristics of the Louisiana coastal region. Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, Louisiana.

Claireaux, G., Y. Désaunay, F. Akcha, B. Aupérin, G. Bocquené, H. Budzinski, J.-P. Cravedi, F. Davoodi, R. Galois, C. Gilliers, C. Goanvec, D. Guérault, N. Imbert, O. Mazéas, G. Nonnotte, L. Nonnotte, P. Prunet, P. Sébert, and A. Vettier. 2004. Influence of oil exposure on the physiology and ecology of the common sole *Solea solea*: Experimental and field approaches. Aquatic Living Resources 17(3):335–351.

Cloern, J. E. 1987. Turbidity as a control on phytoplankton biomass and productivity in estuaries. Continental Shelf Research 7:1367–1381.

Copping, A., H. Battey, J. Brown-Saracino, M. Massaua, and C. Smith. 2014. An international assessment of the environmental effects of marine energy development. Ocean & Coastal Management 99:3–13.

Craig N. J., R. E. Turner, and J. W. Day, Jr. 1979. Land loss in coastal Louisiana (U.S.A.). Environmental Management 3:133–44.

Davies, I. M., R. Watret, and M. Gubbins. 2014. Spatial planning for sustainable marine renewable energy developments in Scotland. Ocean & Coastal Management 99:72–81.

Dennison, W. C. 1987. Effects of light on seagrass photosynthesis, growth and depth distribution. Aquatic Botany 27:15–26.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1982. Photosynthetic responses *of Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) to in situ manipulations of light-intensity. Oecologia 55:137–144.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1985. Role of daily light period in the depth distribution of *Zostera marina* (eelgrass). Marine Ecology Progress Series 25:51–61.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1986. Photoadaptation and growth of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) transplants along a depth gradient. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 98:265–282.

Dodson, J. J., W. C. Leggett, and R. A. Jones. 1972. The behavior of adult American shad (*Alosa sapidissima*) during migration from salt to fresh water as observed by ultrasonic tracking techniques. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 29:1445–1449.

Drake, L. A., P. T. Jenkins, and F. C. Dobbs. 2005. Domestic and international arrivals of NOBOB (no ballast on board) vessels to lower Chesapeake Bay. Marine Pollution Bulletin 50:560–565.

Dubansky, B., A. Whitehead, J. T. Miller, C. D. Rice, and F. Galvez. 2013. Multiissue molecular, genomic, and developmental effects of the *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill on resident gulf killfish (*Fundulus grandis*). Environmental Science & Technology 47:5074–5082.

Enright, J. T. 1977. Power plants and plankton. Marine Pollution Bulletin 8:158–161.

Erftemeijer, P. L. A., and R. R. Robin Lewis III. 2006. Environmental impacts of dredging on seagrasses: A review. Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:1553–1572.

Fabi, G., F. Grati, M. Puletti, and G. Scarcella. 2004. Effects on fish community induced by installation of two gas platforms in the Adriatic Sea. Marine Ecology Progress Series 273:187–197.

Findlay, S. E. G., E. Kiviat, W. C. Nieder, and E. A. Blair. 2002. Functional assessment of a reference set as a tool for science, management and restoration. Aquatic Sciences 64:107–117.

Fisher, C., and M. Slater. 2010. Effects of electromagnetic fields on marine species: A literature review. 0905-00-001. Oregon Wave Energy Trust, Portland, Oregon.

Frid, C., E. Andonegi, J. Depestele, A. Judd, D. Rihan, S. I. Rogers, and E. Kenchington. 2012. The environmental interactions of tidal and wave energy devices. Environmental Impact Assessment Review 32:133–139.

Fuller, C., editor. 2003. A workshop on the potential effects of the construction and operation of subsea pipelines on lobster movement and behavior. Blue Atlantic Lobster Workshop Proceedings; 2003 Jun 24; Providence, RI. ENSR International, Willington, Connecticut.

Gallaway, B. J., W. J. Gazey, J. G. Cole, and R. G. Fechhelm. 2007. Estimation of potential impacts from offshore liquefied natural gas terminals on red snapper and red drum fisheries in the Gulf of Mexico: An alternative approach. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 136:655–677.

Gill, A. B. 2005. Offshore renewable energy: Ecological implications of generating electricity in the coastal zone. Journal of Applied Ecology 42:605–615.

Gill, A. B., and M. Bartlett. 2010. Literature review on the potential effects of electromagnetic fields and subsea noise from marine renewable energy developments on Atlantic salmon, sea trout and European eel. Commissioned Report No. 401. Scottish Natural Heritage, Inverness, Scotland.

Gill, A. B. 2005. Offshore renewable energy: Ecological implications of generating electricity in the coastal zone. Journal of Applied Ecology 42:605–615.

Gill, A. B., M. Bartlett, and F. Thomsen. 2012. Potential interactions between diadromous fishes of U.K. conservation importance and the electromagnetic fields and subsea noise from marine renewable energy developments. Journal of Fish Biology 81(2):664–695.

Gill, A. B., I. Gloyne-Philips, J. Kimber, and P. Sigray. 2014. Marine renewable energy, electromagnetic (EM) fields and EM-sensitive animals. Pages 61–79 in M. Shields and A. Payne, editors. Humanity and the Sea: Marine Renewable Energy and the Interactions with the Environment. Springer Science and Business Media, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

Goodwin, P., and P. B. Williams. 1992. Restoring coastal wetlands: The Californian experience. Journal of the Chartered Institution of Water and Environmental Management 6:709–719.

Gowen, A. W. 1978. The environmental effects of outer continental shelf (OCS) pipelines. Initial findings. New England River Basins Commission 4:24–43.

Guardiola, F. A., A. Cuesta, J. Meseguer, and M. A. Esteban. 2012. Risks of using antifouling biocides in aquaculture. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 13:1541–1560.

Haikonen, K., J. Sundberg, and M. Leijon. 2013. Characteristics of the operational noise from full scale wave energy converters in the Lysekil Project: Estimation of potential environmental impacts. Energies 6:2562–2582.

Hall, J. D., and R. L. Lantz. 1969. Effects of logging on the habitat of coho salmon and cutthroat trout. Symposium on salmon and trout in streams. Pages 355–375 *in* T. G. Northcote, editor. H. R. MacMillian lectures in fisheries. University of British Columbia, Vancouver, Canada.

Hammar, L., S. Andersson, L. Eggertsen, J. Haglund, M. Gullström, J. Ehnberg, and S. Molander. 2013. Hydrokinetic turbine effects on fish swimming behavior. PLOS ONE 8:e84141.

Hanson, C. H., J. R. White, and H. W. Li. 1977. Entrapment and impingement of fishes by power plant cooling water intakes: An overview. Marine Fisheries Review 39:7–17.

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, California.

Helvey, M. 1985. Behavioral factors influencing fish entrapment at offshore cooling-water intake structures in southern California. Marine Fisheries Review 47:18–26.

Henderson, P. A., and D. J. Bird. 2010. Fish and macro-crustacean communities and their dynamics in the Severn Estuary. Marine Pollution Bulletin 61:100–114.

Henkel, S. K., R. M. Suryan, and B. A. Lagerquist. 2014. Marine renewable energy and environmental interactions: Baseline assessments of seabirds, marine mammals, sea turtles and benthic communities on the Oregon Shelf. Pages 93–110 *in* M. A. Sheilds and A. I. L. Payne, editors. Marine Renewable Energy Technology and Environmental Interactions. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

Hoagland, P., H. L. Kite-Powell. 1997. Characterization and mitigation of marine debris in the Gulf of Maine. A report prepared for the U.S. Gulf of Maine Association under contract no. GM97-13. Gulf of Maine Council on the Marine Environment, Duxbury, Massachusetts.

Horppila, J., A. Liljendahl-Nurminen, and T. Malinen 2004. Effects of clay turbidity and light on the predator-prey interaction between smelts and chaoborids. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 61:1862–1870.

Hosack, G. R., B. R. Dumbauld, J. L. Ruesink, and D. A. Armstrong. 2006. Habitat associations of estuarine species: Comparisons of intertidal mudflat, seagrass (*Zostera marina*), and oyster (*Crassostrea gigas*) habitats. Estuaries and Coasts 29:1150–1160.

Incardona, J. P., M. G. Carls, H. Teraoka, C. A. Sloan, T. K. Collier, and N. L. Scholz. 2005. Aryl hydrocarbon receptor-independent toxicity of weathered crude oil during fish development. Environmental Health Perspectives 113:1755–1762.

Incardona, J. P., C. A. Vines, B. F. Anulacion, D. H. Baldwin, H. L. Day, B. L. French, J. S. Labenia, T. L. Linbo, M. S. Myers, O. P. Olson, C. A. Sloan, S. Sol, F. J. Griffin, K. Menard, S. G. Morgan, J. E. West, T. K. Collier, G. M. Ylitalo, G. N. Cherr, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Unexpectedly high mortality in Pacific herring embryos exposed to the 2007 *Cosco Busan* oil spill in San Francisco Bay. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 109(2):E51–E58.

Inger, R., M. J. Attril, S. Bearhop, A. C. Broderick, W. J. Grecian, D. J. Hodgson, C. Mills, E. Sheehan, S. C. Voiter, M. J. Witt, and B. J. Godley. 2009. Marine renewable energy: Potential benefits to biodiversity? An urgent call for research. Journal of Applied Ecology 46:1145–1153.

Irwin, W. H., and F. J. Claffey 1966. Soil turbidity, light penetration and plankton populations in Oklahoma ponds and lakes. Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science for 1966. Available: ojs.library.okstate.edu/osu/index.php/OAS/article/view/4497/4169 (January 2022).

Isreal, J. A., K. M. Fisch, T. F. Turner, and R. S. Waples. 2011. Conservation of native fishes of the San Francisco Estuary: Considerations for artificial propagation of Chinook salmon, delta smelt, and green sturgeon. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science 9:1–20.

Johnson, L. L., D. P. Lomax, M. S. Myers, O. P. Olson, S. Y. Sol, S. M. O'Neill, J. West, and T. K. Collier. 2008. Xenoestrogen exposure and effects in English sole (*Parophrys vetulus*) from Puget Sound, WA. Aquatic Toxicology 88(1):29–38.

Johnston, S. A. 1981. Estuarine dredge and fill activities: A review of impacts. Environmental Management 5:427–440.

Jordaan, A., J. Crocker, and Y. Chen. 2011. Linkages among physical and biological properties in tidepools on the Maine coast. Environmental Biology of Fishes 92:13–23.

Keller, R. P., and C. Perrings. 2011. International policy options for reducing the environmental impacts of invasive species. BioScience 61:1005–1012.

Kentula, M. E., and T. H. DeWitt. 2003. Abundance of seagrass (*Zostera marina* L.) and macroalgae in relation to the salinity-temperature gradient in Yaquina Bay, Oregon, USA. Estuaries 26:21130–21141.

Kirby, R. 2010. Distribution, transport and exchanges of fine sediment, with tidal power implications: Severn Estuary, UK. Marine Pollution Bulletin 61:21–36.

Knudsen, F. R., C. B. Schreck, S. M. Knapp, P. S. Enger, and O. Sand. 1997. Infrasound produces flight and avoidance response in Pacific juvenile salmonids. Journal of Fish Biology 51:824–829.

Kramer S., M. Previsic, P. Nelson, and S. Woo. 2010. RE Vision DE-003: Deployment effects of marine renewable energy technologies—framework for identifying key environmental concerns in marine renewable energy projects. U.S. Department of Energy Advanced Waterpower Program, Washington, D.C.

Kramer, S. H., C. D. Hamilton, G. C. Spencer, and H. D. Ogston. 2015. Evaluating the potential for marine and hydrokinetic devices to act as artificial reefs or fish aggregating devices, based on analysis of surrogates in tropical, subtropical, and temperate U.S. West Coast and Hawaiian coastal waters. OCS Study BOEM 2015–021. U.S. Department of Energy, Golden, Colorado.

Lake, R. G., and S. G. Hinch. 1999. Acute effects of suspended sediment angularity on juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56:862–867.

Langhamer, O. 2012. Artificial reef effect in relation to offshore renewable energy conversion: State of the art. The Scientific World Journal 2012:8.

Langhamer, O., K. Haikonen, and J. Sundberg. 2010. Wave power-sustainable energy or environmentally costly? A review with special emphasis on linear wave energy converters. Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews 14:1329–1335.

Layman, C. A. 2000. Fish assemblage structure of the shallow ocean surf-zone on the eastern shore of Virginia Barrier Islands. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 51:201–213.

Leeny, R. H., D. Greaves, D. Conley, and A. M. O'Hagan. 2014. Environmental impact assessment for wave energy developments—learning from existing activities and informing future research priorities. Ocean & Coastal Management 99:14–22.

Leggett, W. C., and R. N. O'Boyle. 1976. Osmotic stress and mortality in adult American shad during transfer from saltwater to freshwater. Journal of Fish Biology 8:459–69.

Lévesque, L. M., and M. G. Dubé. 2007. Review of the effects of in-stream pipeline crossing construction on aquatic ecosystems and examination of Canadian methodologies for impact assessment. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 132:395–409.

Lindeboom, H., S. Degraer, J. Dannheim, A. B. Gill, and D. Wilhelmsson. 2015. Offshore wind park monitoring programmes, lessons learned and recommendations for the future. Hydrobiologia 756:169–180. DOI: 10.1007/s10750-015-2267-4

Lohmann, K. J., C. M. F. Lohmann, and C. S. Endres. 2008a. The sensory ecology of ocean navigation. Journal of Experimental Biology 211:1719–1728.

Lohmann K. J., N. F. Putman, and C. M. F. Lohmann. 2008b. Geomagnetic imprinting: A unifying hypothesis of long-distance natal homing in salmon and sea turtles. Proceedings of the National Academy of Science USA 105:19096–19101.

Love, M. S., M. Nishimoto, D. Schroeder, and J. Caselle. 1999. The ecological role of natural reefs and oil and gas production platforms on rocky reef fishes in southern California: Final interim report USGS/BRD/CR-1999–007. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Love, M. S., and A. York. 2005. A comparison of the fish assemblages with an oil/gas pipeline and adjacent seafloor in the Santa Barbara Channel, Southern California Bight. Bulletin of Marine Science 77:101–117.

Love, M. S., D. M. Schroeder, and W. H. Lenarz. 2005. Distribution of bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*) and cowcod (*Sebastes levis*) around oil platforms and natural outcrops off California with implications for larval production. Bulletin of Marine Science 77:397–408.

Lowe, C. G., K. M. Anthony, E. T. Jarvis, and L. F. Bellquist. 2009. Site fidelity and movement patterns of groundfish associated with offshore petroleum platforms in the Santa Barbara Channel. Marine and Coastal Fisheries: Dynamics, Management, and Ecosystem Science 1:71–89.

Madsen, P. T., M. Wahlberg, J. Tougaard, K. Lucke, and P. Tyack. 2006. Wind turbine underwater noise and marine mammals: Implications of current knowledge and data needs. Marine Ecology Progress Series 309:279–295.

Manoukian, S., A. Spagnolo, G. Scarcella, E. Punzo, R. Angelini, and G. Fabi. 2010. Effects of two offshore gas platforms on soft-bottom benthic communities (northwestern Adriatic Sea, Italy). Marine Environmental Research 70:402–410.

McClure, R., T. Acker, and J. Dawson. 2010. Environmental assessment and monitoring of ocean energy sites—a rapid, proven, and economical approach. OCEANS 2010 IEEE:1–5.

Milinkovitch, T., A. Ndiaye, W. Sanchez, S. Le Floch, and H. Thomas-Guyon. 2011. Liver antioxidant and plasma immune responses in juvenile golden grey mullet (*Liza aurata*) exposed to dispersed crude oil. Aquatic Toxicology 101:155–164.

Miller, D. R., R. L. Emmett, and S. A. Hinton. 1990. A preliminary survey of benthic invertebrates in the vicinity of the Coos Bay (Oregon) navigation channel. Coastal Zone and Estuarine Studies. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle.

Miller, V. B., and L. A. Schaefer. 2010. Dynamic modeling of hydrokinetic energy extraction. Journal of Fluids Engineering 132:091102.

Mills, K. E., and M. S. Fonseca. 2003. Mortality and productivity of eelgrass *Zostera marina* under conditions of experimental burial with two sediment types. Marine Ecology Progress Series 255:127–134.

Moriarty, P., and D. Honnery. 2012. What is the global potential for renewable energy? Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews 16:244–252.

Mork, M. 1996. The effect of kelp in wave damping. Sarsia 80:323–327.

NEFMC (New England Fishery Management Council). 1998. Final Amendment #11 to the Northeast multispecies fishery management plan, Amendment #9 to the Atlantic sea scallop fishery management plan, Amendment #1 to the Monkfish fishery management plan, Amendment #1 to the Atlantic salmon fishery management plan, and components of the proposed Atlantic herring fishery management plan for essential fish habitat, incorporating the environmental assessment. New England Fishery Management Council, Newburyport, Massachusetts.

Newcombe, C. P., and J. O. Jensen. 1996. Channel suspended sediment and fisheries: A synthesis for quantitative assessment of risk and impact. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 16:693–727.

Newell, R. C., L. J. Seiderer, and D. R. Hitchcock 1998. The impact of dredging works in coastal waters: A review of the sensitivity to disturbance and subsequent recovery of biological resources on the seabed. Oceanography and Marine Biology: Annual Review 36:127–178.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001. Overwater structures: Marine issues. Washington State Transportation Commission, Seattle.

Niimi, A. J. 2004. Role of container vessels in the introduction of exotic species. Marine Pollution Bulletin 49:778–82.

Normandeau Associates, Exponent, T. Tricas, and A. Gill. 2011. Effects of EMFs from undersea power cables on elasmobranchs and other marine species. Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement, Bedford, New Hampshire.

Öhman, M. C., P. Sigray, and H. Westerberg. 2007. Offshore windmills and the effects of electromagnetic fields on fish. Ambio 36:630–633.

Omori, M., S. van der Spoel, and C. P. Norman. 1994. Impact of human activities on pelagic biogeography. Progress in Oceanography 34:211–219.

OSPAR Commission. 2009. Assessment of the environmental impacts of cables. Publication Number 437/2009. OSPAR Commission, London.

Petersen, J. K., and T. Malm. 2006. Offshore windmill farms: Threats to or possibilities for the marine environment. AMBIO 35:75–80.

Pezeshki, S. R., R. D. Delaune, and W. H. Patrick, Jr. 1987. Response of the freshwater marsh species, *Panicum hemitomon* Schult., to increased salinity. Freshwater Biology 17:195–200.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council). 1999. Appendix A: Identification and description of essential fish habitat, adverse impacts, and recommended conservation measures for salmon. Amendment 14 to the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council). 2019. Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan for the California, Oregon, and Washington Groundfish Fishery: Appendix D, Nonfishing Effects on West Coast Groundfish Essential Fish Habitat and Recommended Conservation Measures. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon. Available: www.pcouncil.org/documents/2019/06/groundfish-fmp-appendix-d.pdf/ (January 2022).

Phillips, R. C. 1984. The ecology of eelgrass meadows in the Pacific Northwest: A community profile. FWS/OBS-84/24. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Seattle.

Pickering, H., and D. Whitmarsh. 1997. Artificial reefs and fisheries exploitation: A review of the “attraction versus production” debate, the influence of design and its significance for policy. Fisheries Research 31:39–59.

Polagye, B., B. Van Cleve, A. Copping, and K. Kirkendall, editors. 2011. Environmental effects of tidal energy development. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/SPO-116.

Popper, A. N., and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of human-generated sound on fish. Integrative Zoology 4:43–52.

Popper, A. N., A. D. Hawkins, R. R. Fay, D. A. Mann, S. Bartol, T. J. Carlson, S. Coombs, W. T. Ellison, R. L. Gentry, M. B. Halvorsen, S. Løkkeborg, P. H. Rogers, B. L. Southall, D. G. Zeddies, and W. N. Tavolga. 2014. ASA S3/SC1.4 TR-2014 Sound exposure guidelines for fishes and sea turtles: A technical report prepared by ANSI-accredited standards committee S3/SC1 and registered with ANSI. Springer Briefs in Oceanography. DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06659-2

Punt, M. J., R. A. Groeneveld, E. C. van Ierland, and J. H. Stel. 2009. Spatial planning of offshore wind farms: A windfall to marine environmental protection? Ecological Economics 69:93–103.

Putman, N. F., K. J. Lohmann, E. M. Putman, T. P. Quinn, A. P. Klimley, and D. L. G. Noakes. 2013. Evidence for geomagnetic imprinting as a homing mechanism in Pacific salmon. Current Biology 23:312–316.

Putman, N. F., M. M. Scanlan, E. J. Billman, J. P. O’Neil, R. B. Couture, T. P. Quinn, K. J. Lohmann, and D. L.G. Noakes. 2014. An inherited magnetic map guides ocean navigation in juvenile Pacific salmon. Current Biology 24:446–450.

Ramirez, P., and S. B. Mosley. 2015. Oil and gas wells and pipelines on U.S. wildlife refuges: Challenges for managers. PLOS ONE 10:e0124085.

Reid, S. M., and P. G. Anderson. 1999. Effects of sediment released during open-cut pipeline water crossings. Canadian Water Resources Journal 24:235–251.

Reubens, J. T., F. Pasotti, S. Degraer, and M. Vincx. 2013a. Residency, site fidelity and habitat use of Atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua*) at an offshore wind farm using acoustic telemetry. Marine Environmental Research 90:128–135.

Reubens, J. T., S. Vandendriessche, A. N. Zenner, S. Degraer, and M. Vincx. 2013b. Offshore wind farms as productive sites or ecological traps for gadoid fishes?—Impact on growth, condition index and diet composition. Marine Environmental Research 90:66–74.

Reubens, J. T., S. Degraer, and M. Vincx. 2014. The ecology of benthopelagic fishes at offshore wind farms: A synthesis of 4 years of research. Hydrobiologia 727:121–136.

Ruiz G. M., J. T. Carlton, E. D. Grosholz, and A. H. Hines. 1997. Global invasions of marine and estuarine habitats by non-indigenous species: Mechanisms, extent and consequences. American Zoologist 37:621–32.

Russell, D. J. F., S. M. J. M. Brasseur, D. Thompson, G. D. Hastie, V. M. Janik, G. Aarts, B. T. McClintock, J. Matthiopoulos, S. E. W. Moss, and B. McConnell. 2014. Marine mammals trace anthropogenic structures at sea. Current Biology 24:R638–R639.

Schläppy, M.-L., A. Šaškov, and T. G. Dahlgren. 2014. Impact hypothesis for offshore wind farms: Explanatory models for species distribution at extremely exposed rocky areas. Geoscience and Habitat Mapping for Marine Renewable Energy 83:14–23.

Schlenk, D., and R. Lavado. 2011. Impacts of climate change on hypersaline conditions of estuaries and xenobiotic toxicity. Aquatic Toxicology 105S:78–82.

Schroeder, D. M., and M. S. Love. 2004. Ecological and political issues surrounding decommissioning of offshore oil facilities in the southern California Bight. Ocean and Coastal Management 47:21–48.

Shields, M. A., and A. I. L. Payne, editors. 2014. Marine renewable energy technology and environmental interactions. Humanity and the Sea. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

Shields, M. A., D. K. Woolf, E. P. M. Grist. S. A. Kerr, A. C. Jackson, R. E. Harris, M. C. Bell, R. Beharie, A. Want, E. Osalusi, S. W. Gibb, and J. Side. 2011. Marine renewable energy: The ecological implications of altering the hydrodynamics of the marine environment. Ocean & Coastal Management 54:2–9.

Shumchenia, E. J., S. L. Smith, J. McCann, M. Carnevale, G. Fugate, R. D. Kenny, J. W. King, P. Paton, M. Schwartz, M. Spaulding, and K. J. Winiarski. 2012. An adaptive framework for selecting environmental monitoring protocols to support ocean renewable energy development. The Scientific World Journal 2012:450685.

Snyder, B., and M. J. Kaiser. 2009. Ecological and economic cost-benefit analysis of offshore wind energy. Renewable Energy 34:1567–1578.

Spaulding, M. L., A. Grilli, C. Damon, and G. Fugate. 2010. Application of technology development index and principal component analysis and cluster methods to ocean renewable energy facility siting. Marine Technology Society Journal 44:8–23.

Stenberg, C., J. G. Støttrup, M. van Deurs, C. W. Berg, G. E. Dinesen, H. Mosegaard, T. M. Grome, and S. B. Leonhard. 2015. Long-term effects of an offshore wind farm in the North Sea on fish communities. Marine Ecology Progress Series 528:257–265.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Thom, R. M., A. B. Borde, S. Rumrill, D. L. Woodruff, G. D. Williams, J. A. Southard, and S. L. Sargeant. 2003. Factors influencing spatial and annual variability in eelgrass (*Zostera marina* L.) meadows in Willapa Bay, Washington, and Coos Bay, Oregon estuaries. Estuaries 26:1117–1129.

Thomsen. F., K. Lüdemann, R. Kafemann, and W. Piper. 2006. Effects of offshore wind farm noise on marine mammals and fish. COWRIE Report. COWRIE Ltd., Hamburg, Germany.

Tougaard, J., O. D. Henriksen, and L. A. Miller. 2009. Underwater noise from three types of offshore wind turbines: Estimation of impact zones for harbor porpoises and harbor seals. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 125:3766–3773.

Tripp, D. B., and V. A. Poulin. 1992. The effects of logging and mass wasting on juvenile salmonid populations in streams on the Queen Charlotte Islands. Ministry of Forestry, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

USACE (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers). 1983. Dredging and dredged material disposal. Engineer Manual 1110-2-5025. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Washington, D.C.

USDOE (U.S. Department of Energy). 2005. Liquefied Natural Gas: Understanding the Basic Facts. Available: www.energy.gov/sites/prod/files/2013/04/f0/LNG_primerupd.pdf (January 2022).

Van Deurs, M., T. M. Grome, M. Kaspersen, H. Jensen, C. Stenberg, T. K. Sørensen, J. Støttrup, T. Warner, and H. Mosegaard. 2012. Short- and long-term effects of an offshore wind farm on three species of sand eel and their sand habitat. Marine Ecology Progress Series 458:169–180.

Van Maren, D. S., T. van Kessel, K. Cronin, and L. Sittoni. 2015. The impact of channel deepening and dredging on estuarine sediment concentration. Continental Shelf Research 95:1–14.

Van Staveren, J., A. Hawkins, C. Turner, D. Groff, and G. Lomnicky. 2010. Biological assessment and essential fish habitat assessment for the construction of NOAA's Marine Operations Center—Pacific in Newport, Oregon. Prepared for Port of Newport, Oregon by Pacific Habitat Services, Inc., Newport, Oregon.

Vandendriessche, S., J. Derweduwen, and K. Hostens. 2015. Equivocal effects of offshore wind farms in Belgium on soft substrate epibenthos and fish assemblages. Hydrobiologia 756:19–35.

Wahlberg, M., and H. Westerberg. 2005. Hearing in fish and their reactions to sounds from offshore wind farms. Marine Ecology Progress Series 288:295–309.

Ward, J., I. Schultz, D. Woodruff, G. Roesijadi, and A. Copping. 2010. Assessing the effects of marine and hydrokinetic energy development on marine and estuarine resources. OCEANS 2010 IEEE:1–7.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Weilgart, L. S. 2007. The impacts of anthropogenic ocean noise on cetaceans and implications for management. Canadian Journal of Zoology 85:1091–1116.

Wilber, D. H., and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Biological effects of suspended sediments: A review of suspended sediment impacts on fish and shellfish with relation to dredging activities in estuaries. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21:855–875.

Wilhelmsson, D., T. Malm, and M. Öhman. 2006. The influence of offshore windpower on demersal fish. ICES Journal of Marine Science 63:775–784.

Wilhelmsson, D., and T. Malm. 2008. Fouling assemblages on offshore wind power plants and adjacent substrata. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 79:459–466.

Wilson, J. C., M. Elliott, N. D. Cutts, L. Mander, V. Mendão, R. Perez-Dominguez, and A. Phelps. 2010. Coastal and offshore wind energy generation: Is it environmentally benign? Energies 3:1383–1422.

Witt, M. J., E. V. Sheenan, S. Bearhop, A. C. Broderick, D. C. Contley, S. P. Cotterell, E. Crow, W. J. Grecian, C. Halsband, D. J. Hodgson, and P. Hosegood. 2012. Assessing wave energy effects on biodiversity: The wave hub experience. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A 370:502–529.

Woodruff, D., J. Ward, I. Schultz, and V. Cullinan. 2011. Effects of electromagnetic fields on fish and invertebrates. Task 2.1.3: Effects on Aquatic Organisms—Fiscal Year 2011 Progress Report. Prepared for the U.S. Department of Energy. Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, Sequim, Washington.

Wyatt, R. 2008. Review of existing data on underwater sounds produced by the oil and gas industry. Seiche Measurements Limited Ref – S186. Joint Industry Programme on Sound and Marine Life, Seiche Measurements Ltd, Great Torrington, UK.

Yang, Z., T. Wang, A. Copping, and S. Geerlofs. 2014. Modeling of in-stream tidal energy development and its potential effects in Tacoma Narrows, Washington, USA. Ocean & Coastal Management 99:52–62.

Zimmerman, R. C. 2006. Light and photosynthesis in seagrass meadows. Pages 303–321 *in* A. W. D. Larkum, R. J. Orth, and C. M. Duarte, editors. Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology, and Conservation. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

10. Agriculture and Grazing

Potential Adverse Impacts of Agriculture and Grazing

The following factors associated with agriculture and grazing can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, and impacts to water quality. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Functionality of EFH depends, in part, on bank stability, channel complexity, and condition of riparian vegetation (Zierholdz et al. 2001, USEPA 2003, Vondracek et al. 2005, Palmer et al. 2009). Land development is associated with habitat simplification (e.g., loss of multithreaded channels, floodplains) and reduction in riparian zone and wetland habitat; as vegetation is removed, soils are disturbed and erosion increases, negatively impacting benthic organisms and fishes (Chapman and Knudsen 1980, Kauffman and Krueger 1984, Platts 1991, Clary 1999, USGS 1999, Pess et al. 2002, Scrimgeour and Kendall 2003, Stone et al. 2005, Lohse et al. 2008, Roni et al. 2008, Lindley et al. 2009). Livestock grazing intensity and impacts vary over time and space, habitat and vegetation type, and season (George et al. 2002); seasonal increases in grazing pressure could exacerbate grazing impacts on EFH during periods that are already stressful for aquatic organisms (i.e., during periods of low flows and warm water temperatures; Parsons et al. 2003).

Reductions in flows caused by water withdrawals, such as those used for agriculture, can lead to increased solar heating, increase fish embryo mortality as spawning grounds are exposed (Deitch et al. 2009), reduce food resources (McKay and King 2006), and disrupt larval and juvenile fish recruitment into estuaries (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005).

Altered hydrology

Freshwater is diverted from EFH to agricultural lands for irrigation of crops and livestock (Adams and Cho 1998, Cuffney et al. 2000, Levy 2003, Markham 2006), impacting hydrologic functionality of EFH (Johnson 1992, Reid 1993, Tabacchi et al. 1998, Deitch et al. 2009). Upstream water use can decrease river flows (Caldwell et al. 2012), alter the transport of sediments (Fajen and Layzer 1993) and organic matter, reduce water depths, alter water chemistry, and affect water temperatures (McCullough 1999). Altered hydrologic functionality can affect survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005, Lohse et al. 2008, Deitch et al. 2009), and can lead to reduction of invertebrate populations (McKay and King 2006) that support fish production (Deitch et al. 2009). Livestock grazing also impacts watershed hydrology through a variety of mechanisms, such as reducing vegetation cover or composition, creating new flowpaths by making trails, and compacting soils (e.g., Trimble and Mendel 1995).

The volume and timing of freshwater delivery to estuary EFH is also impacted by upstream water use resulting from agricultural practices, affecting water residence time, temperature, salinity, water quality, and stratification of the water column (Kimmerer 2002, Flemer and Champ 2006).

Such degradation of estuary EFH can reduce the survival of estuarine-dependent species that have adapted to more dynamic freshwater influxes (Nichols et al. 1986).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Agricultural practices such as grazing and tilling can disturb streamside soil and vegetation, reducing organic matter, exposing sensitive soils, affecting water infiltration, and reducing vegetative biomass (Platts 1991, Johnson 1992, Zimmerman et al. 2003, Wooster and DeBano 2006), all of which can increase soil erosion and sedimentation in EFH (Kauffman and Krueger 1984, Wood and Armitage 1997, Hook 2002, Markham 2006, Yuan et al. 2009). Increased sedimentation can inhibit aquatic vegetation (USEPA 2003), interfere with feeding by filter feeders (MacKenzie 2007), clog and harm fish gills (Bilby et al. 1989, Waldichuk 1993), cover fish spawning areas (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Chapman 1988, Smith and Wegner 2001), and alter food supply for invertebrates and fish living in EFH (Newcombe and Jensen 1996, Suttle et al. 2004).

Release of contaminants

The agriculture industry is a major source of contamination and pollution in EFH (Kauffman and Krueger 1984, Platts 1991, Heady and Child 1994, Witman 1996, Saiki et al. 2001, Adams 2002, USEPA 2003, Macneale et al. 2010, USEPA 2013). Contaminants typically introduced to EFH include pesticides (Scholz et al. 2012), herbicides (Nordone et al. 1998, Katagi 2010), and insecticides (Weston et al. 2005) in the form of steroid hormones (Kolodziej and Sedlak 2007), endocrine disruptors (Bertram et al. 2015), and metals (Manning and Burau 1995, Wu 2004, Kiaune and Singhasemanon 2011). With respect to fish, for example, livestock can receive a number of supplements including steroids that affect reproductive pheromones and behavior (Kolodziej and Seldak 2007), endocrine disruptors that affect reproduction and physiology (Brodeur et al. 1997, Johnson et al. 2002, Pait and Nelson 2002, Thurberg and Gould 2005, Baker et al. 2009, Peck et al. 2011), and metals that affect sense of smell and behavior (Kiaune and Singhasemanon 2011).

Runoff from agriculture, particularly livestock manure, typically contains elevated levels of pathogens, including bacteria, viruses, and protozoa (USEPA 2003). Nutrient enrichment of rivers, streams, lakes, wetlands, and coastal waters from agriculture contributes to algal blooms, which are sometimes toxic (Miller et al. 2010, Paerl et al. 2011). These algal blooms can also be associated with reductions in dissolved oxygen (DO) that can be lethal to aquatic organisms (e.g., Camargo and Alonso 2006).

Impacts to water quality

Agricultural practices can influence water quality in EFH, impacting survival of invertebrates and fish (Nehlsen et al. 1991, Levy 2003, Zhu et al. 2012). Loss of riparian vegetation resulting from land conversion for agricultural and other uses can increase solar radiation and water temperatures, reducing suitability of conditions in otherwise important EFH (Tabacchi et al. 1998, Kiffney et al. 2003, Kishi et al. 2004, Moring 2005, Lawrence et al. 2014). Water diversions for agricultural purposes can lead to altered water temperatures, in part, impacting survival of fish (e.g., the die-off of 30,000 Chinook salmon during 2002 in the Klamath River; Levy 2003). Altered temperature regimes also affect fish distribution and habitat use, growth rate, migration patterns, embryonic development, trophic interactions, and susceptibility to parasites and pathogens (USEPA 2003, Quinn 2005).

Agricultural practices can increase nutrient loads and DO in EFH (Reed 2003, Zhu et al. 2012). Nutrients (i.e., nitrogen and phosphorous) from animal waste and fertilizers collect in agricultural lands and flow into EFH (Howarth et al. 2002, Markham 2006, USEPA 2013), leading to increased eutrophication, decreased DO, and significant impacts to fish and other aquatic organisms (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005). Temperature and DO are important factors affecting the development of embryos, larvae, and juvenile fish (Chapman 1988, Hicks et al. 1991, Quinn 2005). Reduced DO can alter species composition and productivity (Castro et al. 2003) and contributes to the formation of dead zones, areas where DO is too low to support most marine life (Diaz and Rosenberg 2008, Brown and Power 2011, Steinberg et al. 2011). Eutrophication resulting from agricultural and grazing activities can also reduce and alter important vegetation features in marine EFH, such as eelgrass (Short et al. 1993, MacKenzie 2005), and can stimulate the spread of invasive aquatic vegetation, providing increased habitat for invasive predators such as largemouth bass (Mount et al. 2012).

Potential Conservation Measures for Agriculture and Grazing

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of agriculture and grazing on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of agriculture and grazing on EFH.

General guidelines

- Promote and incentivize acquisition of agricultural lands, when available, to prevent urban, rural, and upland development, which leads to permanent loss of aquatic habitats.
- Include private landowner, and public and private land manager, input when developing and implementing BMPs (Thompson et al. 2006).
- Collect control and treatment data in the vicinity of agricultural restoration sites prior to restoration activities to evaluate effectiveness of restoration efforts (Cooperman et al. 2007).
- Incentivize protection and restoration of rangelands using practices such as rotational grazing systems or livestock distribution controls, exclusion of livestock from sensitive riparian and aquatic areas, dry residual matter monitoring, the use of off-stream attractants such as water sources and salt or nutrient licks, livestock-specific erosion controls, reestablishment and protection of vegetation to promote growth of desirable native species, and/or extensive brush management correction.
- Incentivize conservation programs, especially those in the Food, Conservation, and Energy Act of 2008 (i.e., the Farm Bill).
- Incentivize the Conservation of Private Grazing Land Program (CPGL), and the Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program (CREP), voluntary programs that help owners and managers of private grazing land address natural resource concerns while enhancing the economic and social stability of grazing land enterprises and the rural

communities that depend on them. Technical assistance is provided by the Natural Resource Conservation Service.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Roads for agricultural lands must be sited in locations to avoid sensitive areas such as streams, wetlands, and steep slopes. Decommission and relocate all roads that impact vulnerable and sensitive areas.
- In actively grazed areas, reconstruct riparian buffers and implement monitoring, management, and grazing regimes. In degraded grazed areas in or near streams, wetlands, and the riparian zone, implement mitigation to reconstruct riparian buffers with the goal of restoring riparian–aquatic functionality.
- Construct, manage and mitigate riparian and stream corridors to improve terrestrial invertebrate production (Saunders and Fausch 2007), streamside shading, large woody debris and leaf litter inputs, and sediment and nutrient routing control (Lowrance et al. 2002). The width of the buffers is dependent upon site characteristics; various methods can be implemented: riparian forest planting, alley cropping, filter strips, field borders, etc. (Fischer and Fischenich 2000).
- Do not plant crops in areas with steep slopes and erodible soils, and do not disturb or drain wetlands and marshes.
- Design restoration projects that provide durable structures used to increase cover, improve geomorphologic functionality, and reduce erosion (e.g., timber and log check dams; Allan 2004).
- Implement rotational grazing, livestock exclusion, manure storage, and off-stream watering and feeding sites to reduce impacts of grazing on riparian and stream habitat and benthic communities (Platts 1991, Lyons et al. 2000, McInnis and McIver 2001, Scrimgeour and Kendall 2003, Yates et al. 2007).
- Implement no-till crop management to reduce impacts of crop management on riparian and stream habitat (Yates et al. 2006).

Altered hydrology

- Redesign and operate water diversion systems to ensure that flow conditions provide for passage and proper timing of life-history stages of aquatic organisms.
- Monitor diversion facility operations to assess impacts on water temperatures, dissolved oxygen, and other applicable parameters, and use adaptive management to minimize impacts.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Ensure stream grazing buffer width is at least 6 m (Hook 2002, Yuan et al. 2009) to retain banks and decrease sedimentation in EFH, and ensure that buffers cover enough length of stream so that restoration efforts are effective (Wooster and DeBano 2006).
- Monitor the duration of increased suspended sediments to evaluate potential impacts on invertebrates and fishes (Vondracek et al. 2003).
- Utilize spatially explicit evaluations of land cover to understand erosion potential (Wissmar et al. 2004).
- Reduce erosion and run-off by using practices such as contour plowing and terracing, no-till agriculture, conservation tillage, crop sequencing, cover and green manure cropping and crop residue, and by maximizing use of riparian management zones. Some approaches include filter strips, field borders, grassed waterways, terraces with safe outlet structures, contour strip cropping, diversion channels, sediment retention basins, and restoration of riparian vegetation.

- Utilize upland grazing management that minimizes surface erosion and disruption of hydrologic processes. Eliminate livestock access into riparian zones and stream reaches.
- Establish proper streambank alteration move triggers and endpoint indicators, in combination with the other management measures intended to reduce the amount of time livestock spend in riparian areas, to reduce the amount of fine sediment introduced into streams.
- Include BMPs for agricultural road construction plans, including erosion control, avoidance of side casting of road materials into streams, and native-only vegetation in stabilization plantings. Design road systems to direct water to infiltration areas rather than directly to streams.
- Protect and restore soil quality using practices that improve native soil characteristics such as permeability, water retention, nutrient uptake, organic matter content, and biological activity. BMP examples include cover cropping, crop sequencing, sediment and infiltration basins, contour farming, conservation tillage, crop residue management, grazing management, and the use of low-compaction farming equipment.

Release of contaminants

- Install fencing and expand riparian vegetation buffers to reduce discharge of animal waste into EFH (Kolodziej and Sedlak 2007).
- Minimize water withdrawals for irrigation and promote water conservation measures, such as more efficient irrigation systems (e.g., convert sprinkler irrigation systems to drip systems in orchards). Use alternative water sources such as rooftop rain collection or reclaimed municipal (or agricultural) wastewater, where available. Reuse drainage water on sequentially more salt-tolerant crops, or recapture and blend with freshwater until the necessary salinity is achieved (CDFG and NMFS 2002).
- Develop and use seasonal restrictions to avoid impacts to habitat during critical life-history stages for aquatic organisms. Seasonal work windows are specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species life-history requirements.

Impacts to water quality

- For comprehensive review of stream water quality BMPs related to agricultural impacts, see Agouridis et al. (2005).
- Incorporate and incentivize water-quality monitoring as an element of landowner assistance programs for water quality. Assist with evaluation of monitoring data, and assist landowners with adjustments to agricultural practices as needed.
- Ensure efficient use and appropriate application of pesticides on agricultural land, and that such chemicals do not come into contact with EFH—neither directly nor indirectly. Monitor nearby water bodies for contamination and incentivize measures to prevent the flow of pesticides into adjacent water bodies. BMPs include use of integrated pest management, planting of insectary cover crops or borders to increase beneficial insect populations, frequent calibration of spray equipment, monitoring of wind speeds with weather stations or anemometers rather than visual means, incentivized use of least-toxic pesticides, irrigation management, soil monitoring for moisture and nutrient levels, monitoring plant nutrient levels, and

careful timing of nutrient applications. Select pesticides considering their persistence, toxicity, runoff potential, and leaching potential.

- Eliminate the use of chemical treatments within the riparian zone. Reduce pesticide use by evaluating pest problems and understanding past pest control measures. Select pesticides considering their persistence, toxicity, runoff potential, and leaching potential.
- Do not apply manure or other fertilizer to land unless appropriate management measures are in place to eliminate sediment and nutrient input to EFH.
- Do not site or expand animal facilities adjacent to EFH, or in areas with high leaching potential to surface or groundwater. Use BMPs to minimize discharges from animal facilities (for both wastewater and process water).
- Do not site animal facilities (e.g., feedlots, corrals, horse boarding facilities) near EFH or adjacent habitats such as the riparian zone, or near areas with potential for leaching or runoff. Relocate existing facilities or management areas to appropriate locations. At new locations, ensure that adequate nutrient and wastewater collection facilities are in place and serviceable.
- Investigate biofiltration systems, such as those used for urban runoff, for their utility in improving water quality in EFH located near systems degraded by agriculture and grazing practices.

References

Adams, J. D. 2002. Concentrations of fecal coliform bacteria in Prince Edward Island headwater streams: An interim report. Effects of land use practices on fish, shellfish, and their habitats on Prince Edward Island. Canadian Manuscript Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 2408, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island. Canadian Department of Fisheries and Oceans.

Adams, R. M., and S. H. Cho. 1998. Agriculture and endangered species: An analysis of trade-offs in the Klamath Basin, Oregon. Water Resources Research, 34:2741–2749.

Agouridis, C. T., S. R. Workman, R. C. Warner, and G. D. Jennings. 2005. Livestock grazing management impacts on stream water quality: A review. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 41(3):591–606.

Allan, J. D. 2004. Landscapes and riverscapes: The influence of land use on stream ecosystems. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 35:257–284.

Baker, M. E., B. Ruggeri, L. J. Sprague, C. Eckhardt-Ludka, J. Lapira, I. Wick, and G. Hardiman. 2009. Analysis of endocrine disruption in Southern California coastal fish using an aquatic multispecies microarray. Environmental Health Perspectives 117:223–230.

Bertram, M. G., M. Saaristo, J. B. Baumgartner, C. P. Johnstone, M. Allinson, G. Allinson, and B. B. Wong. 2015. Sex in troubled waters: Widespread agricultural contaminant disrupts reproductive behavior in fish. Hormones and Behavior 70:85–91.

Bilby, R. E., K. Sullivan, and S. H. Duncan. 1989. The generation and fate of road-surface sediment in forested watersheds in southwestern Washington. Forest Science 35:453–468.

Brodeur, J. C., G. Sherwood, J. B. Rasmussen, and A. Hontela. 1997. Impaired cortisol secretion in yellow perch (*Perca flavescens*) from lakes contaminated by heavy metals: In vivo and in vitro assessment. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:2752–2758.

Brown, C. A., and J. H. Power. 2011. Historic and recent patterns of dissolved oxygen in the Yaquina Estuary (Oregon, USA): Importance of anthropogenic activities and oceanic conditions. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 92:446–455.

Caldwell, P. V., G. Sun, S. G. McNulty, E. C. Cohen, and J. A. Moore Myers. 2012. Impacts of impervious cover, water withdrawals, and climate change on river flows in the conterminous US. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 16:2839–2857.

Camargo, J. A., and Á. Alonso. 2006. Ecological and toxicological effects of inorganic nitrogen pollution in aquatic ecosystems: A global assessment. Environment International 32:831–849.

Castro, J. 2003. Geomorphologic impacts of culvert placement and removal: Avoiding channel incision. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon.

CDFG and NMFS (California Department of Fish and Game and National Marine Fisheries Service). 2002. Guidelines for maintaining instream flows to protect fisheries resources downstream of water diversion in mid-California coastal streams. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, California.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Chapman, D. W., and E. Knudsen. 1980. Channelization and livestock impacts on salmonid habitat and biomass in western Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 109:357–363.

Clary, W. P. 1999. Stream channel and vegetation responses to late spring cattle grazing. Journal of Rangeland Management 52:218–227.

Cooperman, M. S., S. G. Hinch, S. Bennett, M. A. Branton, R. V. Galbraith, J. T. Quigley, and B. A. Heise. 2007. Streambank restoration effectiveness: Lessons learned from a comparative study. Fisheries 32:278–291.

Cuffney, T. F., M. R. Meador, S. D. Porter, and M. E. Gurtz. 2000. Responses of physical, chemical, and biological indicators of water quality to a gradient of agricultural land use in the Yakima River Basin, Washington. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 64:259–270.

Deegan, L. A., and R. N. Buchsbaum. 2005. The effect of habitat loss and degradation on fisheries. Pages 67–96 *in* R. N. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The Decline in Fisheries Resources in New England: Evaluating the Impact of Overfishing, Contamination, and Habitat Degradation. Publication No. MITSG 05-5. MIT Sea Grant College Program, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Deitch, M. J., G. M. Kondolf, and A. M. Merenlender. 2009. Hydrologic impacts of small-scale instream diversions for frost and heat prevention in the California wine country. River Research and Applications 25:118–134.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Diaz, R. J., and R. Rosenberg. 2008. Spreading dead zones and consequences for marine ecosystems. Science 321:926–929.

Fajen, O. F., and J. B. Layzer. 1993. Agricultural practices. Pages 257–267 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Fischer, R. A., and J. C. Fischenich. 2000. Design recommendations for riparian corridors and vegetated buffer strips. ERDC TN-EMRRP-SR-24. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Flemer, D. A., and M. A. Champ. 2006. What is the future fate of estuaries given nutrient over-enrichment, freshwater diversion and low flows? Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:247–258.

George, M. R., R. E. Larsen, N. K. McDougald, K. W. Tate, J. D. Gerlach, Jr., and K. O. Fulgham. 2002. Influence of grazing on channel morphology of intermittent streams. Journal of Rangeland Management 55:551–557.

Heady, H. F., and R. D. Child. 1994. Rangeland ecology and management. Westview Press, Inc., Boulder, Colorado.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hook, P. B. 2002. Sediment retention in rangeland riparian buffers. Journal of Environmental Quality 32:1130–1137.

Howarth, R. W., A. Sharpley, and D. Walker. 2002. Sources of nutrient pollution to coastal waters in the United States: Implications for achieving coastal water quality goals. Estuaries 25:656–676.

Johnson, K. L. 1992. Management for water quality on rangelands through best management practices: The Idaho approach. Pages 415–441 *in* R. J. Naiman, editor. Watershed management: Balancing sustainability and environmental change. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Johnson, L. L., T. K. Collier, and J. E. Stein. 2002. An analysis in support of sediment quality thresholds for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) to protect estuarine fish. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 12:517–538.

Katagi, T. 2010. Bioconcentration, bioaccumulation, and metabolism of pesticides in aquatic organisms. Reviews of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 204:1–132. DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4419-1440-8_1

Kauffman, J. B., and W. C. Krueger. 1984. Livestock impacts on riparian ecosystems and streamside management implications: A review. Journal of Range Management 37:430–348.

Kiaune, L., and N. Singhasemanon. 2011. Pesticide copper (I) oxide: Environmental fate and aquatic toxicity. Reviews in Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 213:1–26.

Kiffney, P. M., J. S. Richardson, and J. P. Bull. 2003. Responses of periphyton and insects to experimental manipulation of riparian buffer width along forest streams. Journal of Applied Ecology 40:1060–1076.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2002. Effects of freshwater flow on abundance of estuarine organisms: Physical effects or trophic linkages? Marine Ecology Progress Series 243:39–55.

Kishi, D., M. Murakami, S. Nakano, and Y. Taniguchi. 2004. Effects of forestry on the thermal habitat of Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*). Ecological Research 19(3):283–290.

Kolodziej, E. P., and D. L. Sedlak. 2007. Rangeland grazing as a source of steroid hormones to surface waters. Environmental Science & Technology 41:3514–3520.

Lawrence, D. J., B. Stewart-Koster, J. D. Olden, A. S. Ruesch, C. E. Torgersen, J. J. Lawler, D. P. Butcher, and J. K. Crown. 2014. The interactive effects of climate change, riparian management, and a nonnative predator on stream-rearing salmon. Ecological Applications 24:895–912.

Levy, S. 2003. Turbulence in the Klamath River Basin. BioScience 53:315–320.

Lindley, S. T., C. B. Grimes, M. S. Mohr, W. Peterson, J. Stein, J. T. Anderson, L. W. Botsford, D. L. Bottom, C. A. Busack, T. K. Collier, J. Ferguson, J. C. Garza, A. M. Grover, D. G. Hankin, R. G. Kope, P. W. Lawson, A. Low, R. B. MacFarlane, K. Moore, M. Palmer-Zwahlen, F. B. Schwing, J. Smith, C. Tracy, R. Webb, B. K. Wells, and T. H. Williams. 2009. What caused the Sacramento River fall Chinook stock collapse? Pre-publication report. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon. Available: repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/3664/.

Lohse, K. A., D. A. Newburn, J. J. Opperman, and A. M. Merenlender. 2008. Forecasting relative impacts of land use on anadromous fish habitat to guide conservation planning. Ecological Applications 18:467–482.

Lowrance, R., S. Dabney, and R. Schultz. 2002. Improving water and soil quality with conservation buffers. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 57:36A–43A.

Lyons, J., B. M. Weigel, L. K. Paine, and D. J. Undersander. 2000. Influence of intensive rotational grazing on bank erosion, fish habitat quality, and fish communities in southwestern Wisconsin trout streams. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 55:271–276.

MacKenzie, C. L., Jr. 2005. Removal of sea lettuce, *Ulva* sp., in estuaries to improve the environments for invertebrates, fish, wading birds, and eelgrass, *Zostera marina*. Marine Fisheries Review 67:1–8.

MacKenzie, C. L., Jr. 2007. Causes underlying the historical decline in eastern oyster (*Crassostrea virginica* Gmelin, 1791) landings. Journal of Shellfish Research 26:927–938.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

Manning, B. A., and R. G. Burau. 1995. Selenium immobilization in evaporation pond sediments by in situ precipitation of ferric oxyhydroxide. Environmental Science and Technology 29:2639–2646.

Markham, V. D. 2006. U.S. national report on population and the environment. Center for Environment and Population, New Canaan, Connecticut.

McCullough, D. A. 1999. A review and synthesis of effects of alterations to the water temperature regime on freshwater life stages of salmonids, with special reference to Chinook salmon. Region 10 Water Resources Assessment Report No. 910-R-99–010 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Seattle.

McInnis, M. L., and J. McIver. 2001. Influence of off-stream supplements on streambanks of riparian pastures. Journal of Rangeland Management 54:648–652.

McKay, S. F., and A. J. King. 2006. Potential ecological effects of water extraction in small, unregulated streams. River Research and Applications 22:1023–1037.

Miller, M. A., R. M. Kudela, A. Mekebri, D. Crane, S. C. Oates, M. T. Tinker, and D. A. Jessup. 2010. Evidence for a novel marine harmful algal bloom: Cyanotoxin (microcystin) transfer from land to sea otters. PLOS ONE 5:e12576

Moring, J. 2005. Recent trends in anadromous fishes. Pages 25–42 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. D. Robinson, editors. The decline of fisheries resources in New England: Evaluating the impact of overfishing, contamination, and habitat degradation. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Mount, J., W. Bennett, J. Durand, W. Fleenor, E. Hanak, J. Lund, and P. Moyle. 2012. Aquatic ecosystem stressors in the Sacramento–San Joaquin delta. Public Policy Institute of California, San Francisco, California.

Nehlsen, W., J. E. Williams, and J. A. Lichatowich. 1991. Pacific salmon at the crossroads: Stocks at risk from California, Oregon, Idaho, and Washington. Fisheries 16:4–21.

Newcombe, C. P., and J. O. Jensen. 1996. Channel suspended sediment and fisheries: A synthesis for quantitative assessment of risk and impact. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 16:693–727.

Nichols, F. H., J. E. Cloern, and S. N. Luoma. 1986. The modification of an estuary. Science 231:567–573.

Nordone, A. J., T. A. Dotson, M. F. Kovacs, R. Doane, and R. C. Biever. 1998. Metabolism of [^{14}C]acrolein (Magnacide H® Herbicide): Nature and magnitude of residues in freshwater fish and shellfish. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 17:276–281.

Paerl, H. W., N. S. Hall, and E. S. Calandrino. 2011. Controlling harmful cyanobacterial blooms in a world experiencing anthropogenic and climatic-induced change. Science of the Total Environment 409:1739–1745.

Pait, A. S., and J. O. Nelson. 2002. Endocrine Disruption in Fish: An Assessment of Recent Research and Results. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS CCMA 149.

Palmer, M. A., H. L. Menninger, and E. Bernhardt. 2009. River restoration, habitat heterogeneity and biodiversity: A failure of theory or practice. Freshwater Biology 55:1–18.

Parsons, C. T., P. A. Momont, T. Delcurto, M. McInnis, and M. L. Porath. 2003. Cattle distribution patterns and vegetation use in mountain riparian areas. Journal of Rangeland Management 56:334–341.

Peck, K. A., D. P. Lomax, O. P. Olson, S. Y. Sol, P. Swanson, and L. L. Johnson. 2011. Development of an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for quantifying vitellogenin in Pacific salmon and assessment of field exposure to environmental estrogens. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 30:477–486.

Pess, G. R., D. R. Montgomery, E. A. Steel, R. E. Bilby, B. E. Feist, and H. M. Greenberg. 2002. Landscape characteristics, land use, and coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) abundance, Snohomish River, Wash., U.S.A. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 59:613–623.

Platts, W. S. 1991. Livestock grazing. Pages 389–423 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington, Seattle.

Reed, T. 2003. Macroinvertebrate assemblage change in a small eastern Oregon stream following disturbance by grazing cattle. Journal of Freshwater Ecology 18:315–320.

Reid, L. M. 1993. Research and cumulative watershed effects. USDA Forest Service General Technical Report PSW-GTR-141. Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, California.

Roni, P., K. Hanson, and T. Beechie. 2008. Global review of the physical and biological effectiveness of stream habitat rehabilitation techniques. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:856–890.

Saiki, M. K., V. A. Martin, S. E. Schwarzbach, and T. W. May. 2001. Effects of an agricultural drainwater bypass on fishes inhabiting the Grassland Water District and the lower San Joaquin River, California. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21:624–635.

Saunders, W. C., and K. D. Fausch. 2007. Improved grazing management increases terrestrial invertebrate inputs that feed trout in Wyoming rangeland streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 136:1216–1230.

Scholz, N. L., E. Fleishman, L. Brown, I. Werner, M. L. Johnson, M. L. Brooks, and D. Schlenk. 2012. A perspective on modern pesticides, pelagic fish declines, and unknown ecological resilience in highly managed ecosystems. BioScience 62:428–434.

Scrimgeour, G. J., and S. Kendall. 2003. Effects of livestock grazing on benthic invertebrates from a native grassland ecosystem. Freshwater Biology 48:347–362.

Short, F. T., D. M. Burdick, J. S. Wolf, and G. E. Jones. 1993. Eelgrass in estuarine research reserves along the East Coast, U.S.A. Part I: Declines from pollution and disease and Part II: Management of eelgrass meadows. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Steinberg, P. D., M. T. Brett, J. S. Bechtold, J. E. Richey, L. M. Porensky, and S. N. Smith. 2011. The influence of watershed characteristics on nitrogen export to and marine fate in Hood Canal, Washington, USA. Biogeochemistry 106:415–433.

Stone, M. L., M. R. Whiles, and J. A. Webber. 2005. Macroinvertebrate communities in agriculturally impacted southern Illinois streams: Patterns with riparian vegetation, water quality, and in-stream habitat quality. Journal of Environmental Quality 34:907–917.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Tabacchi, E., D. L. Correll, R. Hauer, G. Pinay, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, and R. C. Wissmar. 1998. Development, maintenance and role of riparian vegetation in the river landscape. Freshwater Biology 40:497–516.

Thompson, L. C., L. Forero, Y. Sado, and K. W. Tate. 2006. Impact of environmental factors on fish distribution assessed in rangeland streams. California Agriculture 60:200–206.

Thurberg, F. P., and E. Gould. 2005. Pollutant effects upon cod, haddock, pollock, and flounder of the inshore fisheries of Massachusetts and Cape Cod Bays. Pages 43–66 *in* R. J. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The decline of fisheries resources in New England: Evaluating the impact of overfishing, contamination, and habitat degradation. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Trimble, S. W., and A. C. Mendel. 1995. The cow as a geomorphic agent—a critical review. Geomorphology 13:233–253.

USEPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency). 2003. National management measures to control nonpoint source pollution from agriculture. EPA-841-B-03-004. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

USEPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency). 2013. National rivers and streams assessment 2008–2009: A collaborative survey. EPA-841-D-13-001. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

USGS (United States Geological Survey). 1999. National summary on wetland resources. Water-Supply Paper 2425. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Vondracek, B., J., K. H. Zimmerman, and J. V. Westra. 2003. Setting an effective TMDL: Sediment loading and effects of suspended sediment on fish. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 39:1005–1015.

Vondracek, B., K. L. Blann, C. B. Cox, J. F. Nerbonne, K. G. Mumford, B. A. Nerbonne, L. A. Sovell, and J. K. H. Zimmerman. 2005. Land use, spatial scale, and stream systems: Lessons from an agricultural region. Environmental Management 36:775–791.

Waldichuk, M. 1993. Fish habitat and the impact of human activity with particular reference to Pacific salmon. Pages 295–337 *in* L. S. Parsons and W. H. Lear, editors. Perspectives on Canadian marine fisheries management. Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 226.

Weston, D. P., R. W. Holmes, J. You, and M. J. Lydy. 2005. Aquatic toxicity due to residential use of pyrethroid insecticides. Environmental Science and Technology 39:9778–9784.

Wissmar, R. C., W. N. Beer, and R. K. Timm. 2004. Spatially explicit estimates of erosion-risk indices and variable riparian buffer widths in watersheds. Aquatic Sciences 66:446–455.

Witman, J. D. 1996. Dynamics of Gulf of Maine benthic communities. Pages 51–69 *in* D. Dow and E. Braasch, editors. The health of the Gulf of Maine ecosystem: Cumulative impacts of multiple stressors. Darmouth College Regional Association for Research on the Gulf of Maine (RARGOM), Hanover, New Hampshire.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21(2):203–217.

Wooster, D. E., and S. J. DeBano. 2006. Effect of woody riparian patches in croplands on stream macroinvertebrates. Archiv für Hydrobiologie 165:241–268.

Wu, L. 2004. Review of 15 years of research on ecotoxicology and remediation of land contaminated by agricultural drainage sediment rich in selenium. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety 57:257–269.

Yates, A. G., R. C. Bailey, and J. A. Schwindt. 2006. No-till improves stream ecosystem quality. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 61:14–19.

Yates, A. G., R. C. Bailey, and J. A. Schwindt. 2007. Effectiveness of best management practices in improving stream ecosystem quality. Hydrobiologia 583:331–344.

Yuan, Y., R. L. Bingner, and M. A. Locke. 2009. A review of effectiveness of vegetative buffers on sediment trapping in agricultural areas. Ecohydrology 2:321–336.

Zhu, Z., K. Broersma, and A. Mazumder. 2012. Impacts of land use, fertilizer and manure application on the stream nutrient loadings in the Salmon River watershed, south-central British Columbia, Canada. Journal of Environmental Protection 3:809–822.

Zierholz, C., I. P. Prosser, P. J. Fogarty, and P. Rustomji. 2001. In-stream wetlands and their significance for channel filling and the catchment sediment budget, Jugiong Creek, New South Wales. Geomorphology 38:221–235.

Zimmerman, J. K. H., B. Vondracek, and J. Westra. 2003. Agricultural land use effects on sediment loading and fish assemblages in two Minnesota (USA) watersheds. Environmental Management 32(1):93–105.

11. Shoreline and Bank Stabilization

Potential Adverse Impacts of Shoreline and Bank Stabilization

Where water meets land (banks and shorelines) provides critical EFH that performs a variety of ecological functions. Anthropogenic modification of these habitats can have several negative impacts on EFH, including impairing migration, refugia, and conditions for rearing and spawning. The following factors associated with shoreline and bank stabilization can impact EFH, including: altered hydrology and geomorphology, loss and degradation of habitat (e.g., changes in microclimate), and release of contaminants. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

By design, streambank stabilization projects prevent lateral channel migration, effectively forcing streams into a simplified linear configuration that, without the ability to move laterally, instead erode and deepen vertically (Dunn and Leopold 1978, Randle 2006). The resulting "incised" channel fails to create and maintain aquatic and riparian habitat through lateral migration, and can instead impair groundwater/stream flow connectivity and repress floodplain and riparian habitat function. The resulting simplified stream reach typically produces limited macroinvertebrate prey (Lennox and Rasmussen 2016) and presents poor functional habitat for rearing juvenile salmonids (Lau et al. 2006). Also, because bank stabilization structures are typically designed to withstand high streamflow caused by large storm events, the structures, and by extension the impacts to instream habitat, can be considered everlasting, harming future fish generations in perpetuity. Lastly, streambank stabilization impacts not only extend temporally; altered geomorphic and hydraulic processes can propagate spatially both upstream and downstream of bank stabilization structures, dependent upon site- and structure-specific characteristics (Florsheim et al. 2008).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Shoreline and bank stabilization can alter hydrology and geomorphology in nearshore EFH (for more comprehensive reviews, see Williams and Thom 2001, Nordstrom 2014). Protection of eroding coastal cliffs can suppress the supply of sand to beaches (Stamski 2005). Reduced erosion impairs landward migration of shorelines, leading to confinement of beaches (Dugan et al. 2011, Noujas et al. 2014) and changes in bottom form and substrate that can reduce habitat suitability for aquatic plants, invertebrates, and fish (Williams and Thom 2001). Jetties and other protective or stabilizing structures redirect wave energy, leading to coarsening of substrates, reduced sediment storage, transport and deposition of organic debris, and altered temperature, salinity, and water surface elevation in nearshore EFH (Williams and Thom 2001, Rice 2006, Dugan et al. 2011, Heerhartz et al. 2014).

Armoring structures (e.g., dikes, seawalls, bulkheads) are constructed in the nearshore to control flooding and erosion (Scavia et al. 2002, Hanak and Moreno 2012); however, in many cases, they actually increase erosion (Stamski 2005). Shoreline armoring can also reduce habitat complexity and abundance and alter hydrology, influencing littoral drift and larval and sediment transport (Williams and Thom 2001, Johnson et al. 2009, Bulleri and Chapman 2010).

Structures can have compounding impacts on hydrologic processes in EFH. Dikes, levees, ditches, and other water-control structures can eliminate the movement of materials into and out of marshes, preventing water, sediment, organic matter, and nutrient exchange (Williams and Thom 2001, Heerhartz et al. 2014, Nordstrom 2014). Blockage of freshwater exchange can result in a lowered water table, increasing saltwater intrusion into marshes and creating migration barriers for some aquatic species. Hydrogen sulfide, which is toxic to some organisms, may be produced in deeper channels where anoxic conditions prevail, and acidic conditions, often associated with anoxia, could result in release of bioavailable heavy metals bound to sediments.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Shoreline protection and bank stabilization can lead to the loss and alteration of nearshore EFH. Habitat heterogeneity or complexity and other environmental conditions, such as water quality and temperature, are important factors influencing species composition and ecosystem productivity (accrual of biomass) of nearshore EFH (Tonnes 2008, Scapini 2014); shoreline structures can impede processes that maintain these important attributes (Rice 2006, Nordstrom 2014). Artificial structures inconsistent with the character of natural EFH can reduce both production of important refuge such as eelgrass and other submerged aquatic vegetation (Shafer 1999, Ely and Viani 2008) and accumulation of organic matter (Tonnes 2008, Heerhartz et al. 2014). Loss of such structure can impact colonization, abundance, and density of intertidal organisms (Bulleri and Chapman 2010, Heerhartz et al. 2016) and organic and nutrient dynamics, with likely consequences for higher trophic levels. Armoring of the shoreline can reduce shallow-water and intertidal habitat, lead to coarsening of substrates, and reduce organic debris, altering macroinvertebrate assemblages and reducing important prey sources for fish (Sobocinski et al. 2010). In Puget Sound, Washington, epibenthic invertebrate densities were over ten times greater on unarmored shorelines, and species richness was twice that of armored locations (Morley et al. 2012). Changes in habitat characteristics of shorelines can reduce habitat suitability for a variety of organisms, including small pelagic fish (e.g., herring, surf smelt, sand lance; Quinn et al. 2012), English sole (Toft et al. 2007), and juvenile salmon in freshwater (Jorgensen et al. 2013). In addition, anthropogenic shoreline modification can impact microclimate (e.g., temperature, moisture, light) that can affect aquatic species. An artificially modified beach (armoring) had significantly higher daily mean light intensity and air and substrate temperature, and lower humidity, relative to a nearby natural beach—potentially contributing to a 50% reduction in viable surf smelt embryos on the armored beach (Rice 2006).

Habitat alterations associated with shoreline protection and bank stabilization structures can alter community assemblages, abundances, and trophic structure (Froeschke et al. 2005, Wen et al. 2010, Gidley et al. 2012, Munsch et al. 2014). Breakwaters and jetties can bury and remove resident biota and alter cover, prey sources, and presence of predators, thereby impacting EFH (Williams and Thom 2001). Although there were no changes in abundance or richness relative to natural reefs, trophic generalists replaced reef-obligate fish following construction of concrete breakwaters (Wen et al. 2010), and the proportion of younger fish increased at artificial structures over natural reefs in nearshore habitats of the North Sea (Wehkamp and Fischer 2013). While there is some evidence that artificial structures support fish assemblages comparable to those of natural reefs (Fowler and Booth 2013), more research is needed to investigate how aquatic organisms respond to modification of coastal shorelines (Wehkamp and Fischer 2013).

Release of contaminants

The use of chemicals (creosote, chromated copper arsenate, and copper zinc arsenate) in wood products used for shoreline and bank stabilization can increase the amount of chemicals and contaminants in coastal EFH (Ownby et al. 2002). Chemicals are used to protect the wood from fungus, insects, and marine boring animals, but are released over time via leaching following contact with water (rain or snow) or when physical activities on the structure cause wood fibers to dislodge. Chemicals released from these structures can bioaccumulate in the food web (USEPA 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007, Macneale et al. 2010) and impair physiology, behavior, growth, survival, and reproduction of invertebrates and fish (Dethloff et al. 2001, Meador et al. 2010, Feist et al. 2011, Scholz et al. 2011).

Potential Conservation Measures for Shoreline and Bank Stabilization

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency on a site-specific basis to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of shoreline and bank stabilization on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The options represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of shoreline and bank stabilization on EFH.

General guidelines

- Use vegetation methods or “soft” approaches (beach nourishment, vegetative plantings, placement of large woody debris) instead of “hard” modifications. Hard modification should be a last resort after ruling out the efficacy of tree revetments, stream flow deflectors, and vegetative riprap, among other soft approaches. Soft, “natural,” “ecosystem-based,” or “living shoreline” coastal protection has potential to be more ecologically sound than coastal armoring (Piazza et al. 2005, Shepard et al. 2011, Hanak and Moreno 2012). Living shorelines provide the service of hard structures while also promoting ecological restoration (Swann 2008, Gedan et al. 2011). Artificial reefs are naturally forming ecological structures used as submerged breakwaters to stabilize and minimize adverse impacts to the shoreline (Piazza et al. 2005).
- Predetermine the cumulative effects of existing and proposed shoreline and bank modification projects on EFH. Assessments must include prey species (Heerhartz et al. 2016).
- Use manmade structures in combination with ecosystem-based methods (e.g., oyster domes) to promote both shoreline protection and ecological benefits (Gedan et al. 2011).
- Use seasonal restrictions on construction or maintenance to avoid impacts during critical life-history stages of fish (e.g., spawning, egg and larval development periods). Seasonal work windows

are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Use tidal windows. Do work during low tide.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Do not install new water-control structures in tidal marshes and freshwater streams. If the installation of new structures in this EFH cannot be avoided, ensure that they are designed to allow optimal fish passage and natural water circulation.
- Develop design criteria based on site-specific geomorphology, hydrology, and sediment dynamics appropriate for the stream channel for any stabilization, protection, and restoration projects.
- Ensure that the hydrodynamics and sedimentation patterns are properly modeled and that the design avoids erosion to adjacent properties, especially when "hard" shoreline stabilization is deemed necessary.
- Monitor water-control structures for potential alteration of water temperature, dissolved oxygen concentration, and other water-quality variables.
- If all other alternatives have been exhausted and armoring a riverbed must occur, construct a low-flow channel to facilitate fish passage and help maintain water temperature in reaches where armoring occurs.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Mitigate for any losses in stream EFH by installing habitat-forming structures such as anchored rootwads, deflector logs, boulders, or rock weirs, and by replanting native vegetation.
- Use an adaptive management plan with ecological indicators to oversee monitoring and ensure mitigation objectives are met. Take corrective action as needed.
- Preserve and enhance EFH by providing new gravel for spawning areas (beach nourishment), removing anthropogenic barriers to fish passage, and using weirs, grade-control structures, and low-flow channels to provide suitable fish habitat.
- Revegetate sites to resemble the natural ecosystem community and maintain an appropriate riparian buffer zone.
- Do not dike or drain tidal marshlands, estuaries, or any other EFH waterbodies.
- Do not cause losses in the area of coastal wetlands, or of riparian vegetation and habitat.

Release of contaminants

- Do not use protection or stabilization materials treated with chemicals.

References

Bulleri, F., and M. G. Chapman. 2010. The introduction of coastal infrastructure as a driver of change in marine environments. Applied Ecology 47:26–35.

Dethloff, G. M., H. C. Bailey, and K. J. Maier. 2001. Effects of dissolved copper on select hematological, biochemical, and immunological parameters of wild rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40:371–380.

Dugan, J. E., L. Airoldi, M. G. Chapman, S. J. Walker, and T. Schlacher. 2011. 8.02 - Estuarine and coastal structures: Environmental Effects, A Focus on Shore and Nearshore Structures. Pages 17–41 *in* M. J. Kennish and M. Elliott, Treatise on Estuarine and Coastal Science, volume 8: Human-Induced Problems (Uses and Abuses). DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-374711-2.00802-0

Dunn, T., and L. B. Leopold. 1978. Water in environmental planning. Freeman Company, New York, New York.

Ely, E., and L. O. Viani. 2008. Anthropogenic Impacts on San Francisco Bay and its Subtidal Habitat. Appendix 1–3 to Subtidal Habitat Goals Report. Available: www.sfbaysubtidal.org/PDFS/Ap1-3%20Anthropogenic%20Alterations.pdf (September 2022).

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, P. Arnold, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholtz. 2011. Landscape ecotoxicology of coho salmon spawner mortality in urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e23424.

Florsheim, J. L., J. F. Mount, and A. Chin. 2008. Bank erosion as a desirable attribute of rivers. BioScience 58:519–529.

Fowler, A. M., and D. J. Booth. 2013. Seasonal dynamics of fish assemblages on breakwaters and natural rocky reefs in a temperate estuary: Consistent assemblage differences driven by sub-adults. PLOS ONE 8(9):e75790.

Froeschke, J. T., L. G. Allen, and D. J. Pondella II. 2005. The reef fish assemblage of the outer Los Angeles federal breakwater, 2002–2003. Southern California Academy of Sciences 104:63–74.

Gedan, K. B., M. L. Kirwan, E. Wolanski, E. B. Barbier, and B. R. Silliman. 2011. The present and the future of coastal wetland vegetation in protecting shorelines: Answering challenges to the paradigm. Climate Change 106:7–29.

Gidley, C. A., D. L. Scarnecchia, and J. A. Hansen. 2012. Fish community structure associated with stabilized and unstabilized shoreline habitats, Coeur d'Alene River, Idaho, USA. River Research and Applications 28:554–566.

Hanak, E., and G. Moreno. 2012. California coastal management with a changing climate. Climatic Change 111:45–73.

Heerhartz, S. M., J. D. Toft, J. R. Cordell, M. N. Dethier, and A. S. Ogston. 2016. Shoreline armoring in an estuary constrains wrack-associated invertebrate communities. Estuaries and Coasts 39:171–188.

Johnson M. R., C. Boelke, L. A. Chiarella, P. D. Colosi, K. Greene, K. Lellis-Dibble, H. Ludemann, M. Ludwig, S. McDermott, J. Ortiz, D. Rusanowsky, M. Scott, and J. Smith. 2008. Impacts to marine fisheries habitat from nonfishing activities in the northeastern United States. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-209.

Jorgensen, J. C., M. M. McClure, M. B. Sheer, and N. L. Munn. 2013. Combined effects of climate change and bank stabilization on shallow water habitats of Chinook salmon. Conservation Biology 27:1201–1211.

Lau, J. K., T. E. Lauer, and M. L. Weinman. 2006. Impacts of channelization on stream habitats and associated fish assemblages in east central Indiana. The American Midland Naturalist 156:319–330.

Lennox, P. A., and J. B. Rasmussen. 2016. Long-term effects of channelization on a cold-water stream community. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 73(10):1530–1537.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Morley, S. A., J. D. Toft, and K. M. Hanson. 2012. Ecological effects of shoreline armoring on intertidal habitats of a Puget Sound urban estuary. Estuaries and Coasts 35:774–784.

Munsch, S. H., J. R. Cordell, J. D. Toft, and E. E. Morgan. 2014. Effects of seawalls and piers on fish assemblages and juvenile salmon feeding behavior. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 34:814–827.

Nordstrom, K. F. 2014. Living with shore protection structures: A review. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 150:11–23.

Noujas, V., K. V. Thomas, L. S. Nair, T. S. S. Hameed, K. O. Badarees, and N. R. Ajeesh. 2014. Management of shoreline morphological changes consequent to breakwater construction. Indian Journal of Geo-Marine Sciences 43:54–61.

Ownby, D. R., M. C. Newman, M. Mulvey, W. K. Vogelbein, M. A. Unger, and L. F. Arzayus. 2002. Fish (*Fundulus heteroclitus*) populations with different exposure histories differ in tolerance of creosote-contaminated sediments. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 21:1897–1902.

Piazza, B. P., P. D. Banks, and M. K. La Peyre. 2005. The potential for created oyster shell reefs as a sustainable shoreline protection strategy in Louisiana. Restoration Ecology 13:499–506.

Quinn, T., K. Krueger, K. Pierce, D. Penttila, K. Perry, T. Hicks, and D. Lowry. 2012. Patterns of surf smelt, *Hypomesus pretiosus*, intertidal spawning habitat use in Puget Sound, Washington State. Estuaries and Coasts 35:1213–1228.

Randle, T. J. 2006. Channel migration model for meandering rivers. Proceedings of the Eighth Federal Interagency Sedimentation Conference (8thFISC), April 2–6, 2006, Reno, NV, USA. Available: acwi.gov/sos/pubs/8thFISC/Session%204B-2_Randle.pdf (January 2022).

Rice, C. A. 2006. Effects of shoreline modification in northern Puget Sound: Beach microclimate and embryo survival in summer spawning surf smelt (*Hypomesus pretiosus*). Estuaries and Coasts 29:63–71.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2998–3004.

Scapini, F. 2014. Behaviour of mobile macrofauna is a key factor in beach ecology as response to rapid environmental changes. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 150:36–44.

Scavia, D. J., C. Field, D. F. Boesch, R. W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D. R. Cayam, M. Fogarty, M. A. Harwell, R. W. Howarth, C. Mason, D. J. Reed, T. C. Boyer, A. H. Sallanger, and J. G. Titus. 2002. Climate change impacts on US coastal and marine ecosystems. Estuaries and Coasts 25:149–164.

Scholz, N. L., M. S. Myers, S. G. McCarthy, J. S. Labenia, J. K. McIntyre, G. M. Ylitalo, L. D. Rhodes, C. A. Laetz, C. M. Stehr, B. L. French, B. McMillan, D. Wilson, L. Reed, K. D. Lynch, S. Damm, J. W. Davis, and T. K. Collier. 2011. Recurrent die-offs of adult coho salmon returning to spawn in Puget Sound lowland urban streams. PLOS ONE 6(12):e28013.

Shafer, D. J. 1999. The effects of dock shading on the seagrass *Holodule wrightii* in Perdido Bay, Alabama. Estuaries 22:936–943.

Shepard, C. C., C. M. Crain, and M. W. Beck. 2011. The protective role of coastal marshes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. PLOS ONE 6:e27374.

Sobocinski, K. L., J. R. Cordell, and C. A. Simenstad. 2010. Effects of shoreline modifications on supratidal macroinvertebrate fauna on Puget Sound, Washington beaches. Estuaries and Coasts 33:699–711.

Stamski, R. 2005. The impacts of coastal protection structures in California's Monterey National Marine Sanctuary. Marine Sanctuaries Conservation Series MSD-05-3. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Marine Sanctuaries Division, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Swann, L. 2008. The use of living shorelines to mitigate the effects of storm events on Dauphin Island, Alabama, USA. American Fisheries Society 64:2–11.

Toft, J. D., J. R. Cordell, C. A. Simenstad, and L. A. Stamatiou. 2007. Fish distribution, abundance, and behavior along city shoreline types in Puget Sound. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:465–480.

Tonnes, D. M. 2008. Ecological functions of marine riparian areas and driftwood along North Puget Sound shorelines. Master's Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2005. National management measures to control nonpoint source pollution from urban areas. EPA-841-B-05-004. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

Wehkamp, S., and P. Fischer. 2013. Impact of coastal defense structures (tetrapods) on a demersal hard-bottom fish community in the southern North Sea. Marine Environmental Research 83:82–92.

Wen, C. K. C., M. S. Pratchett, K. T. Shao, K. P. Kan, and B. K. K. Chan. 2010. Effects of habitat modification on coastal fish assemblages. Journal of Fish Biology 77:1674–1687.

Williams, G. D., and R. M. Thom. 2001. Marine and estuarine shoreline modification issues. White paper submitted to Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

12. Marine and Freshwater Transportation

Demand for marine and freshwater transport and associated facilities and infrastructure has increased in recent decades (UNCTAD 2013), and many factors associated with these activities impact aquatic organisms and EFH. Construction and operation of ports and marinas can fragment, contaminate, and increase noise, sedimentation, and turbidity in EFH (Miller et al. 1983, Thom et al. 1997, Penttila 2000). Vessel activities—such as wake generation, anchor and propeller scour, vessel groundings, invasive species, and contamination (Wilbur and Pentony 1999, Uhrin and Holmquist 2003, Eriksson et al. 2004)—impact benthic, shoreline, and pelagic organisms that inhabit EFH (Yousef 1974, Karaki and vanHoften 1975, Barr 1993). Navigational dredging (see Chapter 14) creates turbidity, altering light penetration (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996) and water circulation (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005), and disrupts benthic communities (Watling et al. 2001, Bolam and Rees 2003).

This chapter is divided into three sections that outline some of the adverse impacts of marine and freshwater transportation on EFH, including factors associated with Ports and Marinas, Vessel Operation and Maintenance, and Navigational Dredging and Disposal. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these possible effects on EFH are provided after each section.

Ports and Marinas

Potential adverse impacts of ports and marinas

Construction, expansion, operation and maintenance of ports and marinas can have several negative impacts on EFH, described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, impacts to organisms, and noise effects. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Port and marina facilities are typically located in areas containing highly productive intertidal and subtidal EFH, including saltmarsh wetlands and marshes that contain submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV). Piers, docks, floating breakwaters, barges, rafts, booms, and mooring buoys shade these habitats and fragment important migratory corridors and rearing and spawning habitat (Burdick and Short 1999, Shafer et al. 2008). Floats, rafts, and barges can ground at low tides, scouring substrate, and piles, anchors, and mooring buoys can alter substrate adjacent to structures (Penttila and Doty 1990, Page et al. 2006). Shoreline armoring reduces heterogeneity of EFH, altering the composition and distribution of aquatic organisms (Williams and Thom 2001, Toft et al. 2007, Morley et al. 2012, Jorgensen et al. 2013).

Vessels that moor in ports and marinas can smother or crush shellfish, scour vegetation, and disturb substrates, which can fragment critical habitats (Betcher and Williams 1996). Anchors connected to surface buoys often scour the bottom and form depressions in the substrate (Walker et al. 1989).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Transportation-related structures (e.g., pilings, breakwaters, armored shorelines) alter current patterns and water movement, causing scour (Miller et al. 1983), altering sediment deposition (Iannuzzi et al. 1996), and impacting invertebrate and fish communities (Clynick 2006). Pilings alter water velocities, causing increased scour around the base of piles, and floating piers and docks alter wave energy, current patterns, and longshore sediment transport, especially in areas that experience strong current velocities (Kelty and Bliven 2003). Alteration of hydrologic functionality can inhibit natural processes that create EFH and replenish substrate for plant propagation, fish and shellfish settlement and rearing, and forage fish spawning (Thom et al. 1998, Penttila 2000).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Port or marina construction can cause increased sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity in marine EFH, impacting aquatic flora and fauna (Erftemeijer and Lewis 2006, Fettweis et al 2011, Erftemeijer et al. 2013). Jetties and groins alter substrate composition and bathymetry (Johannessen 2010), and may reduce or alter sediment transport. This can lead to increased shoreline erosion, alteration of currents, and interference with distribution of larval fish and invertebrates (Williams and Thom 2001). Sediments near ports and marinas are often contaminated, and resuspension of these sediments renders them bioavailable to organisms inhabiting EFH (Roberts 2012).

Release of contaminants

Chemicals used during port and marina maintenance activities can contaminate EFH, thereby affecting plants, invertebrates, and fish (Weis et al. 1991, Pentony 1999, Wilbur and Amaral et al. 2005, Schiff et al. 2007). Arsenic (paint and preservative), zinc (corrosion anodes), mercury (float switches), lead (batteries), nickel, and cadmium (brake linings) contaminate EFH in the vicinity of ports and marinas (USEPA 2001). Organic compounds such as sewage, trash, fish waste, pet waste, fertilizers, and food wastes degrade water quality and alter dissolved oxygen concentrations (USEPA 2001). Changes in water quality can impact important SAV, such as seagrass (Costa et al. 1992, Burdick and Short 1999). Creosote-treated wood (NOAA 2009) causes phototoxicity, disturbs hormone regulation (van Brummelen et al. 1998), and is immunotoxic (Möller et al. 2014) to aquatic organisms. Wood treated with alternative chemicals, such as ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate and chromated copper arsenate, also leaches contaminants into EFH, but residence time is shorter than creosote (Poston 2001). Port and marina structures impede water circulation, sometimes concentrating contaminants and nutrients (Moreno et al. 2009).

EFH in ports and marinas is often dredged and filled, resuspending contaminated sediments (Edinger and Martin 2010). The ecological effects of these sediment-associated contaminants vary by life stage and species (Besser et al. 2007, Vardy et al. 2014). Contaminants are not always lethal, but can have sublethal effects on fish physiology and behavior that could lead to lower rates of growth and reproduction and increase susceptibility to predation (Poston 2001, Johnson et al. 2007, Spearow et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014).

Impacts to organisms

Structures associated with ports and marinas shade the water surface, reducing the amount of sunlight available to adjacent pelagic and benthic habitats and directly affecting growth, distribution, and behavior of aquatic organisms (Iannuzzi et al. 1996, Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996, Able et al. 1998, Burdick and Short 1999, Shafer 1999, Haas et al. 2002, Zimmerman 2006, Tabor et al. 2011, Ono and Simenstad 2014). These structures can also serve as habitat for non-native species, which can spill over to invade adjacent benthic habitats (e.g., Simkanin et al. 2012).

Noise effects

Noise pollution in ports and marinas results from high amounts of vessel activity and construction (Hildebrand 2004, Jasny et al. 2005). The magnitude of vessel noise correlates with size of vessel, so ports that accommodate large shipping containers may experience increased impacts from noise pollution (Jasny et al. 2005). Pile driving is a major source of noise pollution in ports and marinas, but several factors, including the size and material of the piling, the firmness of the substrate, and the type of pile-driving hammer used, affect the type and intensity of noise (Feist et al. 1996).

Impacts to fish vary by species and life stage and depend on frequency and magnitude of noises (Hildebrand 2004, Popper and Hastings 2009, Halvorsen et al. 2011, Halvorsen et al. 2012), which differ among and within activities (Feist et al. 1996) and among different environments (Rogers and Cox 1988). Smaller fish species can be more sensitive to underwater noise than larger ones (Yelverton et al. 1975), but all life stages can be negatively impacted (Popper 1993). Noise can also impact marine invertebrates physically (André et al. 2011) and behaviorally (Wale et al. 2013).

Potential conservation measures for ports and marinas

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of ports and marinas on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of ports and marinas on EFH.

General guidelines

- Identify the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats in the review process for port and marina construction and operations.
- Design and implement mitigation for losses in EFH caused by new development or expansion of ports and marinas.
- Incentivize state and local authorities to assist port authorities and marinas in developing management plans that avoid and minimize impacts to EFH. Incorporate operational controls that practice BMPs to reduce impacts to EFH. Design job descriptions and work instructions to protect EFH within and around ports and marinas.
- Incentivize marina operator participation in the NOAA/EPA Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program and the Clean Marina initiative.
- Identify environmental impacts and provide marina operators with the means to clearly and efficiently identify potential environmental impacts. Assist operators with implementing environmental practices, evaluating BMPs and technologies such as evaluation and monitoring technologies, reducing impacts of pump out facilities, improving stormwater management, and developing and implementing environmental management guidelines.

- Incentivize alternative ports, such as satellite ports and offshore terminals, to reduce impacts of inshore ports.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Conduct site suitability analyses for new or proposed expansion of port and marina facilities. Analyses should predict alterations to current and circulation patterns, water quality, bathymetric and topographic features, fish utilization, species distributions, and substrates.
- Minimize the footprint of new facilities (see PFMC 2019).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Do not locate new port and marina facilities in areas that have reduced tidal exchange or shallow-water habitats (e.g., enclosed bays, salt ponds, tidal creeks).
- Retain and preserve marine riparian buffers to maintain intertidal microclimate, flood and stormwater storage capacity, and nutrient cycling.
- Design proposed ports and marinas to facilitate acceptable levels of water circulation and maintain migratory corridors for organisms.
- Do not construct or permit structures that impede tidal exchange and that may interfere with the movement of marine organisms (e.g., solid breakwaters).
- Require low-wake vessel technology and appropriate vessel routes in facility design and permitting. Vessel speeds must minimize wake damage to shorelines, and no-wake zones should be considered in highly sensitive areas, such as fish spawning habitat and SAV beds.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Use hydrodynamics models to estimate sediment transport and turbidity prior to construction in ports and marinas to enable long-term monitoring of the effects of such developments.
- Site new or expanded port and marina facilities in deep-water areas to avoid the need for dredging. Avoid areas that are subject to rapid shoaling or erosion, as they will require frequent maintenance dredging, which impacts EFH.
- Ensure that floating structures, including barges, mooring buoys, and docks, are located in adequate water depths to avoid propeller scour and grounding of vessels and floating structures. When floating docks cannot be located in adequate depth to avoid contact on the bottom at low tides, install float stops (structural supports to prevent the float from resting on the bottom). Float stops should be designed to provide a minimum of 2 feet of clearance between the float and substrate, to prevent hydraulic disturbances to the bottom. Greater clearances may be necessary in higher-energy environments that experience strong wave action.
- Use anchoring techniques and mooring designs that avoid scouring from anchor chains (e.g., helical anchors, subsurface float moorings). Avoid areas prone to high current and wind velocity, which can cause losses to EFH.
- Use vibratory hammers when removing old piles to reduce suspended sediments, silt, and contaminants into the water column; these may be preferable over direct pull or the use of a clamshell dredge.

Release of contaminants

- Develop site-specific solutions to nonpoint-source pollution by considering the frequency of marina operations and potential pollution sources. Management practices should be tailored to the specific issues of each marina.

- Do not use wood treated with preservatives, such as ACZA and CCA. If CCA-treated wood must be used, the wood can be presoaked for several weeks, or the wood can be coated with a plastic sheath to reduce or eliminate leaching.
- Use concrete and steel pilings. However, concrete pilings and docks generally increase the overall size of the overwater structure and may not be preferable in areas containing SAV.
- Ensure that marina and port facility operations have contaminant spill response plans and equipment in place and are clearly marked and easily accessed. Oil-spill response equipment may include oil booms, absorbent pads, and oil dispersant chemicals.
- Use dispersants that remove oils from the environment, rather than those that simply move them from the surface to the ocean bottom.
- Install automatic shut-off nozzles at fuel dispensing sites and require the use of fuel/air separators on air vents or tank stems to reduce the amount of fuel or oil spilled at stations.
- Incentivize the use of oil-absorbing materials in the bilge areas of all boats with inboard engines.
- Place containment berms around machinery.
- Incentivize and promote the use of pump-out facilities and restrooms at marinas and ports to reduce the release of sewage into surface waters. Ensure that these facilities are maintained and operational, and provide these services at convenient times, locations, and reasonable cost.
- Designate protected areas for maintenance activities (sanding, painting, engine repairs, abrasive blasting).
- Ensure that facilities provide for appropriate storage, disposal, transfer, containment, and disposal facilities for harmful liquid material, such as solvents, antifreeze, and paints, and a containment filtering and treatment system for vessel wash-down wastewater.
- Require proper disposal of solid debris and polluting materials.
- Provide lidded garbage containers to reduce litter in the marine environment.
- Prohibit disposal of fish waste or other nutrient-laden material in marina or port basins by providing containers.
- Develop biofiltration systems for runoff in parking lots and from other impervious surfaces.
- Minimize the amount of impervious surfaces surrounding the port or marina facility, and maintain a buffer zone between the coastal zone and upland facilities.
- Implement runoff-control strategies to decrease the amount of contaminants entering marine waters from upland sources. Use alternative surface materials such as crushed gravel, decrease the slope of surfaces toward the water's edge, and install filtering systems or settling ponds to accomplish this.

Impacts to organisms

- Tall narrow piers and docks produce more diffuse shadows, which have been shown to reduce shading impacts to SAV, such as seagrasses (Burdick and Short 1999, Shafer 1999).
- Shading caused by structures can be ameliorated through the use of adequate spacing of the pilings, and light-reflecting materials (Thom and Shreffler 1996).
- Do not develop ports and marinas in or near areas that support high abundances and diversities of organisms (e.g., SAV beds, intertidal mudflats, emergent wetlands, fish spawning areas).

- Conduct pre- and post-project biological surveys over multiple growing seasons to assess impacts on submerged and emergent aquatic vegetation communities.
- Site floating docks, which limit light transmittance more than elevated structures, only in non-vegetated, deeper, protected areas.
- Orient night lighting to avoid illumination of the surrounding waters.
- Implement seasonal restrictions to avoid construction-related impacts on organisms during critical life-history stages.

Noise effects

(For additional details on noise effects see PFMC 2019.)

- Use technologies designed to reduce the adverse effects of underwater sound pressure waves (air bubble curtains and metal or fabric pile sleeves).
- Conduct pile driving only during low tides in intertidal and shallow subtidal areas.
- Use vibratory hammers while pile driving to the greatest depth possible, and only use impact hammers for proofing.

Vessel Operation and Maintenance

Potential adverse impacts of vessel operation and maintenance

The following factors associated with vessel operation and maintenance can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, invasive organisms, noise effects, release of debris, and abandoned and derelict vessels. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Vessel operation and maintenance can have negative impacts on EFH (Klein 1997, Uhrin and Holmquist 2003). The severity of these effects depends on type and size of vessel and associated activity, which dictates wave energy and surge produced by the vessel, but also depends on shoreline slope, substrate, shoreline vegetation, and other characteristics of aquatic habitat (e.g., water depth, bottom topography; Karaki and van Hoften 1975, Barr 1993). Regardless of vessel size, altered wake and wave action can hamper growth, production, and distribution of SAV important to aquatic organisms (Doyle 2001), potentially impacting biodiversity (Wilcox and Murphy 1985) and habitat suitability for fish and shellfish (Eriksson et al. 2004).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Vessel activity can increase suspension of sediment and silt, leading to increased turbidity in EFH; however, effects depend on the magnitude and frequency of wave energy and surge produced by the vessel, sediment particle size, and water depth (Karaki and van Hoften 1975, Barr 1993). Reduced water clarity and light penetration can fragment important vegetation beds (i.e., eelgrass), and resettlement of sediment and silt can smother aquatic vegetation and benthic organisms (Barr 1993, Klein 1997, Eriksson et al. 2004).

The resuspension of sediments resulting from vehicle activity can affect habitat suitability, spatial distribution, and abundance of fish and shellfish in EFH (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001a, Uhrin and Holmquist 2003, Eriksson et al. 2004). Embryo and larval stages of marine and estuarine fish are generally highly sensitive to increased levels of suspended sediment (Wilber and Clarke 2001). Juvenile fish may be susceptible to gill injury when suspended sediment levels are high, and sedimentation and turbidity impacts may be more pronounced in areas that contain shallow-water habitat with fine substrates (Klein 1997).

Release of contaminants

Industrial shipping and recreational boating can introduce toxic metals—such as arsenic, cadmium, copper, lead, and mercury—into EFH, impacting aquatic organisms (Woodward et al. 1994, Wilbur and Pentony 1999, Spearow et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014). Metals enter the water through various vessel maintenance activities such as washing, scraping, and the application of antifouling agents (Milliken and Lee 1990, Hofer 1998, Amaral et al. 2005). Herbicides are also used in some antifouling paints, and can impact plant and animal community structure (Readman et al. 1993).

Fuel and oil spills from vessels can harm aquatic organisms inhabiting EFH (Neff 1985). Properly maintained vessels may not leak large amounts of fuel and oil, but small, repeated releases of oil are common (contributing nearly 85% of the total input of oil into aquatic habitats; ASMFC 2004). Effects of low-level chronic exposure by fish to fuels and oil include increased embryo mortality, reduced growth, and altered migratory patterns (Heintz et al. 2000, Wertheimer et al. 2000). Exhaust from two-cycle engines contains hydrocarbon compounds (Moore and Stolpe 1995) that may remain suspended in the water column, concentrate on the surface, or settle to the bottom (Milliken and Lee 1990).

Gray water and sewage discharge from boats can impact water quality in EFH by increasing nutrient loading, bacteria, and toxic substances, including emerging contaminants such as synthetic hormones (Thom and Shreffler 1996, Klein 1997). The Clean Water Act of 1972 makes it illegal to discharge untreated wastes into coastal waters, and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act requires recreational boats to be equipped with marine sanitation devices (MSDs); however, it is legal to discharge treated wastes, and illegal discharges of untreated waste may be common (Milliken and Lee 1990, Amaral et al. 2005). Furthermore, impacts from vessel waste discharges may be more pronounced in small, poorly flushed waterways where pollutant concentrations can reach unusually high levels (Klein 1997).

Invasive organisms

Invasive species are often introduced to EFH by industrial and recreational vessels (Omori et al. 1994, Hofer 1998, Wilbur and Pentony 1999, Pertola et al. 2006). Invasive species can impact EFH by reducing habitat suitability for fish (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005), benthic communities (Grosholtz et al. 2009), and aquatic vegetation (Santos et al. 2011), and can impact trophic processes (Sanderson et al. 2009, Carey et al. 2011, Grason and Miner 2012) and genetic composition (Palumbi 2003), and can increase pathogens (Minchinton and Bertness 2003, Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005, Rahel and Olden 2008).

Noise effects

The noise generated by vessel operations concentrates in ports, marinas, and heavily used shipping lanes or routes, and may impact fish spawning, migration, and recruitment behaviors (Stocker 2002, Hildebrand 2004, Codarin et al. 2009).

Exposure to continuous noise may also impair hearing in aquatic organisms (Jasny et al. 1999, Scholik and Yan 2002). Small craft with high-speed engines and propellers (e.g., recreational boats with outboard engines) typically produce higher-frequency noise than do larger vessels that generate substantial low-frequency noise; however, overall sound levels are higher for larger vessels, and increase with vessel speed (Kipple and Gabriele 2004).

Release of debris

The introduction of marine debris from vessels, whether floating on the surface, suspended in the water column, covering the benthos, or along the shoreline, can have numerous negative impacts (e.g., entanglement and ingestion) on organisms that inhabit EFH (Cottingham 1988, Milliken and Lee 1990, Derraik 2002, Cozar et al. 2014, Clarke-Murray et al. 2015).

Abandoned and derelict vessels

Existing federal laws and regulations do not provide clear authority or funding to any single agency for the removal of grounded or abandoned vessels that harm natural resources but are not otherwise obstructing or threatening to obstruct navigation or threatening a pollution discharge (Smith, Helton, et al. 2003). In many cases, vessels are abandoned and are left to continually damage the marine environment because a responsible party cannot be identified or a funding source for removal cannot be secured (Zelo and Helton 2005).

Abandoned or derelict vessels can physically damage or smother benthic EFH, create changes in wave energy and sedimentation patterns, and scatter debris across sensitive habitats (Precht et al. 2001). The potential footprint of a grounded vessel can be larger than the vessel itself as the vessel moves and breaks apart (Zelo and Helton 2005).

Physical impacts of a grounded vessel on EFH can be increased in shallower water because waves and currents cause increased shifting and destruction of the vessel, and the vessel may impede navigation, which would require removal and potential release of unknown materials into EFH. Abandoned or derelict vessels can release oil or other chemicals that impact EFH (Smith, Helton, et al. 2003). Abandoned and neglected floating vessels also add shade, inhibiting seagrass beds (Zelo and Helton 2005), and anchor chains can scour substrates (Sunda 1994, Negri et al. 2002, Smith, Negri, et al. 2003).

Potential conservation measures for vessel operation and maintenance

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of vessel operation and maintenance on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of vessel operation and maintenance on EFH.

General guidelines

- Incentivize marina operator participation in the NOAA/EPA Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program and the Clean Marina initiative.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Conduct site suitability analyses for new or proposed expansions of vessel docking facilities. Analyses should predict alterations to current and circulation patterns, water quality, bathymetric and topographic features, fish utilization, species distributions, and substrates.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Limit vessel speed near shorelines to reduce waves that erode the shore. Designate all sensitive EFH areas (e.g., eelgrass beds) as no-wake zones.

Release of contaminants

- Ensure that commercial ships and port facilities have acceptable contaminant spill response plans/equipment in place.
- Use dispersants that remove oils from the environment rather than dispersants that simply move them from the surface to the ocean bottom.
- Establish no-discharge zones to prevent sewage from entering EFH.
- Use appropriate methods for containment of wastewater, surface water collection, and recycling to avoid the discharge of pollution during the maintenance and operation of vessels.
- Promote education and signage on all vessels to encourage proper disposal of solid debris at sea.
- Encourage the use of innovative cargo securing and stowing designs that may reduce solid debris in the marine environment from the transportation of commercial cargo.

Invasive organisms

- Follow ballast water requirements and regulations for Western Region states:
    - *Washington*: Ballast Water Management, 77.120 RCW.
    - *Oregon*: Oregon Revised Statutes governing ballast water regulations, ORS 783.620-992.
    - *California*: Ballast Water Regulations for Vessels Arriving at California Ports or Places after Departing from Ports or Places within the Pacific Coast Region, Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 4.6, Sections 2280–2284.
- Inspect all vessels for hull fouling invasive species prior to introducing the vessels into new waterbodies.
- Conduct vessel hull cleaning on land, and capture all runoff from such operations to ensure it does not enter waterbodies.
- Encourage natural resource managers to provide outreach materials on the potential impacts resulting from releases of invasive species into the natural environment.
- Develop appropriate early detection and rapid response eradication methods for invasive organisms consistent with federal guidelines as specified by the National Invasive Species Management Plan.
- Provide and display educational materials on the potential impacts resulting from the release of invasive species into the natural environment to increase public awareness and engender broad cooperation among user groups and stakeholders.

Noise effects

- Incentivize ship designs that include technologies capable of reducing noise generated and transmitted to the water column, such as the use of muffling devices already required for land-based machinery that may help reduce the impacts of vessel noise.
- Assess the effects of proposed and existing vessel traffic and associated underwater noise for potential impacts to sensitive areas.
- Exclude vessels or limit high-intensity use and low-frequency sonar in known sensitive marine areas.

Release of debris

- Promote the use of biodegradable materials when possible, especially in areas with tourism.
- Provide resources to the public on the impact of marine debris, and guidance on how to reduce or eliminate the problem.

Abandoned and derelict vessels

- Consider the potential for collateral impacts when planning a salvage operation to avoid fuel spillage.
- Use appropriate equipment and techniques to salvage and remove grounded vessels, and follow all necessary state and federal laws and regulations. Avoid propulsion systems of salvage tugs that can cause propeller wash and scour the bottom. Instead, moor the tugs and use a ground tackle system to provide maneuvering and pull.
- Minimize additional seafloor damage when a derelict vessel has to be dragged across the seafloor to deep water by following the same ingress path. Alternatively, identify the least sensitive, operationally feasible, towpath. Dismantling derelict vessels in place when stranded close to shore may cause less environmental impact than dredging or dragging a vessel across an extensive shallow habitat.
- Implement non-emergency salvage operations while including environmental considerations to minimize potential impacts on natural resources. Environmental considerations include periods when few sensitive species are present, avoidance of critical reproductive periods, and weather patterns that influence the trajectory of potential releases during operations.
- Choose a scuttling site for a derelict vessel in a deep-water location in federal or Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) waters that do not contain significant sensitive resources or geological hazards. Ensure that all proposed disposal of vessels in the open ocean adheres to state and federal guidance and regulations, including Section 102(a) of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (Ocean Dumping Act), and under 40 CFR 229.3 of the U.S. EPA regulations.

Navigational Dredging and Disposal

Potential adverse impacts of navigational dredging and disposal

The following factors associated with navigational dredging and disposal can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, impacts to organisms, and noise effects (see Chapter 14). Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Dredging causes loss and alteration of important marine and freshwater EFH (Newell et al. 1998, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001b, Drabble 2012a). Historically, dredged material was used to fill wetland, salt marshes, and tidal flats for development. Filling wetlands eliminates their ecological functionalities: reducing flooding, filtering nutrients, and providing critical rearing habitat for a variety of aquatic and terrestrial species (Taylor 2012). Thus, dredging and filling wetlands causes severe impacts to EFH that are not easily mitigated (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001b, Taylor 2012).

Dredging can reduce aquatic community biodiversity (Thrush and Dayton 2002) and eliminate important food sources (Bilkovic 2011), impacting the food web for years (Gilkinson et al. 2005, Mearns et al. 2012). Recovery rates in dredged areas vary temporally, spatially, and by organism (Kennish 1997) based on differences in morphology, physiology, and behavior of organisms (Gilkinson et al. 2005), size of substrate (Reish 1961, McCauley et al. 1977, Oliver et al. 1977, Thrush et al. 1995, Currie and Parry 1996, Tuck et al. 1998, Watling et al. 2001, Gilkinson et al. 2005, Fischer et al. 2012), and currents (Oliver et al. 1977).

Dredging can eliminate vegetated habitat features that provide critical rearing and spawning habitat for a variety of fish species (Thayer et al. 1984, Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005). Eelgrass beds are particularly vulnerable to dredging because they are difficult to map, and recolonization could be limited if the bottom sediments become destabilized or composition is altered (Thayer et al. 1984). However, even after bottom sediments stabilize, channel deepening could change nutrient availability, water velocities, and reduce light needed for recolonization of eelgrass and other macrophytes (Barr 1993, Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Dredging has impacts on hydrology and geomorphology in freshwater (Kondolf 1994, Poole et al. 2006, Bellmore et al. 2012) and marine EFH (Meire et al. 2005). Deepening of habitats impacts water circulation, currents, and flow velocity, all of which impact geomorphological processes (Lisle et al. 1993, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001b, Pereyra et al. 2014). Navigational dredging and disposal activities may have correspondingly similar impacts on EFH. Dredging may modify water circulation by changing the direction or velocity of water flow or depth of the water body traditionally used by invertebrates and fish for shelter, forage, or reproductive purposes. Specifically, navigational dredging converts shallow subtidal or intertidal habitats into deeper-water environments through the disturbance and removal of sediments (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005).

Sedimentation, siltation and turbidity

Navigational dredging increases sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, impacting aquatic flora and fauna inhabiting EFH (Wilber and Clarke 2001, Sabol et al. 2005). For fish, increased fine sediment can reduce reproductive success (Suedel et al. 2008), fill interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), damage or clog gill membranes (Lake and Hinch 1999), reduce food sources, and decrease area of suitable fish habitat (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Smith and Wegner 2001). Increased sediment can also alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995), contributing to reduced feeding (Bricelj and Malouf 1984), condition, survival, reproduction (Cake 1983), and development rate of higher trophic levels (Mullholland 1984).

Turbidity, which is partly influenced by suspended sediment loads, reduces light availability, thereby altering visibility and habitat conditions and impacting aquatic food webs via changes in primary and secondary productivity. Many fish are visual predators; therefore, visibility is important for foraging (Able et al. 1998) and avoiding predators (Helfman 1981, Tabor et al. 2011). Increased turbidity can impair how fish perceive predators (Sigler 1988, Birtwell and Korstrom 2002). Conversely, fish feeding rates may increase (Gregory 1993) while predation by piscivores is reduced in moderately turbid water (Gregory and Levings 1998). It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on plants, invertebrates, and fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Light availability influences depth distribution, density, and productivity of SAV, which provides important structural features and food resources in nearshore EFH (Dennison and Alberte 1982, Dennison and Alberte 1985, Dennison and Alberte 1986, Schiel et al. 2006, Zimmerman 2006). Large sediment plumes caused by dredging (Suedel et al. 2008) can reduce light penetration, causing reduced growth and survival of eelgrass (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996, Schiel et al. 2006, Mumford 2007, Moore et al. 2012). Slight reductions in light availability can also result in lower rates of photosynthesis for phytoplankton (Cloern 1987), ultimately resulting in less energy available for benthic invertebrates and fish living in EFH.

Release of contaminants

Sediments act as a contaminant sink and source in EFH. When resuspended, particulate-bound contaminants may be remobilized into the water column where they impact EFH, including invertebrate and fish populations (Kennish 1997, Brown et al. 1998, Kennish 2002, Islam and Tanaka 2004, Sovová et al. 2014). Sediments in estuaries downstream from agricultural or urban/suburban residential areas may also contain herbicides and pesticides (NMFS 1997). The effects of these compounds range from sublethal (e.g., reduced growth or feeding) to lethal depending on type of contaminant, route of exposure, ambient conditions, species, life stage, and body size (Poston 2001, Brinkmann et al. 2013). For example, PAHs have been reported to cause cancer, reproductive anomalies, immune dysfunction, impaired growth and development, and other impairments in fish when present in high concentrations for sufficiently long periods of time (Poston 2001, Johnson et al. 2008, Spearow et al. 2011, Collier et al. 2014).

Current standards are based on toxicity to benthic invertebrates, so while they may protect against impacts to the fish prey base, they are not necessarily protective of fish (e.g., Meador et al. 2002). This is especially true for contaminants such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), which are metabolized to mutagenic and carcinogenic intermediates in fish, but to a much lesser extent in invertebrates (see Varanasi 1989.

Impacts to organisms

Dredging entrainment can have significant effects on fish populations (McGraw and Armstrong 1990, Boysen and Hoover 2009, Drabble 2012a,b). Dredging entrainment is the uptake and trapping of aquatic organisms by the dredge suction (Reine and Clarke 1998). Depending on the operation, every life stage of invertebrate and fish may be at risk of being injured or killed by dredge entrainment (Buell 1992). In many cases, important food sources for important EFH species can be significantly reduced or eliminated (Van der Veer et al. 1985, Newell et al. 1998, Boysen and Hoover 2009). Furthermore, by removing or displacing native species and severely disturbing EFH, dredging may provide opportunities for colonization by invasive species (Vitousek et al. 1997, Minchinton and Bertness 2003, Strecker and Olden 2014).

Entrainment rates for invertebrates vary based on machinery, habitat, season, and size of organism (Armstrong et al. 1982, Larson 1989). Where vulnerable, impacts on invertebrates can be significant and may extend at least 100 m from the dredging site (McCauley et al. 1977).

Noise effects

Dredging equipment and dredging-related activities generate underwater sound pressure waves that may adversely affect EFH. Sources of these underwater sounds originate from vessel propellers, pumps, generators, and from dredge buckets and dragheads coming in contact with the substrate (Dickerson et al. 2001, Clarke et al. 2002). Sound recordings during dredging operations documented increases above background noise levels as far as 1.2 km from the source, and peak sound pressures of 175 decibels (Reine et al. 2014). Injuries associated directly with noise produced by dredging are poorly studied, but effects of similar noises include avoidance of area, increased stress, and temporary shifts in hearing thresholds (Hastings and Popper 2005). Shifts in hearing thresholds may result from exposure to low levels of sound for a relatively long period of time or exposure to high levels of sound for shorter periods (Scholik and Yan 2002, Liu et al. 2013). Threshold shifts can impact a fish's ability to carry out its life functions, such as locating food or mates.

Potential conservation measures for navigational dredging and disposal

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of navigational dredging and disposal on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of navigational dredging and disposal on EFH.

General guidelines

- Do not dredge in or near sensitive EFH such as spawning grounds, eelgrass beds, or habitats that support important prey sources for fish.
- Perform dredging only during periods that have the least impact on fish and food webs. Establish areal extent and timing guidelines in cooperation with local, state, tribal, and federal fish biologists. Make every effort to dredge only to the authorized depth using deeper, single-day events rather than shallower, multiple-day events.
- Use only hydraulic dredges and allow no overflow.
- When using a mechanical dredge, increase cycle time and reduce bucket deployment.
- Conduct pre-dredging site sampling and analyses to predict cumulative effects of existing and proposed dredging operations on EFH and organisms. Include all impacts to EFH as part of the permitting process, mitigate for all adverse effects, and monitor mitigation effectiveness.
- Use alternative dredge material disposal options (e.g., upland disposal), and recycle dredged material for beneficial use opportunities.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Do not place pipelines and accessory equipment used in conjunction with dredging operations close to sensitive EFH and Habitat Areas of Particular Concern (HAPC)—e.g., kelp beds, eelgrass beds, estuarine/salt marshes, etc.

- Do not directly remove or bury habitat features. In cases where features are removed or buried, the operator must mitigate these losses to EFH.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Avoid new dredging projects. Activities that would likely require dredging (such as placement of piers, docks, marinas, etc.) should instead be sited in deeper-water areas or designed to alleviate the need for maintenance dredging. New projects should only be permitted for water-dependent purposes, and only when no feasible alternatives are possible.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Use equipment that generates the least amount of sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity (e.g., environmental buckets instead of excavators).
- Use BMPs, such as the establishing riparian area buffers, to help reduce and control sediment input.
- Make every effort to avoid dredging very fine sediments, such as silt. In general, the finest substrate dredged should be sand (>80% sand).
- Implement light monitoring at treatment (within adjacent EFH) and control sites (area outside of dredging influence) during dredging.
- Incorporate adequate control measures to minimize turbidity where the dredging equipment used is expected to create significant turbidity, especially where effects may be long-lasting (>1 day).
- Explore collaborative approaches between material management planners, pollution control agencies, and others involved in watershed planning to identify point and nonpoint sources of sediment and sediment pollution associated with dredging.

Release of contaminants

- Monitor sediment contamination levels during dredging and report all effects, preferably in real-time. If contamination is acute, reevaluate dredging methodology and require methods that do not release contaminants.
- Using best available science, develop procedures for disposal of dredged material that protect EFH and organisms from contaminants.

Impacts to organisms

- Avoid dredging in or near EFH areas of particular concern.
- Design and implement dredging suction mechanisms that minimize or eliminate entrainment or impingement of fish and their prey sources.

Noise effects

- Clearly report predicted noise levels that will occur during dredging activities.
- Sample and monitor noise levels in real time during dredging activities. If noise levels surpass accepted thresholds for aquatic organisms, cease operations and implement alternative methodology.
- Incentivize development of peer-reviewed studies that identify how noise generated from dredging impacts aquatic organisms and EFH.

References

Able, K. W., J. P. Manderson, and A. L. Studholme. 1998. The distribution of shallow water juvenile fishes in an urban estuary: The effects of manmade structures in the lower Hudson River. Estuaries 21:731–744.

Amaral, M., V. Lee, and J. Rhodes. 2005. Environmental guide for marinas: Controlling nonpoint source and storm water pollution in Rhode Island: Best management practices for marinas. Rhode Island Sea Grant, University of Rhode Island, Narragansett, Rhode Island.

André, M., M. Solé, M. Lenior, M. Durfort, C. Quero, A. Mas, A. Lombarte, M. Van Der Schaar, M. López-Bejar, and M. Morell. 2011. Low-frequency sounds induce acoustic trauma in cephalopods. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 9:489–493.

Armstrong, D., B. Stevens, and J. Hoeman. 1982. Distribution and abundance of Dungeness crab and Cragon shrimp, and dredged-related mortality of invertebrates and fish in Grays Harbor, Washington. University of Washington, and U.S. Army Engineer District, Seattle.

ASMFC (Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission). 2004. NRC report outlines the impacts of oil on marine fish habitat. Habitat Hotline Atlantic 11:1–5.

Barr, B. W. 1993. Environmental impacts of small boat navigation: Vessel/sediment interactions and management implications. Pages 1756–1770 *in* O. T. Magoon, editor. Coastal Zone 1993: Proceedings of the Eighth Symposium on Coastal and Ocean Management. American Shore and Beach Preservation Association, New Orleans, Louisiana.

Bellmore, J. R., C. V. Baxter, A. M Ray, L. Denny, K. Tardy, and E. Galloway. 2012. Assessing the potential for salmon recovery via floodplain restoration: A multi-trophic level comparison of dredge-mined to reference segments. Environmental Management 49:734–750.

Besser, J. M., C. A. Mebane, D. R. Mount, C. D. Ivey, J. L. Kunz, I. E. Greer, T. W. May, and C. G. Ingersoll. 2007. Sensitivity of mottled sculpins (*Cottus bairdi*) and rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) to acute and chronic toxicity of cadmium, copper, and zinc. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 26:1657–1665.

Betcher, C., and B. Williams. 1996. Impact of Mooring Buoy Installations on Eelgrass and Macroalgae. Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Bilkovic, D. M. 2011. Response of Tidal Creek fish communities to dredging and coastal development pressures in a shallow-water estuary. Estuaries and Coasts 34:129–147.

Birtwell, I. K., and J. S. Korstrom. 2002. Responses of aquatic organisms to sediment: Preliminary findings of current research by DFO, Pacific Region, and comments relating to the Yukon Placer Authorization. Internal Fisheries and Oceans report for the review of the Yukon Placer Authorization. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia, Canada. Available: waves-vagues.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/Library/255660.pdf (September 2022).

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Bolam, S. G., and H. L. Rees. 2003. Minimizing impacts of maintenance dredged material disposal in the coastal environment: A habitat approach. Environmental Management 32:171–188.

Boysen, K. A., and J. J. Hoover. 2009. Swimming performance of juvenile white sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*): Training and the probability of entrainment due to dredging. Journal of Applied Ichthyology 25(Supplement 2):54–59.

Bricelj, V. M., and R. E. Malouf. 1984. Growth of juvenile *Mercenaria mercenaria* and the effect of resuspended bottom sediments. Marine Biology 84:167–173.

Brinkmann, M., S. Hudjetz, U. Kammann, M. Hennig, J. Kuckelkorn, M. Chinoraks, C. Cofalla, S. Wiseman, J. P. Giesy, A. Schaffer, M. Hecker, J. Wolz, H. Schuttrumpf, and H. Hollert. 2013. How flood events affect rainbow trout: Evidence of a biomarker cascade in rainbow trout after exposure to PAH contaminated sediment suspensions. Aquatic Toxicology 128–129:13–14.

Brown, A. V., M. M. Lyttle, and K. B. Brown. 1998. Impacts of gravel mining on gravel bed streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:979–994.

Buell, J. W. 1992. Fish entrainment monitoring of the Western-Pacific dredge R. W. Lofgren during operations outside the preferred work period. Western-Pacific Dredging Company, Portland, Oregon.

Burdick, D. M., and F. T. Short. 1999. The effects of boat docks on eelgrass beds in coastal waters of Massachusetts. Environmental Management 23:231–240.

Cake, E. W., Jr. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Gulf of Mexico American oyster. FWS/OBS-82/10.57. U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

Carey, M. P., B. L. Sanderson, T. A. Friesen, T. A. Barnas, and J. D. Olden. 2011. Smallmouth bass in the Pacific Northwest: A threat to native species; a benefit for anglers. Reviews in Fisheries Science 19:305–315.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Clarke, D., C. Dickerson, and K. Reine. 2002. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by dredges. Proceedings of the Third Specialty Conference on Dredging and Dredged Material Disposal. American Society of Civil Engineers, Orlando, Florida.

Clarke-Murray, C., S. Agbayani, H. M. Alidina, and N. C. Ban. 2015. Advancing marine cumulative effects mapping: An update in Canada's Pacific waters. Marine Policy 58:71–77.

Cloern, J. E. 1987. Turbidity as a control on phytoplankton biomass and productivity in estuaries. Continental Shelf Research 7:1367–1381.

Clynick, B. G. 2006. Assemblages of fish associated with coastal marinas in north-western Italy. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom 86:847–852.

Codarin, A., L. E. Wysocki, F. Ladich, and M. Picciulin. 2009. Effects of ambient and boat noise on hearing and communication in three fish species living in a marine protected area (Miramare, Italy). Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1880–1887.

Collier, T. K., B. F. Anulacion, M. R. Arkoosh, J. P. Dietrich, J. Incardona, L. L. Johnson, G. M. Ylitalo, and M. S. Myers. 2014. Effects on fish of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and naphthenic acid exposures. Pages 195–255 *in* K. B. Tierney, editor. Organic Chemical Toxicology of Fishes. Elsevier, London.

Costa, J. E., B. L. Howes, A. E. Giblin, and I. Valiela. 1992. Monitoring nitrogen and indicators of nitrogen loading to support management action in Buzzards Bay. Pages 499–531 *in* D. H. McKenzie, D. E. Hyatt, and V. J. McDonald, editors. Ecological indicators. Elsevier Applied Science, New York.

Cottingham, D. 1988. Persistent marine debris: Challenge and response: The federal perspective. Report NA86AA-D-SG041. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Cozar, A., F. Echevarria, J. I. Gonzalez-Gordillo, X. Irigoien, B. Ubeda, S. Hernandez-Leon, A. T. Palma, S. Navarro, J. Garcia de Lomas, A. Ruiz, M. L. Fernandez de Puelles, and C. M. Duarte. 2014. Plastic debris in the open ocean. Proceedings of the National Academy of Science 111:10239–10244.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

Currie, D., and G. Parry. 1996. Effects of scallop dredging on soft sediment community: A large-scale experimental study. Marine Ecology Progress Series 134:131–150.

Deegan, L. A., and R. N. Buchsbaum. 2005. The effect of habitat loss and degradation on fisheries. Pages 67–96 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The Decline in Fisheries Resources in New England: Evaluating the Impact of Overfishing, Contamination, and Habitat Degradation. MITSG 05-5. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1982. Photosynthetic responses of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) to in situ manipulations of light-intensity. Oecologia 55:137–144.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1985. Role of daily light period in the depth distribution of *Zostera marina* (eelgrass). Marine Ecology Progress Series 25(1):51–61.

Derraik, J. G. B. 2002. The pollution of the marine environment by plastic debris: A review. Marine Pollution Bulletin 44:842–852.

Dickerson, C., K. J. Reine, and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by bucket dredging operations. DOER Technical Notes Collection (ERDC TN-DOER-E14). U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi. Available: media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/erdc-dredge-noise-cib2001-akr.pdf (September 2022).

Doyle, R. D. 2001. Effects of waves on the early growth of *Vallisneria americana*. Freshwater Biology 46:389–397.

Drabble, R. 2012a. Monitoring of East Channel dredge areas and its implications. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64:363–372.

Drabble, R. 2012b. Projected entrainment of fish resulting from aggregate dredging. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64:373–381.

Edinger, J. E., and J. L. Martin. 2010. Effects of the addition of multi-slip docks on reservoir flushing and water quality: Hydrodynamic modeling; aquatic impact; regulatory limits. The Journal of Transdisciplinary Environmental Studies 9:15.

Erftemeijer, P. L. A., and R. R. Robin Lewis III. 2006. Environmental impacts of dredging on seagrasses: A review. Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:1553–1572.

Erftemeijer, P. L. A., M. J. Jury, B. Gäbe, J. T. Dijkstra, D. Leggett, T. M. Foster, and D. J. Shafer. 2013. Dredging, port- and waterway construction near coastal plant habitats. Pages 11–13 *in* Proceedings of the Coasts & Ports 2013 Conference, Sydney, Australia. Engineers Australia, Sydney, Australia.

Eriksson, B. K., A. Sandstrom, M. Iscus, H. Schreiber, and P. Karas. 2004. Effects of boating activities on aquatic vegetation in the Stockholm archipelago, Baltic Sea. Estuarine, Coastal, and Shelf Science 61:339–349.

Feist, B., J. Anderson, and R. T. Miyamoto. 1996. Potential impacts of pile driving on juvenile pink (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and chum (*O. keta*) salmon behavior and distribution. Report #FRI-UW-9603. Fisheries Research Institute, University of Washington, Seattle.

Fettweis, M., M. Baeye, F. Francken, B. Lauwaert, D. Van den Eynde, V. Van Lancker, C. Martens, and T. Michielsen. 2011. Monitoring the effects of disposal of fine sediments from maintenance dredging on suspended particulate matter concentration in the Belgian nearshore area (southern North Sea). Marine Pollution Bulletin 62:258–269.

Fischer, J., C. Paukert, and M. Daniels. 2012. Fish community response to habitat alteration: Impacts of sand dredging in the Kansas River. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 141:1532–1544.

Gilkinson, K. D., D. C. Gordon, K. G. MacIsaac, D. L. McKeown, E. L. R. Kenchington, C. Bourbonnais, and W. P. Vass. 2005. Immediate impacts and recovery trajectories of macrofaunal communities following hydraulic clam dredging on Banquereau, eastern Canada. ICES Journal of Marine Science 62:925–947.

Grason, E. W., and B. G. Miner. 2012. Preference alters consumptive effects of predators: Top-down effects of a native crab on a system of native and introduced prey. PLOS ONE 7:e51322.

Gregory, R. S. 1993. Effect of turbidity on the predator avoidance behavior of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:241–246.

Gregory, R. S., and C. D. Levings. 1998. Turbidity reduces predation on migrating juvenile Pacific salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:275–285.

Grosholz, E. D., L. A. Levin, A. C. Tyler, and C. Neira. 2009. Changes in community structure and ecosystem function following *Spartina alterniflora* invasion of Pacific estuaries. Pages 23–40 *in* E. Grosholz and M. D. Bertness, editors. Human impacts on salt marshes: A global perspective. University of California Press, Berkeley, California.

Haas, M. E., C. A. Simenstad, J. R. Cordell, D. A. Beuchamp, and B. S. Miller. 2002. Effects of large overwater structures on epibenthic juvenile salmon prey assemblages in Puget Sound, Washington. Prepared for Washington State Transportation Commission and U.S. Department of Transportation. Available: www.digitalarchives.wa.gov/do/2499E7E11D3A319DCC9F67B7608E6374.pdf (September 2022).

Halvorsen, M. B., B. M. Casper, C. M. Woodley, T. J. Carlson, and A. N. Popper. 2011. Predicting and mitigating hydroacoustic impacts on fish from pile installations. NCHRP Research Results Digest 363, Project 25-28. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Halvorsen, M. B., B. M. Casper, C. M. Woodley, T. J. Carlson, and A. N. Popper. 2012. Threshold for onset of injury in Chinook salmon from exposure to impulsive pile driving sounds. PLOS ONE 7:e38968.

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, California.

Heintz, R. A., S. D. Rice, A. C. Wertheimer, R. F. Bradshaw, F. P. Thrower, J. E. Joyce, and J. W. Short. 2000. Delayed effects on growth and marine survival of pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* after exposure to crude oil during embryonic development. Marine Ecology Progress Series 208:205–216.

Helfman, G. S. 1981. The advantage to fishes of hovering in shade. Copeia 1981:392–400.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Hildebrand, J. 2004. Sources of anthropogenic sound in the marine environment. Available: www.mmc.gov/wp-content/uploads/hildebrand.pdf (September 2022).

Hofer, T. 1998. Part II: Environmental and health effects resulting from marine bulk liquid transport. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 5:231–237.

Iannuzzi, T. J., M. P. Weinstein, K. G. Sellner, and T. C. Barrett. 1996. Habitat disturbance and marina development: An assessment of ecological effects. I. Changes in primary production due to dredging and marina construction. Estuaries 19:257–271.

Islam, M. S., and M. Tanaka. 2004. Impacts of pollution on coastal and marine ecosystems including coastal and marine fisheries and approach for management: A review and synthesis. Marine Pollution Bulletin 48:624–649.

Jasny, M., J. Reynolds, C. Horowitz, and A. Wetzler. 1999. Sounding the depths: Supertankers, sonar and the rise of undersea noise. Natural Resources Defense Council, Los Angeles, California.

Jasny, M., J. Reynolds, C. Horowitz, and A. Wetzler. 2005. Sounding the Depths II: The Rising Toll of Sonar, Shipping and Industrial Ocean Noise on Marine Life. Natural Resources Defense Council. Available: www.nrdc.org/wildlife/marine/sound/sound.pdf (January 2022).

Johannessen, J. 2010. Assessing littoral sediment supply (feeder bluffs) and beach condition in King and southern Snohomish Counties, Puget Sound, Washington. Pages 135–152 *in* H. Shipman, M. N. Dethier, G. Gelfenbaum, K. L. Fresh, and R. S. Dinicola, editors. Puget Sound Shorelines and the Impacts of Armoring—Proceedings of a State of Science Workshop, May 2009. U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2010-5254. Available: www.researchgate.net/profile/Jim-Johannessen/publication/266495775_Assessing_Littoral_Sediment_Supply_Feeder_Bluffs_and_Beach_Condition_in_King_and_Southern_Snohomish_Counties_Puget_Sound_Washington/links/557ef2b208aec87640ddf1bc/Assessing-Littoral-Sediment-Supply-Feeder-Bluffs-and-Beach-Condition-in-King-and-Southern-Snohomish-Counties-Puget-Sound-Washington.pdf (September 2022).

Johnson, L. L., M. R. Arkoosh, C. F. Bravo, T. K. Collier, M. M. Krahn, J. P. Meador, M. S. Myers, W. L. Reichert, and J. E. Stein. 2008. The effects of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in fish from Puget Sound Washington. Pages 877–923 *in* R. T. Di Giulio and D. Hinton, editors. The Toxicology of Fishes. Taylor & Francis, New York.

Johnson, L. L., G. M. Ylitalo, M. R. Arkoosh, A. N. Kagley, C. Stafford, J. L. Bolton, J. Buzitis, B. F. Anulacion, and T. K. Collier. 2007. Contaminant exposure in outmigrant juvenile salmon from Pacific Northwest estuaries of the United States. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 127:167–194.

Jorgensen, J. C., M. M. McClure, M. B. Sheer, and N. L. Munn. 2013. Combined effects of climate change and bank stabilization on shallow water habitats of Chinook salmon. Conservation Biology 27:1201–1211.

Karaki, S., and J. vanHoften. 1975. Resuspension of bed material and wave effects on the Illinois and upper Mississippi Rivers caused by boat traffic. LMSSD 75-881. U.S. Army Engineer District, St. Louis, Missouri.

Kelty, R. A., and S. Bliven. 2003. Environmental and aesthetic impacts of small docks and piers, workshop report: Developing a science-based decision support tool for small dock management, phase 1: Status of the science. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series, No. 22. National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Kennish, M. J. 1997. Practical Handbook of Estuarine and Marine Pollution. CRC Press, Inc., Boca Raton, Florida.

Kennish, M. J. 2002. Environmental threats and environmental future of estuaries. Environmental Conservation 29:78–107.

Kenworthy, W. J., and M. S. Fonseca. 1996. Light requirements of seagrasses *Halodule wrightii* and *Syringodium filiforme* derived from the relationship between diffuse light attenuation and maximum depth distribution. Estuaries and Coasts 19:740–750.

Kipple, B., and C. Gabriele. 2004. Glacier Bay watercraft noise: Noise characterization for tour, charter, private, and government vessels. Technical Report NSWCCD-71-TR-2004/545. Naval Surface Warfare Center, Bremerton, Washington.

Klein, R. 1997. The effects of marinas and boating activities upon tidal waters. Community and Environmental Defense Services, Owing Mills, Maryland.

Kondolf, G. M. 1994. Geomorphic and environmental effects of instream gravel mining. Landscape and Urban Planning 28:225–243.

Lake, R. G., and S. G. Hinch. 1999. Acute effects of suspended sediment angularity on juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56:862–867.

Larson, K. 1989. Entrainment of Dungeness crabs by hopper dredge at the mouth of the Columbia River, OR and WA. Pages 268–285 *in* Dredging: Proceedings of WODCON XII. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Orlando, Florida. Available: usace.contentdm.oclc.org/digital/collection/p16021coll3/id/525/ (September 2022).

Lisle, T. E., F. Iseya, and H. Ikeda. 1993. Response of a channel with alternate bars to a decrease in supply of mixed-sized bed load: A flume experiment. Water Resources Research 29:3623–3629.

Liu, M., Q. W. Wei, H. Du, Z. Y. Fu, and Q. C. Chen. 2013. Ship noise-induced temporary hearing threshold shift in the Chinese sucker *Myxocyprinus asiaticus* (Blekker, 1864). Journal of Applied Ichthyology 29:1416–1422.

McCauley, J. E., R. A. Parr, and D. T. Hancock. 1977. Benthic infauna and maintenance dredging: A case study. Water Research 11:233–242.

McGraw, K., and D. Armstrong. 1990. Fish entrainment by dredges in Grays Harbor, Washington. Pages 113–131 *in* C. A. Simenstad, Jr., editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific coast fishes. Workshop Proceedings, 8–9 September 1988. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington, Seattle.

McIntyre, J. K., D. H. Baldwin, D. A. Beauchamp, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Low-level copper exposures increase visibility and vulnerability of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout predators. Ecological Applications 22:1460–1471.

Meador, J. P. 2008. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 2881–2891 *in* S. E. Jørgensen and B. D. Fath, editors. Encyclopedia of Ecology, volume 4. Elsevier, Oxford, United Kingdom.

Meador, J. P., T. K. Collier, and J. E. Stein. 2002. Use of tissue and sediment-based threshold concentrations of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) to protect juvenile salmonids listed under the U.S. Endangered Species Act. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 12(5):493–516.

Mearns, A. J., D. J. Reish, P. S. Oshida, T. Ginn, M. A. Rempel-Heseter, and C. Arthur. 2012. Effects of pollution on marine organisms. Water Environment Research 84:1737–1823.

Meire, P., T. Ysebaert, S. Van Damme, E. Van den Bergh, T. Maris, and E. Struyf. 2005. The Scheldt estuary: A description of a changing ecosystem. Hydrobiologia 540:1–11.

Miller, H. C., W. A. Birekmeir, and A. E. DeWall. 1983. Effects of CERC research pier on nearshore processes. Pages 765–782 *in* Proceedings of the International Conference on Coastal Structures '83. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York.

Milliken, A. S., and V. Lee. 1990. Pollution impacts from recreational boating: A bibliography and summary review. National Sea Grant Depository Publication RIU-G-002. Rhode Island Sea Grant, Narragansett, Rhode Island.

Minchinton, T. E., and M. D. Bertness. 2003. Disturbance-mediated competition and the spread of *Phragmites australis* in a coastal marsh. Ecological Applications 13:1400–1416.

Möller, A. M., C. Hermsen, T. Floehr, M. H. Lamoree, and H. Segner. 2014. Tissue-specific metabolism of benzo[a]pyrene in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*): A comparison between the liver and immune organs. Drug Metabolism and Disposition 42:111–118.

Moore, M., and N. E. Stolpe. 1995. Boating workshop raises tough questions. Commercial Fisheries News 22:6B, 7B, and 15B.

Moore, K. A., E. C. Shields, D. B. Parrish, and R. J. Orth. 2012. Eelgrass survival in two contrasting systems: Role of turbidity and summer water temperatures. Marine Ecology Progress Series 448:247–258.

Moreno, M., G. Albertelli, and M. Fabiano. 2009. Nematode response to metal, PAHs and organic enrichment in tourist marinas of the Mediterranean Sea. Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1192–1201.

Morley, S. A., J. D. Toft, and K. M. Hanson. 2012. Ecological effects of shoreline armoring on intertidal habitats of a Puget Sound urban estuary. Estuaries and Coasts 35:774–784.

Mullholland, R. 1984. Habitat suitability index models: Hard clam. FWS/OBS-82/10.77. U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

Mumford, T. F., Jr. 2007. Kelp and eelgrass in Puget Sound. Puget Sound Nearshore Partnership Technical Report 2007-05. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle.

Neff, J. M. 1985. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 416–454 *in* G. M. Rand and S. R. Petrocelli, editors. Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology. Hemisphere Publishing, Washington, D.C.

Negri, A. P., L. D. Smith, N. S. Webster, and A. J. Heyward. 2002. Understanding ship-grounding impacts on a coral reef: Potential effects of anti-foulant paint contamination on coral recruitment. Marine Pollution Bulletin 44:111–117.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. MacDonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:72–82.

Newell, R. C., L. J. Seiderer, and D. R. Hitchcock. 1998. The impact of dredging works in coastal waters: A review of the sensitivity to disturbance and subsequent recovery of biological resources on the seabed. Oceanography and Marine Biology: Annual Review 36:127–178.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001a. Overwater structures. Marine issues white paper, research project T1803, Task 35. Washington State Transportation Center, Seattle.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001b. Dredging activities. Marine issues white paper, research project T1803, Task 35. Washington State Transportation Center, Seattle.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 1997. Coastal coho habitat factors for decline and protective efforts in Oregon. Habitat Conservation Program, Portland, Oregon.

NOAA (National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration). 2009. The use of treated wood products in aquatic environments. NOAA Fisheries Southwest Region. Available: preservedwood.org/portals/0/documents/NOAA_guidelines.pdf (September 2022).

Oliver, J. S., P. N. Slattery, L. W. Hulberg, and J. W. Nybakken. 1977. Patterns of succession in benthic infaunal communities following dredging and dredged material disposal in Monterey Bay. Technical Report D-77-27. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi. Available: aquadocs.org/bitstream/handle/1834/20405/Tech_Report_D-77-27.pdf (September 2022).

Omori, M., S. van der Spoel, and C. P. Norman. 1994. Impact of human activities on pelagic biogeography. Progress in Oceanography 34:211–219.

Ono, K., and C. A. Simenstad. 2014. Reducing the effect of overwater structures on migrating juvenile salmon: An experiment with light. Ecological Engineering 71:180–189.

Page, H. M., J. E. Dugan, C. S. Culver, and J. C. Hoesterey. 2006. Exotic invertebrate species on offshore oil platforms. Marine Ecology Progress Series 325:101–107.

Palumbi, S. R. 2003. Marine Reserves: A tool for ecosystem management and conservation. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, Virginia.

Penttila, D. 2000. Impacts of overhanging shading vegetation on egg survival for summer-spawning surf smelt on upper intertidal beaches in northern Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Penttila, D., and D. Doty. 1990. Results of 1989 eelgrass shading studies in Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fisheries, Olympia, Washington.

Pereyra, M. G., B. M. Marino, R. N. Szupiany, and L. P. Thomas. 2014. Hydrodynamics and sediment transport in an estuary with an abrupt depth step. Journal of Hydraulic Research 52:532–544.

Pertola, S., M. A. Faust, and H. Kuosa. 2006. Survey on germination and species composition of dinoflagellates from ballast tanks and recent sediments in ports on the South Coast of Finland, North-Eastern Baltic Sea. Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:900–911.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council). 2019. Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan for the California, Oregon, and Washington Groundfish Fishery: Appendix D, Nonfishing Effects on West Coast Groundfish Essential Fish Habitat and Recommended Conservation Measures. Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, Oregon. Available: www.pcouncil.org/documents/2019/06/groundfish-fmp-appendix-d.pdf/ (January 2022).

Poole, G. C., J. A. Stanford, S. W. Running, and C. A. Frissell. 2006. Multiscale geomorphic drivers of groundwater flow paths: Subsurface hydrologic dynamics and hyporheic habitat diversity. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 25:288–303.

Popper, A. N. 1993. Effects of anthropogenic sound on fishes. Fisheries 28:24–31.

Popper, A. N., and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of human-generated sound on fish. Integrative Zoology 4:43–52.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Precht, W. F., R. B. Aronson, and D. W. Swanson. 2001. Improving scientific decision-making in the restoration of ship-grounding sites on coral reefs. Bulletin of Marine Science 69:1001–1012.

Rahel, F. J., and J. D. Olden. 2008. Assessing the effects of climate change on aquatic invasive species. Conservation Biology 22:521–533.

Readman, J. W., L. L. Kwong, D. Grondin, J. Bartocci, J. P. Villeneuve, and L. D. Mee. 1993. Coastal water contamination from triazine herbicide used in antifouling paints. Environmental Science and Technology 27:1940–1942.

Reine, K., and D. G. Clarke. 1998. Entrainment by hydraulic dredges—A review of potential impacts. Technical Note DOER-E1. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Reine, K. J., D. Clarke, and C. Dickerson. 2014. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by hydraulic and mechanical dredging operations. The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 135:3280–3294.

Reish, D. J. 1961. A study of the benthic fauna in a recently constructed boat harbor in southern California. Ecology 42:84–91.

Roberts, D. A. 2012. Causes and ecological effects of resuspended contaminated sediments (RCS) in marine environments. Environment International 40:230–243.

Rogers P. H., and M. Cox. 1988. Underwater Sound as a Biological Stimulus. Pages 131–149 *in* J. Atema, R. R. Fay, A. N. Popper, and W. N. Tavolga, editors. Sensory Biology of Aquatic Animals. Springer, New York.

Sabol, B., D. Shafer, and E. Lord. 2005. Dredging effects on eelgrass (*Zostera marina*) distribution in a New England small boat harbor. Final Report ERDC/EL TR-05-8. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Sanderson, B. L., K. A. Barnas, and M. W. Rub. 2009. Nonindigenous species of the Pacific Northwest: An overlooked risk to endangered salmon? BioScience 59:245–256.

Santos, M. J., L. W. Anderson, and S. L. Ustin. 2011. Effects of invasive species on plant communities: An example using submersed aquatic plants at the regional scale. Biological Invasions 13:443–457.

Schiel, D. R., S. A. Wood, R. A. Dunmore, and D. I. Taylor. 2006. Sediment on rocky intertidal reefs: Effects on early post-settlement stages of habitat-forming seaweeds. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 331:158–172.

Schiff, K., J. Brown, D. Diehl, and D. Greenstein. 2007. Extent and magnitude of copper contamination in marinas of the San Diego region, California, USA. Marine Pollution Bulletin 54:322–328.

Scholik, A. R., and H. Y. Yan. 2002. Effects of boat engine noise on the auditory sensitivity of the fathead minnow, *Pimephales promelas*. Environmental Biology of Fishes 63:203–209.

Shafer, D. J. 1999. The effects of dock shading on the seagrass *Holodule wrightii* in Perdido Bay, Alabama. Estuaries 22:936–943.

Shafer, D. J., J. Karazsia, L. Carrubba, and C. Martin. 2008. Evaluation of regulatory guidelines to minimize impacts seagrasses from single-family residential dock structures in Florida and Puerto Rico. ERDC/EL TR-08-X. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Sigler, J. W. 1988. Effects of chronic turbidity on anadromous salmonids: Recent studies and assessment techniques perspective. Pages 26–37 *in* C. A. Simenstad, editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific coast fishes. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington.

Simkanin, C., I. C. Davidson, J. F. Dower, G. Jamieson, and T. W. Therriault. 2012. Anthropogenic structures and the infiltration of natural benthos by invasive ascidians. Marine Ecology 33:499–511.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Smith, A., D. Helton, and I Zelo. 2003. eveloping a Database to Support and Prioritize the Removal of Abandoned Vessels Impacting Coral Resources 1. International Oil Spill Conference Proceedings 2003(1):575–578.

Smith, L. D., A. P. Negri, E. Philipp, N. S. Webster, and A. J. Heyward. 2003. The effects of antifoulant paint contaminated sediments on coral recruits and branchlets. Marine Biology 143:651–657.

Sovová, T., D. Boyle, K. A. Sloman, C. Vanegas Pérez, and R. D. Handy. 2014. Impaired behavioural response to alarm substance in rainbow trout exposed to copper nanoparticles. Aquatic Toxicology 152:195–204.

Spearow, J. L., R. S. Kota, and D. J. Ostrach. 2011. Environmental contaminant effects on juvenile striped bass in the San Francisco Estuary, California, USA. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 30:393–402.

Stocker, M. 2002. Fish, mollusks and other sea animals' use of sound, and the impact of anthropogenic noise in the marine acoustic environment. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 112:2431.

Strecker, A. L., and J. D. Olden. 2014. Fish species introductions provide novel insights into the patterns and drivers of phylogenetic structure in freshwaters. Proceedings of the Royal Society B 281:20133003.

Suedel, B. C., J. Kim, D. G. Clarke, and I. Linkov. 2008. A risk-informed decision framework for setting environmental windows for dredging projects. Science of the Total Environment 403:1–11.

Sunda, W. G. 1994. Trace metal/phytoplankton interactions in the sea. Pages 213–247 *in* G. Bidoglio and W. Stumm, editors. Chemistry of Aquatic Systems: Local and Global Perspectives. Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Norwell, Massachusetts.

Tabor, R. A., K. L. Fresh, R. M. Piaskowski, H. A. Gearns, and D. B. Hayes. 2011. Habitat use by juvenile Chinook salmon in the nearshore areas of Lake Washington: Effects of depth, lakeshore development, substrate, and vegetation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 31:700–713.

Taylor, D. S. 2012. Removing the sands (sins?) of our past: Dredge spoil removal and saltmarsh restoration along the Indian River Lagoon, Florida (USA). Wetlands Ecology and Management 20:213–218.

Thayer, G. W., W. J. Kenworthy, and M. S. Fonseca. 1984. The ecology of eelgrass meadows of the Atlantic coast: A community profile. FWS/OBS-84/02. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Slidell, Louisiana.

Thom, R. M., and D. K. Shreffler. 1996. Eelgrass meadows near ferry terminals in Puget Sound. Characterization of assemblages and mitigation impacts. Battelle Pacific Northwest Laboratories, Sequim, Washington.

Thom, R. M., L. D. Antrim, A. B. Borde, W. W. Gardiner, D. K. Shreffler, and G. P. Farley. 1998. Puget Sound's eelgrass meadows: Factors contributing to depth distribution and spatial patchiness. Pages 363–370 *in* Puget Sound Research '98, Proceedings. Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team, Olympia, Washington.

Thrush, S. F., and P. K. Dayton. 2002. Disturbance to marine benthic habitats by trawling and dredging: Implications for marine biodiversity. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 33:449–473.

Thrush, S. F., J. E. Hewitt, V. J. Cummings, and P. K. Dayton. 1995. The impact of habitat disturbance by scallop dredging on marine benthic communities: What can be predicted from the results of experiments? Marine Ecology Progress Series 129:141–150.

Toft, J. D., J. R. Cordell, C. A. Simenstad, and L. A. Stamatiou. 2007. Fish distribution, abundance, and behavior along city shoreline types in Puget Sound. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:465–480.

Tuck, I. D., S. J. Hall, and M. R. Robertson. 1998. Effects of physical trawling disturbance in a previously unfished sheltered Scottish sea loch. Marine Ecology Progress Series 162:227–242.

Uhrin, A. V., and J. G. Holmquist. 2003. Effects of propeller scarring on macrofaunal use of the seagrass *Thalassia testudinum*. Marine Ecology Progress Series 250:61–70.

UNCTAD (United Nations Conference on Trade and Development). 2013. Review of maritime transport, 2013. United Nations Publication UNCTAD/RMT/2013. United Nations, New York.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2001. National management measures guidance to control nonpoint source pollution from marinas and recreational boating. EPA-841-B-01-005. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

van Brummelen, T. C., B. van Hattum, T. Crommentuijn, and D. F. Kalf. 1998. Bioavailability and ecotoxicity of PAH. Pages 203–263 *in* A. H. Neilson, editor. PAH and Related Compounds—Biology (Volume 3-J, the Handbook of Environmental Chemistry). Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Germany.

Van Der Veer, H. W., M. J. N. Bergman, and J. J. Beukema. 1985. Dredging activities in the Dutch Wadden Sea: Effects on macrobenthic infauna. Netherlands Journal of Sea Research 19(2):183–190.

Varanasi, U., editor. 1989. Metabolism of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the aquatic environment. CRC Press, Inc., Boca Raton, Florida.

Vardy, D. W., R. Santore, A. Ryan, J. P. Giesy, and M. Hecker. 2014. Acute toxicity of copper, lead, cadmium, and zinc to early life stages of white sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*) in laboratory and Columbia River water. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 21:8176–8187.

Vitousek, P. M., C. M. D'Antonio, L. L. Loope, M. Rejmanek, and R. Westbrooks. 1997. Introduced species: A significant component of human-caused global change. New Zealand Journal of Ecology 21:1–16.

Wale, M., S. Simpson, and A. N. Radford. 2013. Noise negatively affects foraging and antipredator behavior in shore crabs. Animal Behaviour 86:111–118.

Walker, D., R. Lukatelich, R. G. Bastyan, and A. J. McComb. 1989. The effect of boat moorings on seagrass beds near Perth, Western Australia. Aquatic Botany 36:69–77.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Watling, L., R. H. Findlay, L. M. Lawrence, and D. F. Schick. 2001. Impact of a scallop drag on the sediment chemistry, microbiota, and faunal assemblages of a shallow subtidal marine benthic community. Journal of Sea Research 46:309–324.

Weis, P., J. S. Weis, and L. M. Coohill. 1991. Toxicity to estuarine organisms of leachates from chromated copper arsenate treated wood. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 20:118–124.

Wertheimer, A. C., R. A. Heintz, J. F. Thedinga, J. M. Maselko, and S. D. Rice. 2000. Straying of adult pink salmon from their natal stream following embryonic exposure to weathered *Exxon Valdez* crude oil. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 129:989–1004.

Wilber, D. H., and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Biological effects of suspended sediments: A review of suspended sediment impacts on fish and shellfish with relation to dredging activities in estuaries. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21:855–875.

Wilbur, A. R., and M. W. Pentony. 1999. Human-induced nonfishing threats to essential fish habitat in the New England region. American Fisheries Society Symposium 22:299–321.

Wilcox, B. A., and D. D. Murphy. 1985. Conservation strategy: The effects of fragmentation on extinction. The American Naturalist 125:879–887.

Williams, G. D., and R. M. Thom. 2001. Marine and estuarine shoreline modification issues. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Sequim, Washington.

Woodward, D. F., W. G. Brumbaugh, A. J. Delonay, E. E. Little, and C. E. Smith. 1994. Effects on rainbow trout fry of a metals-contaminated diet of benthic invertebrates from the Clark Fork River, Montana. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:51–62.

Yelverton, J. T., D. R. Richmond, W. Hicks, H. Saunders, and E. Fletcher. 1975. The relationship between fish size and their response to underwater blast. Lovelace Foundation for Medical Education and Research Topical Report. Defense Nuclear Agency, Albequerque, New Mexico.

Yousef, Y. A. 1974. Assessing effects on water quality by boating activity. EPA-670/2-74-072. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

Zelo, I., and D. Helton. 2005. Removal of grounded, derelict or abandoned vessels as site restoration. Pages 809–813 *in* Abandoned Vessel Program (AVP) Conference Proceedings, International Oil Spill Conference, Miami Beach, Florida. American Petroleum Institute, Miami Beach, Florida.

Zimmerman, R. C. 2006. Light and photosynthesis in seagrass meadows. Pages 303–321 *in* A. W. D. Larkum, R. J. Orth, and C. M. Duarte, editors. Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology, and Conservation. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

13. Coastal Development

Population growth has led to increased development along the U.S. West Coast (Griggs et al. 2005, NOAA 2013a). The health of coastal EFH is vitally important to the maintenance and persistence of a wide array of freshwater and marine flora and fauna (Hughes et al. 2009). The way in which humans develop the coastal landscape has several compounding negative impacts on EFH (Simenstad 1983, Thom 1987, Osborn et al. 2006, Airoldi et al. 2008, Boström et al. 2011, Taylor 2012). Increasingly, coastal EFH is filled in (Crain et al. 2009), structures are built to stabilize and protect property (Scavia et al. 2002, Bulleri and Chapman 2010, Nordstrom 2014), and sea-level rise and increased storm intensity could increase the demand for additional coastal protection structures (Shepard et al. 2011). The filling-in of EFH has led to the decline of highly productive and valuable coastal habitat (Crain et al. 2009). Structures such as bulkheads, seawalls, revetments, and groins impact functionality of coastal EFH (Downing 1983, Dugan et al. 2011), inhibiting shoreward migration of marsh wetlands and aquatic vegetation (Orth et al. 2006), both of which naturally protect coasts. Manmade shoreline structures also lead to coastal sediment budget deficits, subsidence of land (Shellenbarger et al. 2013), and increased beach erosion. These factors can exacerbate degradation of coastal geomorphological processes already compromised by inland development activities, such as damming of rivers (Kana 1988, Kondolf 1997, CDBW 2002, Greene 2002, Borde et al. 2003). Because of the high ecological costs of coastal development, costly mitigation activities, such as beach nourishment, increase. Such mitigation is a costly short-term solution, and can further impact coastal processes, residing organisms, and habitats (Peterson and Bishop 2005, Speybroeck et al. 2006, Munsch et al. 2015). Finally, the increase in coastal development often corresponds with an increase in land-based debris that litters sensitive, compromised coastal EFH and can harm residing organisms (Laist 1987, Cozar et al. 2014).

This chapter is divided into four sections that outline some of the adverse impacts of coastal development on EFH, including factors associated with Beach Nourishment, Shoreline and Bank Stabilization, Aquatic Fill, and Marine Debris. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these impacts on EFH are provided in each section.

Beach Nourishment

Potential adverse impacts of beach nourishment

The following factors associated with beach nourishment can impact EFH and are described briefly below: altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, and impacts to organisms. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Coastal EFH is created and maintained by waves, tides, currents, weather, and changes in sea level that influence erosion and accretion of coastal sediment. Sediment is transported by these forces from rivers and eroding beaches and deposited in distinct littoral "cells" along the coast (Kondolf 1997, Patsch and Griggs 2007). Sediment budgets in these littoral cells influence the structure of coastal EFH (Inman and Jenkins 1999, Hapke et al. 2006, Young and Ashford 2006).

The impacts of beach nourishment on hydrology and geomorphology in EFH vary among different coastal environments (Nelson 1993); however, many authors have found that artificial accretion resulting from beach nourishment inhibits coastal hydrologic and geomorphologic processes that form and maintain EFH (Flick 1993, Wiegel 1994, Greene 2002, Hapke et al. 2006, Speybroeck et al. 2006, Munsch et al. 2015). Furthermore, many studies indicated that use of different grain size and shape during beach nourishment can alter the distribution of sediment, reduce porosity of the beach surface, and alter hydrological patterns along the coast (Pilkey and Dixon 1996, Greene 2002, Jackson et al. 2010, Román-Sierra et al. 2014).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Beach nourishment temporarily increases suspended sediments and turbidity in neashore EFH (Greene 2002, Warrick 2013, Manning et al. 2014). The impacts of increased suspended sediments on aquatic organisms are influenced by abiotic factors, especially concentration and duration of exposure (Newcombe and Jensen 1996), as well as biotic factors such as trophic level and life stage. Increased sedimentation can reduce feeding ability (Breitburg 1988, Benfield and Minello 1996), injure gills (Lake and Hinch 1999), and lead to increased mortality of aquatic organisms (Wilber and Clarke 2001).

Turbidity, which is partly influenced by suspended sediment loads, reduces light availability, thereby altering habitat conditions and associated aquatic food webs. Light availability influences depth distribution, density, and productivity of eelgrass, an important structural feature in nearshore EFH (Dennison and Alberte 1982, 1985, 1986, Zimmerman 2006). Slight reductions in light availability can also result in lower rates of photosynthesis for phytoplankton, a key basal resource (Cloern 1987), ultimately resulting in less energy available for benthic invertebrates and fish living in EFH.

Impacts to organisms

Aquatic organisms can be directly affected during the process of beach nourishment. Peterson and Manning (2001) found that fining and increased sorting of sediments, and turbidity that resulted from beach nourishment, corresponded with reduced size and abundance of benthic macrofauna. Benthic invertebrates were buried during beach nourishment (Greene 2002), altering invertebrate biodiversity and composition, and possibly impacting recruitment of different life stages of organisms from adjacent areas (Peterson et al. 2000, Greene 2002, Manning et al. 2014).

The size, shape, and type of sediment used in beach nourishment can impact the trophic structure of coastal EFH (Manning et al. 2014, Vanden Eede et al. 2014, Munsch et al. 2015). For example, some nourishment sediments reduce the suitability of substrates for burrowing organisms (Nordstrom 2005, Colosio et al. 2007, Viola et al. 2014). Shell fragments do not transport or deposit the same way that sediment does. If beach nourishment sediment contains a high proportion of shells brought into certain cells from other beach areas, the shell fragments may dissolve and form a cemented shell layer (Speybroeck et al. 2006), prohibiting access to burrowing habitats and leading to changes in invertebrate and fish composition (Greene 2002). Sediment grain-size mismatch is also common in beach nourishment (Greene 2002). For example, beaches with larger substrates can be buried by fine sediments that would otherwise not occur (Jackson et al. 2010), reducing habitat for algae, an important food source for epibenthic organisms (Cheney et al. 1994) that in turn provide forage material for fish and other organisms (Peterson et al. 2000). Similarly, a shift from finer sediment to coarser substrate may result in decreased abundance of benthic macrofauna and a structural shift in benthic communities that could impact higher trophic levels (Speybroeck et al. 2006, Vanden Eede et al. 2014).

Sand placed during beach nourishment can move offshore and impact surrounding marine habitats, including rocky reef HAPC and associated habitats. For instance, surfgrasses—which display late successional traits, recover very slowly from disturbance, and require facilitation from algae before settling (Turner 1985)—exhibited a statistically significant decline in shoot count at burial depths of 0.8 feet (Craig et al. 2008). Removal of surfgrass from a rocky reef community can have profound impacts to community structure (Turner 1985), and reductions in surfgrass could negatively affect recruitment patterns (Galst and Anderson 2008). In addition, coralline algae habitat, which harbors important prey for many species of fish and invertebrates and is important habitat for abalone recruitment, may be impacted by burial depths of as little as 3–4 cm (Huff and Jarett 2007).

Despite decades of monitoring, there is still much uncertainty regarding the ecological impacts of beach nourishment. In a review of 46 beach nourishment monitoring studies, Peterson and Bishop (2005) identified serious deficiencies in design, analysis, and interpretation of results, and made specific recommendations for improving future monitoring efforts to enhance the understanding of the environmental impacts of beach nourishment.

Potential conservation measures for beach nourishment

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of beach nourishment on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one beach nourishment project or activity. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to or during the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of beach nourishment on EFH.

General guidelines

- Consider alternatives that would avoid or minimize impacts to EFH (e.g., reduce the footprint or volume of beach nourishment to the minimum required, explore sand retention alternatives).
- Complete nourishment in one season (e.g., one winter season).
- Use upland beach material sources, if compatible, to avoid impacts associated with offshore sand mining.
- Include efforts to preserve and enhance EFH by providing substrates that can be utilized by reproducing aquatic organisms, removing barriers to natural fish passage, and using weirs, grade control structures, and low-flow channels to provide the proper depth and velocity for fish.
- Restoration efforts must have specific ecological goals that can be measured and monitored to evaluate efficacy of restoration efforts.
- Preserve, enhance, or create beach dune and native dune vegetation in order to provide natural beach habitat and reduce the need for nourishment.

- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats by considering them in the review process for beach nourishment projects.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Develop design criteria based on site-specific geomorphological, hydrological, and sediment-transport processes appropriate for the system (e.g., stream channel, embayment, littoral cell) for any stabilization, protection, and restoration projects.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Monitor turbidity during operations, and cease operations if turbidity exceeds predetermined threshold levels at the beach and/or borrow sites.
- Dispose of dredged spoils properly (USACE 2014).

Impacts to organisms

- Do not harvest sand in areas containing sensitive marine benthic habitats (e.g., spawning and feeding sites, hard bottom, cobble/gravel substrate, shellfish beds).
- Do not conduct beach nourishment in areas containing sensitive marine benthic habitats adjacent to the beach (e.g., submerged aquatic vegetation, kelp, spawning and feeding sites, hard bottom, and cobble/gravel substrate).
- Conduct beach nourishment during the winter, when productivity for benthic infauna is at a minimum; this may minimize impacts for some beach sites.
- Verify that nourishment activities are not coinciding with kelp recruitment.
- Implement seasonal restrictions to avoid impacts to habitat during species-critical life-history stages (e.g., spawning season, egg and larval development periods).
- Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Identify life-history traits, such as reproductive strategy and dispersal capabilities, to determine potential for species recovery from beach nourishment and other impacts (Peterson et al. 2000, Speybroeck et al. 2006).
- Assess source material for compatibility with that of material to be placed on beach (e.g., grain size and shape, color). Slope of nourished beach should mimic the natural beach profile.
- Use an adaptive management plan with ecological indicators to oversee an appropriate monitoring plan and ensure mitigation objectives are met. Take corrective action and implement compensatory mitigation as needed.

Shoreline and Bank Stabilization

Potential adverse impacts of shoreline and bank stabilization

The following factors associated with shoreline protection and bank stabilization can impact EFH and are described below briefly: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, and release of contaminants. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Shoreline protection and bank stabilization can lead to the loss and alteration of coastal littoral EFH. Habitat heterogeneity or complexity and other environmental conditions, such as water quality and temperature, are important factors influencing biological diversity and productivity of coastal EFH (Romanuk et al. 2003, McLachlan and Brown 2006, Rossell and Dinnel 2006, Tonnes 2008, Scapini 2014); shoreline structures can impede processes that maintain these important attributes (Sobocinski 2003, Rice 2006, Nordstrom 2014). Artificial structures inconsistent with the character of natural EFH can reduce production of important refuge such as eelgrass and kelp and other submerged aquatic vegetation (Shafer 1999, Cohen et al. 2002, Ely and Viani 2008). Loss of such structure can impact colonization, abundance, and density of intertidal organisms (Bulleri and Chapman 2010), and organic and nutrient dynamics, with likely consequences for higher trophic levels. Armoring of the shoreline can reduce shallow-water and intertidal habitat, leading to coarsening of substrates, reducing organic debris, altering macroinvertebrate assemblages, and reducing important prey sources for fish (Sobocinski et al. 2010). In Puget Sound, Washington, epibenthic invertebrate densities were more than ten times greater on unarmored shorelines, and species richness doubled that of armored locations (Morley et al. 2012). Changes in habitat characteristics of shorelines can reduce habitat suitability for juvenile and spawning fish, such as English sole (Toft et al. 2007) and surf smelt (Quinn et al. 2012).

Habitat alterations associated with shoreline protection and bank stabilization structures can alter community assemblages, abundances, and trophic structure (Froeschke et al. 2005, Wen et al. 2010, Munsch et al. 2014). Breakwaters in Australia supported higher fish abundances and greater species richness (Fowler and Booth 2013). In northern Taiwan, trophic generalists replaced reef-obligate fish (Wen et al. 2010), and the proportion of younger fish increased at artificial structures over natural reefs (Wehkamp and Fischer 2013). Breakwaters and jetties can bury and remove resident biota and alter cover, prey sources, and presence of predators, thereby impacting EFH. Artificial structures can also facilitate the establishment and spread of invasive organisms (see Chapter 16).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Shoreline protection and bank stabilization can alter hydrology and geomorphology in coastal EFH (for a more comprehensive review, see Nordstrom 2014). Protection of eroding coastal cliffs can suppress the supply of sand to beaches (Stamski 2005). Reduced erosion impairs landward migration of shorelines, leading to confinement of beaches (Dugan et al. 2011, Noujas et al. 2014) and changes in bottom form and substrate that can reduce habitat suitability for aquatic plants, invertebrates, and fish. Jetties and other protective or stabilizing structures redirect wave energy, leading to coarsening of substrates; reduced sediment storage, transport, and deposition; reduced organic debris; and altered temperature, salinity, and water surface elevation in coastal EFH (Dugan et al. 2011).

Structures can have compounding impacts on hydrologic processes in EFH. Dikes, levees, ditches, and other water-control structures can eliminate or regulate (i.e., tidegates) freshwater influx into and out of marshes, preventing water, sediment, organic matter, and nutrient exchange (Nordstrom 2014).

Release of contaminants

The use of chemicals (creosote, chromated copper arsenate, and copper zinc arsenate) in wood products used for shoreline protection and bank stabilization can increase the amount of chemicals and contaminants in coastal EFH (Ownby et al. 2002). These chemicals introduce toxic substances that can bioaccumulate in the food web (USEPA 2005, Sandahl et al. 2007, Macneale et al. 2010) and impair physiology, behavior, growth, survival, and reproduction of invertebrates and fish (Dethloff et al. 2001, Meador et al. 2010, Feist et al. 2011, Scholz et al. 2011). For more information on the release of contaminants in association with artificial structures, see Chapter 16.

Potential conservation measures for shoreline and bank stabilization

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of shoreline and bank stabilization on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information and project-specific considerations may be developed prior to or during the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of shoreline and bank stabilization on EFH.

General guidelines

- Use soft approaches (e.g., beach nourishment, vegetative plantings, and placement of LWD) in lieu of hard shoreline stabilization and modifications (e.g., concrete bulkheads and seawalls, concrete or rock revetments).
- Use manmade structures in combination with ecosystem-based methods (e.g., oyster domes) to promote both shoreline protection and ecological benefits (Gedan et al. 2011).
- Use an adaptive management plan with ecological indicators to oversee an appropriate monitoring plan and ensure mitigation objectives are met. Take corrective action and implement compensatory mitigation as needed.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Use seasonal restrictions to avoid impacts to habitat during species-critical life-history stages (e.g., spawning, egg and larval development periods). Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Do not dike or drain tidal marshlands or estuaries.
- Do not develop structures that lead to or cause the loss of coastal wetlands.
- Preserve and enhance fishery habitat to offset impacts of structures (e.g., new gravel for spawning or nursery habitats).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Do not install structures in tidal marshes and freshwater streams flowing into coastal waters. If installation of new structures cannot be avoided, ensure they are designed to allow optimal fish passage and natural water circulation.
- Ensure hydrodynamics and sedimentation patterns are properly modeled and that the design avoids erosion to adjacent properties when hard shoreline stabilization is deemed necessary.

Release of contaminants

- Do not use materials that are treated with potentially harmful chemicals.

Aquatic Fill

Potential adverse impacts of aquatic fill

The following factors associated with aquatic fill can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, release of contaminants, and impacts to organisms. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Coastal EFH can sustain high levels of productivity and supports multiple life stages and species of fish and their prey; however, the placement of aquatic fill results in loss and alteration of EFH (Borde et al. 2003, Crain et al. 2009). Estuaries, tidal wetlands, and salt marshes are often developed for urban, agriculture, and shellfish aquaculture purposes (PNCERS 2003, Airoldi et al. 2008, Shellenbarger et al. 2013), potentially resulting in expansive losses and alterations of habitat in coastal EFH (Kennish 2001, Crain et al. 2009, Gedan et al. 2009). For example, coastal development has resulted in a net loss of 200,000 hectares of salt marsh in the San Francisco Estuary (Atwater et al. 1979), and over 90% of the Coos Bay salt marsh was drained and filled to develop and create the city of Coos Bay, Oregon (Hoffnagle and Olson 1974, Seliskar and Gallagher 1983).

Coastal EFH is permanently eliminated when areas such as estuaries, tidal wetlands, and salt marshes are filled in for development (Watzin and Gosselink 1992, Airoldi et al. 2008). Loss and alteration of coastal EFH can have adverse effects on factors that influence habitat suitability in adjacent EFH, such as water quality (e.g., hypoxia and anoxia; Orth et al. 2006). Furthermore, salt marshes and other natural coastal systems could help buffer coastal areas from climate-driven events that impact EFH (Shepard et al. 2011).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

By design, draining and filling of estuaries and marshes alters coastal hydrologic and geomorphologic processes. Placement of aquatic fill interferes with normal tidal flooding and drainage, mollifying overland water flow, decreasing sediment supply to the marsh surface, and arresting vertical accretion (Kennish 2001). The placement of fill within estuaries could threaten EFH by impeding tidal and freshwater inputs and nutrient transport (Crain et al. 2009), and by exacerbating land-based contamination of sediment (Valiela et al. 2004). Loss of hydrologic and geomorphologic functioning in coastal EFH caused by aquatic fill could also exacerbate the impacts of climate change on the coast (Ravit et al. 2015).

Release of contaminants

Placing fill within EFH can resuspend sediments into the water column that may have been contaminated by historical or ongoing activities (Scholz et al. 2012), exposing aquatic organisms to elevated concentrations of potentially harmful compounds (Duarte 2002, Edinger and Martin 2010). Salt marshes, in particular, are depositional by nature (Nixon 1980), and Leendertse et al. (1996) found that salt marshes are sinks for metal contamination. Metal contamination can have deleterious impacts on physiology and behavior of fish (Dethloff et al. 2001, Baldwin et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014), and filling of coastal EFH could exacerbate land-based contamination (Valiela et al. 2004, Verhoeven et al. 2006).

Impacts to organisms

Direct impacts to aquatic organisms caused by aquatic fill can have deleterious impacts on the food web. Sessile or semi-mobile aquatic organisms can be eliminated via entrainment or smothering (Larson and Moehl 1990, McGraw and Armstrong 1990, Barr 1993, Newall et al. 1998), decreasing the amount of detritus, an important food source for aquatic invertebrates (Mitsch and Gosselink 1993).

While many coastal and estuarine species are tolerant of a range of salinities, salinity regimes can become a significant stressor when altered due to the filling-in of coastal EFH (Crain et al. 2009). Changes in salinity can cause immediate mortality or sublethal stress, leading to shifts in community and ecosystem structure. Salmonids and other anadromous fishes are particularly sensitive to anthropogenic changes to the salinity regime because they often use estuaries as an intermediate environment during osmoregulation (Quinn 2005).

Potential conservation measures for aquatic fill

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of aquatic fill on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information and project-specific considerations may be developed prior to or during the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of aquatic fill on EFH.

General guidelines

- Do not place aquatic or other types of fill in riparian habitats, freshwater habitats, estuaries, and bays.
- Plan filling activities to avoid special aquatic sites such as native eelgrass beds. This may include the placement of pipes and anchoring of barges and other vessels associated with the project.
- Address cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future fill operations on aquatic habitats by considering them in the review process.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Require the use of multiple-season biological sampling data (both pre- and post-construction), when appropriate, to assess the potential and resultant impacts on certain habitat and aquatic organisms.
- Avoid or minimize loss or alteration of EFH habitat and implement compensatory mitigation as needed. For instance, seek funding for restoration or conservation of critical coastal EFH that may be affected by planned activities.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Utilize BMPs to limit and control the amount and extent of turbidity and sedimentation. Standard BMPs may include constructing silt fences, coffer dams, and operational modification (e.g., hydraulic dredge rather than mechanical dredge).
- Identify sources of sedimentation within the watershed that may exacerbate repetitious maintenance activities. Implement appropriate management techniques to control these sources.

Release of contaminants

- Do not use materials that are treated with toxic materials; instead, use natural, untreated materials.

Impacts to organisms

- Schedule fill activities when the fewest species and least-vulnerable life stages are present. Appropriate work windows can be established based on the multiple-season biological sampling. Recommended seasonal work windows are generally specific to regional or watershed-level environmental conditions and species requirements.
- Require the use of multiple-season biological sampling data (both pre- and post-construction), when appropriate, to assess the potential and resultant impacts on certain habitat and aquatic organisms.

Marine Debris

Potential adverse impacts of marine debris

The following factors associated with marine debris can impact EFH and are described briefly below: impacts to organisms and invasive organisms. Suggested conservation measures related to these factors are provided in the following section.

Impacts to organisms

Land-based marine debris includes raw or partially treated sewage, litter, plastics, hazardous materials (e.g., PAHs, paint, solvents), and discarded trash. Urban litter from stormwater overflows into coastal EFH and wastewater contains numerous toxins, including viral and bacterial pathogens, pharmaceutical by-products from human excretion, and pet wastes, all of which can pose physical and biological threats to EFH (Boesch et al. 1997). See also Chapter 4 and Chapter 17.

Size and type of debris can determine the impacts to EFH and aquatic communities. Impact pathways associated with marine debris include ingestion, entanglement, smothering/covering, and alteration of the benthic invertebrate community (Katsanevakis et al. 2007, Gregory 2009, Kuhn et al. 2015). Marine debris can also become snagged on and/or damage sensitive habitats, such as reefs (Carvalho-Souza et al. 2018). Entanglement and ingestion of marine debris, including derelict fishing nets, pots, and other gear, impact multiple organisms worldwide (Derraik 2002, Moore 2008, Doyle et al. 2012). Affected organisms inhabiting coastal EFH include filter-feeders, fish, turtles, seabirds, and marine mammals (Laist 1987).

Plastic pollution, ubiquitous throughout the marine environment, represents one of the most difficult current environmental challenges (UNEP 2011, Eriksen et al. 2014, Botterell et al. 2018). Smaller items, such as bottle caps, lighters, and plastic pieces, may be ingested or result in entanglement (NOAA 2013b). Large plastics tend to concentrate along coastal areas (Milliken and Lee 1990). However, a majority of plastic particles found on the ocean surface are less than 1 cm in diameter, enabling ingestion or entanglement by a wide range of organisms (Arthur et al. 2009, Cozar et al. 2014). Plastics also contain many toxins (Hammer et al. 2012), and when ingested can cause a wide range of deleterious effects through various physical and biochemical pathways, including internal wounds, endocrine system disruption, impairments to growth, gastrointestinal obstruction, potential starvation, and bioaccumulation in the food web (Gregory 2009, Rochman et al. 2013, 2014, Cozar et al. 2014, Talley et al. 2020, Provencher et al. 2017). Studies have indicated that certain species, including filter feeding Clupeiformes such as those managed under the Coastal Pelagic Species FMP, are likely more susceptible to plastic ingestion due to their gill structures and feeding behavior (Moore et al. 2001, Collard et al. 2017). Marine plastic pollution is a widespread problem that is likely having a cascading effect throughout the ecosystem, affecting multiple trophic levels (UNEP 2014, Tanaka and Takada 2016, Collard et al. 2017, Botterell et al. 2018, Markic et al. 2019, Talley et al. 2020).

Invasive organisms

Marine debris is the accumulation of persistent synthetic materials into the global oceans and seas (Derraik 2002, Gregory 2009). Marine debris, especially plastic (Hammer et al. 2012), can be hazardous to coastal organisms and EFH. The majority of plastic in the marine environment originates on land and is transported to coastal EFH through rivers, wastewater, wind, and public beaches (Ryan et al. 2009). Marine debris can also originate from the sea, transported by ocean currents from commercial fishing operations (derelict fishing nets and gear), freight and shipping, resource extraction facilities, recreational boating, and military vessels (Fanshawe and Everand 2002), and can also be derived from distant continents (NOAA 2013b).

Invasive species can be transported to coastal EFH by marine debris (Barnes 2002). Larger debris, such as plastic tarps and wood signs or panels, may contain invasive species (NOAA 2013b). Plastics are nonbiodegradable, can travel large distances, are widely distributed throughout the world's oceans, and provide hard surfaces for opportunistic colonizers (Thiel and Gutow 2005, Gregory 2009). Plastic marine debris can support vast microbial communities that can attach themselves at the point source, or in the open ocean (Zettler et al. 2013). Because pelagic plastics can be colonized by a variety of organisms (Gregory 2009), they can facilitate the transport and expansion of non-native species, including aggressive invasives, via increased rafting opportunities (Barnes 2002, Derraik 2002, Gregory 2009). Floating marine debris is transported to coastal EFH, enabling infiltration by these invasive organisms into coastal EFH (Gregory 2009). The potential for invasion by species from distant environments through the transport of marine debris was recently observed off the U.S. West Coast. Over 90 invasive species were observed in marine debris transported as a result of a major earthquake and tsunami that occurred in Japan (NOAA 2013b).

Potential conservation measures for marine debris

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of marine debris on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information and project-specific considerations may be developed prior to or during the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of marine debris on EFH.

General guidelines

- Require all existing and new commercial construction projects near the coast (e.g., marinas and ferry

terminals, recreational facilities, boat building and repair facilities) to develop and implement refuse disposal plans.
- Install barriers to catch floating debris in harbors, ports, and nearshore developments (Gregory 2009).
- Promote the use of biodegradable materials, when possible, especially in areas with tourism (Guo et al. 2009).
- Provide resources to the public on the impact of marine debris, and guidance on how to reduce or eliminate the problem.
- For projects that may discharge marine debris, implement compensatory mitigation as appropriate. Options that specifically address marine debris (e.g., preventive measures, removal efforts) warrant special consideration.

References

Airoldi, L., D. Balata, and M. W. Beck. 2008. The gray zone: Relationships between habitat loss and marine diversity and their applications in conservation. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 366:8–15.

Arthur, C., J. Baker, and H. Bamford, editors. 2009. Proceedings of the international research workshop on the occurrence, effects, and fate of microplastic marine debris. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS-OR&R-30.

Atwater, B. F., S. G. Conard, J. N. Dowden, C. W. Hedel, R. L. MacDonald, and W. Savage. 1979. History, landforms, and vegetation of the estuary's tidal marshes. Pages 347–385 *in* T. J. Conomos, A. E. Leviton, and M. Berson, editors. San Francisco Bay: The Urbanized Estuary, Investigations into the Natural History of San Francisco Bay and Delta with Reference to the Influence of Man. Pacific Division of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, San Francisco.

Baldwin, D. H., C. P. Tatara, and N. L. Scholz. 2011. Copper-induced olfactory toxicity in salmon and steelhead: Extrapolation across species and rearing environments. Aquatic Toxicology 101:295–297.

Barnes, D. K. A. 2002. Biodiversity: Invasions by marine life on plastic debris. Nature 416:808–809.

Barr, B. W. 1993. Environmental impacts of small boat navigation: Vessel/sediment interactions and management implications. Pages 1756–1770 *in* O. T. Magoon, editor. Coastal Zone 1993: Proceedings of the Eighth Symposium on Coastal and Ocean Management. American Shore and Beach Preservation Association, New Orleans, Louisiana.

Benfield, M. C., and T. J. Minello. 1996. Relative effects of turbidity and light intensity on reactive distance and feeding of an estuarine fish. Environmental Biology of Fish 46:211–216.

Boesch, D. F., D. M. Anderson, R. A. Horner, S. E. Shumway, P. A. Tester, and T. E. Whitledge. 1997. Harmful algal blooms in coastal waters: Options for prevention, control and mitigation. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series 10. NOAA Coastal Ocean Office, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Borde, A. B., R. M. Thom, S. Rumrill, and L. E. Miller. 2003. Geospatial habitat change analysis in Pacific Northwest coastal estuaries. Estuaries 26:1104–1116.

Boström, C., S. J. Pittman, C. Simenstad, and R. T. Kneib. 2011. Seascape ecology of coastal biogenic habitats: Advances, gaps, and challenges. Marine Ecology Progress Series 427:191–217.

Botterell, Z. L. R., N. Beaumont, T. Dorrington, M. Steinke, R. C. Thompson, and P. K. Lindeque. 2018. Bioavailability and effects of microplastics on marine zooplankton: A review. Environmental Pollution 245:98–110.

Breitburg, D. L. 1988. Effects of turbidity on prey consumption by striped bass larvae. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:72–77.

Bulleri, F., and M. G. Chapman. 2010. The introduction of coastal infrastructure as a driver of change in marine environments. Journal of Applied Ecology 47:26–35.

Carvalho-Souza, G. F., M. Llope, M. S. Tinôco, D. V. Medeiros, R. Maia-Nogueira, and C. L. S. Sampaio. 2018. Marine litter disrupts ecological processes in reef systems. Marine Pollution Bulletin 133:464–471.

CDBW (California Department of Boating and Waterways) and State Coastal Conservancy. 2002. California Beach Restoration Study. State Coastal Conservancy, Sacramento, California.

Cheney, D., R. Oestman, G. Volkhardt, and J. Getz. 1994. Creation of rocky intertidal and shallow subtidal habitats to mitigate for the construction of a large marina in Puget Sound, Washington. Bulletin of Marine Science 55:772–782.

Cloern, J. E. 1987. Turbidity as a control on phytoplankton biomass and productivity in estuaries. Continental Shelf Research 7:1367–1381.

Cohen, A. N., L. H. Harris, B. L. Bingham, J. T. Carlton, J. W. Chapman, C. C. Lambert, G. Lambert, J. C. Ljubenkov, S. N. Murray, L. C. Rao, K. Reardon, and E. Schwindt. 2002. Project Report for the Southern California Exotics Expedition 2000: A Rapid Assessment Survey of Exotic Species in Sheltered Coastal Waters. San Francisco Estuary Institute, Richmond, California

Collard, F., B. Gilbert, G. Eppe, L. Roos, P. Compere, K. Das, and E. Parmentier. 2017. Morphology of the filtration apparatus of three planktivorous fishes and relation with ingested anthropogenic particles. Marine Pollution Bulletin 116:182–191.

Colosio, F., M. Abbiati, and L. Airoldi. 2007. Effects of beach nourishment on sediments and benthic assemblages. Marine Pollution Bulletin 54:1197–1206.

Cozar, A., F. Echevarria, J. I. Gonzalez-Gordillo, X. Irigoien, B. Ubeda, S. Hernandez-Leon, A. T. Palma, S. Navarro, J. Garcia de Lomas, A. Ruiz, M. L. Fernandez de Puelles, and C. M. Duarte. 2014. Plastic debris in the open ocean. Proceedings of the National Academy of Science 111:10239–10244.

Craig, C., S. Wylie-Echeverria, E. Carrington, and D. Shafer. 2008. Short-term sediment burial effects on the seagrass *Phyllospadix scouleri*. ERDC TN-EMRRP-EI-03. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Crain, C. M., B. S. Halpern, M. W. Beck, and C. V. Kappel. 2009. Understanding and managing human threats to the coastal marine environment. Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences 1162:39–62.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1982. Photosynthetic responses of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) to in situ manipulations of light-intensity. Oecologia 55:137–144.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1985. Role of daily light period in the depth distribution of *Zostera marina* (eelgrass). Marine Ecology Progress Series 25:51–61.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1986. Photoadaptation and growth of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) transplants along a depth gradient. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 98:265–282.

Derraik, J. G. B. 2002. The pollution of the marine environment by plastic debris: A review. Marine Pollution Bulletin 44:842–852.

Dethloff, G. M., H. C. Bailey, and K. J. Maier. 2001. Effects of dissolved copper on select hematological, biochemical, and immunological parameters of wild rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40:371–380.

Downing, J. 1983. The coast of Puget Sound: Its processes and development. Washington Sea Grant Program. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Doyle, M. J., W. Watson, N. M. Bowlin, and S. B. Sheavly. 2012. Plastic particles in coastal pelagic ecosystems of the northeast Pacific Ocean. Marine Environmental Research 71:41–52.

Duarte, C. M. 2002. The future of seagrass meadows. Environmental Conservation 29:192–206.

Dugan, J. E., L. Airoldi, M. G. Chapman, S. J. Walker, T. Schlacher, E. Wolanski, and D. McLusky. 2011. 8.02 - Estuarine and coastal structures: Environmental Effects, A Focus on Shore and Nearshore Structures. Pages 17–41 *in* M. J. Kennish and M. Elliott, Treatise on Estuarine and Coastal Science, volume 8: Human-Induced Problems (Uses and Abuses). DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-374711-2.00802-0

Edinger, J. E., and J. L. Martin. 2010. Effects of the addition of multi-slip docks on reservoir flushing and water quality: Hydrodynamic modeling; aquatic impact; regulatory limits. The Journal of Transdisciplinary Environmental Studies 9:15.

Ely, E., and L. O. Viani. 2008. Anthropogenic impacts on San Francisco Bay and its subtidal habitat. Appendix 1–3 to Subtidal Habitat Goals Report. Available: www.sfbaysubtidal.org/PDFS/Ap1-3%20Anthropogenic%20Alterations.pdf (September 2022).

Eriksen, M. L., C. M. Lebreton, H. S. Carson, M. Thiel, C. J. Moore, J. C. Borerro, F. Galgani, P. G. Ryan, and J. Reisser. 2014. Plastic pollution in the world's oceans: More than 5 trillion plastic pieces weighing over 250,000 tons afloat at sea. PLOS ONE 9(12):e111913.

Fanshawe, T., and M. Everand. 2002. The impacts of marine litter. Report of the Marine Litter Task Team (MaLiTT). Marine Pollution Monitoring Management Group. Available: www.academia.edu/8439208/The_Impacts_of_Marine_Litter (September 2022).

Feist, B. E., E. R. Buhle, P. Arnold, J. W. Davis, and N. L. Scholtz. 2011. Landscape ecotoxicology of coho salmon spawner mortality in urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e23424.

Flick, R. E. 1993. The myth and reality of southern California beaches. Shore and Beach 61:3–13.

Fowler, A. M., and D. J. Booth. 2013. Seasonal dynamics of fish assemblages on breakwaters and natural rocky reefs in a temperate estuary: Consistent assemblage differences driven by sub-adults. PLOS ONE 8(9):e75790.

Froeschke, J. T., L. G. Allen, and D. J. Pondella II. 2005. The reef fish assemblage of the outer Los Angeles federal breakwater, 2002–2003. Southern California Academy of Sciences 104:63–74.

Galst, C. J., and T. W. Anderson. 2008. Fish-habitat associations and the role of disturbance in surfgrass beds. Marine Ecology Progress Series 365:177–186.

Gedan, K. B., B. R. Silliman, and M. D. Bertness. 2009. Centuries of human-driven change in salt marsh ecosystems. Annual Review of Marine Science 1(1):117–141.

Gedan, K. B., M. L. Kirwan, E. Wolanski, E. B. Barbier, and B. R. Silliman. 2011. The present and the future of coastal wetland vegetation in protecting shorelines: Answering challenges to the paradigm. Climate Change 106:7–29.

Greene, K. 2002. Beach nourishment: A review of the biological and physical impacts. Habitat Management Series 7. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Gregory, M. R. 2009. Environmental implications of plastic debris in marine settings—entanglement, ingestion, smothering, hangers-on, hitch-hiking, and alien invasions. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society 364:2013–2025.

Griggs, G. B., K. Patsch, and L. Savoy. 2005. Living with the changing California coast. University of California Press, Berkeley, California.

Guo, X., S. Cui, T. Lin, and Y. Song. 2009. The ecological risk assessment of the Chinese white dolphins in Xiamen coastal waters. Aquatic Ecosystem Health and Management Society 14:298–304.

Hammer, J., M. H. S. Kraak, and J. R. Parsons. 2012. Plastics in the marine environment: The dark side of a modern gift. Reviews in Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 220:1–44.

Hapke, C. J., D. Reid, B. M. Richmond, P. Ruggiero, and J. List. 2006. National assessment of shoreline change part 3: Historical shoreline change and associated coastal land loss along sandy shorelines of the California Coast. U.S. Geological Survey Open-file Report 2006-1219. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia.

Hoffnagle, J., and R. Olson. 1974. The salt marshes of the Coos Bay Estuary. Special Report. University of Oregon, Charleston, Oregon.

Huff, T. M., and J. K. Jarrett. 2007. Sand addition alters the invertebrate community of intertidal coralline turf. Marine Ecology Progress Series 345:75–82.

Hughes, A. R., S. L. Williams, C. M. Duarte, K. L. Heck, and M. Waycott. 2009. Associations of concern: Declining seagrasses and threatened dependent species. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 7:242–246.

Inman, D. L., and S. A. Jenkins. 1999. Climate change and the episodicity of sediment flux of small California rivers. The Journal of Geology 107:251–270.

Jackson, N. L., K. F. Nordstrom, S. Saini, and D. R. Smith. 2010. Effects of nourishment on the form and function of an estuarine beach. Ecological Engineering 36:1709–1718.

Kana, T. W. 1988. Beach erosion in South Carolina. Report SCSG-SP-88-1. South Carolina Sea Grant Consortium, Charleston, South Carolina. Available: repository.library.noaa.gov/view/noaa/43346/ (September 2022).

Katsanevakis, S., G. Verriopoulos, A. Nicolaidou, and M. Thessalou-Legaki. 2007. Effect of marine litter on the benthic megafauna of coastal soft bottoms: A manipulative field experiment. Marine Pollution Bulletin 54:771–778.

Kennish, M. J. 2001. Coastal salt marsh systems in the U.S.: A review of anthropogenic impacts. Journal of Coastal Research 17:731–748.

Kondolf, G. M. 1997. Hungry water: Effects of dams and gravel mining on river channels. Environmental Management 21:533–551.

Kühn S., E. L. Bravo Rebolledo, and J. A. van Franeker. 2015. Deleterious effects of litter on marine life. Pages 75–116 *in* M. Bergmann, L. Gutow, and M. Klages, editors. Marine Anthropogenic Litter. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands. Available: library.oapen.org/bitstream/handle/20.500.12657/28030/1001966.pdf (September 2022).

Laist, D. W. 1987. Overview of the biological effects of lost and discarded plastic debris in the marine environment. Marine Pollution Bulletin 18:319–326.

Lake, R. G., and S. G. Hinch. 1999. Acute effects of suspended sediment angularity on juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56:862–867.

Larson, K., and C. E. Moehl. 1990. Entrainment of anadromous fish by hopper dredge at the mouth of the Columbia River. Pages 102–112 *in* C. A. Simenstad, Jr., editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific Coast fishes. Workshop Proceedings, 8–9 September 1988. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington, Seattle.

Leendertse, P. C., M. C. T. Scholten, and J. T. Van Der Wal. 1996. Fate and effects of nutrients and heavy metals in experimental salt marsh ecosystems. Environmental Pollution 94:9–29.

Macneale, K. H., P. M. Kiffney, and N. L. Scholz. 2010. Pesticides, aquatic food webs, and the conservation of Pacific salmon. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 8:475–482.

Manning, L. M., C. H. Peterson, and M. J. Bishop. 2014. Dominant macrobenthic populations experience sustained impacts from annual disposal of fine sediments on sand beaches. Marine Ecology Progress Series 508:1–15.

Markic, A., J. Gaertner, N. Gaertner-Mazouini, and A. A. Koelmans. 2019. Plastic ingestion by marine fish in the wild. Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology 50:657–697.

McGraw, K., and D. Armstrong. 1990. Fish entrainment by dredges in Grays Harbor, Washington. Pages 113–131 *in* C. A. Simenstad, Jr., editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific coast fishes. Workshop Proceedings, 8–9 September 1988. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington, Seattle.

McIntyre, J. K., D. H. Baldwin, D. A. Beauchamp, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Low-level copper exposures increase visibility and vulnerability of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout predators. Ecological Applications 22:1460–1471.

McLachlan, A., and A. C. Brown. 2006. Ecology of sandy shores, 2nd edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Milliken, A. S., and V. Lee. 1990. Pollution impacts from recreational boating: A bibliography and summary review. Publication RIU-G-002. Rhode Island Sea Grant, Narragansett, Rhode Island.

Mitsch, W. J., and J. G. Gosselink. 1993. Wetlands, 2nd edition. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

Moore, C. J. 2008. Synthetic polymers in the marine environment: A rapidly increasing, long-term threat. Environmental Research 108:131–139.

Moore, C. J., S. L. Moore, M. K. Leecaster, and S. B. Weisberg. 2001. A comparison of plastic and plankton in the North Pacific Central Gyre. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42:1297–1300.

Morley, S. A., J. D. Toft, and K. M. Hanson. 2012. Ecological effects of shoreline armoring on intertidal habitats of a Puget Sound urban estuary. Estuaries and Coasts 35:774–784.

Munsch, S. H., J. R. Cordell, J. D. Toft, and E. E. Morgan. 2014. Effects of seawalls and piers on fish assemblages and juvenile salmon feeding behavior. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 34:814–827.

Munsch, S. H., J. R. Cordell, and J. D. Toft. 2015. Effects of shoreline engineering on shallow subtidal fish and crab communities in an urban estuary: A comparison of armored shorelines and nourished beaches. Ecological Engineering 81:312–320.

Nelson, W. G. 1993. Beach restoration in the Southeastern US: Environmental effects and biological monitoring. Ocean Coastal Management 19:157–182.

Newall, R. C., L. J. Seiderer, and D. R. Hitchcock. 1998. The impact of dredging on biological resources of the seabed. Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review 336:127–178.

Newcombe, C. P., and J. O. Jensen. 1996. Channel suspended sediment and fisheries: A synthesis for quantitative assessment of risk and impact. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 16:693–727.

Nixon, S. W. 1980. Between coastal marshes and coastal waters—a review of twenty years of speculation and research on the role of salt marshes in estuarine productivity and water chemistry. Pages 437–523 *in* P. Hamilton and K. MacDonald, editors. Estuarine and Wetland Processes. Plenum Publishing Corporation, New York.

NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration). 2013a. National Coastal Population Report: Population trends from 1970 to 2020. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, Maryland.

NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration). 2013b. Severe marine debris event report: Japan tsunami marine debris. Overview and Update to Congress. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Nordstrom, K. F. 2005. Beach nourishment and coastal habitats: Research needs to improve compatibility. Restoration Ecology 13:215–222.

Nordstrom, K. F. 2014. Living with shore protection structures: A review. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 150:11–23.

Noujas, V., K. V. Thomas, L. S. Nair, T. S. S. Hameed, K. O. Badarees, and N. R. Ajeesh. 2014. Management of shoreline morphological changes consequent to breakwater construction. Indian Journal of Geo-Marine Sciences 43:54–61.

Orth, R. J., T. J. B. Carruthers, W. C. Dennison, C. M. Duarte, J. W. Fourqurean, K. L. Heck, Jr., A. R. Hughes, G. A. Kendrick, W. J. Kenworthy, S. Olyarnik, F. T. Short, M. Waycott, and S. L. William. 2006. A global crisis for seagrass ecosystems. Bioscience 56:987–996.

Osborn, D., A. Datta, and T. I. Anjan. 2006. Institutional and policy cocktails for protecting coastal and marine environments from land-based sources of pollution. Ocean and Coastal Management 49:576–596.

Ownby, D. R., M. C. Newman, M. Mulvey, W. K. Vogelbein, M. A. Unger, and L. F. Arzayus. 2002. Fish (*Fundulus heteroclitus*) populations with different exposure histories differ in tolerance of creosote-contaminated sediments. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 21:1897–1902.

Patsch, K., and G. Griggs. 2007. Development of sand budgets for California's major littoral cells. University of California, Santa Cruz, California.

Peterson, C. H., and M. J. Bishop. 2005. Assessing the environmental impacts of beach nourishment. BioScience 55:887–896.

Peterson, C. H., D. H. M. Hickerson, and G. G. Johnson. 2000. Short-term consequences of nourishment and bulldozing on the dominant large invertebrates of a sandy beach. Journal of Coastal Research 16:368–378.

Peterson, C. H., and L. Manning. 2001. How beach nourishment affects the habitat value of intertidal beach prey for surf fish and shorebirds and why uncertainty still exists. Proceedings of the Coastal Ecosystems and Federal Activities Technical Training Symposium, August 20–22, 2001. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Atlanta, Georgia.

Pilkey, O. H., and K. L. Dixon. 1996. The Corps and the shore. Island Press, Washington, D.C.

PNCERS (Pacific Northwest Coastal Ecosystem Regional Study). 2003. Estuary management in the Pacific Northwest. ORESU-H-03-001. Oregon Sea Grant, Corvallis, Oregon.

Provencher, J. F., A. L. Bond, S. Avery-Gomm, S. B. Borrelle, E. L. Bravo Rebolledo, S. Hammer, S. Kühn, J. L. Lavers, M. L. Mallory, A. Trevail, and J. A. van Franeker. 2017. Quantifying ingested debris in marine megafauna: A review and recommendations for standardization. Analytical Methods 9:1454–1469.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Quinn, T., K. Krueger, K. Pierce, D. Penttila, K. Perry, T. Hicks, and D. Lowry. 2012. Patterns of surf smelt, *Hypomesus pretiosus*, intertidal spawning habitat use in Puget Sound, Washington State. Estuaries and Coasts 35:1213–1228.

Ravit, B., J. S. Weis, and D. Rounds. 2015. Is urban marsh sustainability compatible with the Clean Water Act? Environmental Practice 17:1–11.

Rice, C. A. 2006. Effects of shoreline modification in northern Puget Sound: Beach microclimate and embryo survival in summer spawning surf smelt (*Hypomesus pretiosus*). Estuaries and Coasts 29:63–71.

Rochman, C. M., T. Kurobe, I. Flores, and S. J. Teh. 2014. Early warning signs of endocrine disruption in adult fish from the ingestion of polyethylene with and without sorbed chemical pollutants from the marine environment. The Science of the Total Environment 493:656–661.

Rochman C. M., E. Hoh, T. Kurobe, and S. J. Teh. 2013. Ingested plastic transfers contaminants to fish and induces hepatic stress. Scientific Reports 3:3263.

Román-Sierra, J., J. J. Muñoz-Perez, and M. Navarro-Pons. 2014. Beach nourishment effects on sand porosity variability. 2014. Coastal Engineering 83:221–232.

Romanuk, T. N., and C. D. Levings. 2003. Associations between arthropods and the supralittoral ecotone: Dependence of aquatic and terrestrial taxa on riparian vegetation. Environmental Entomology 32:1343–1353.

Rossell, L., and P. Dinnel. 2006. Temperature and shading effects on surf smelt, *Hypomesus pretiosus*, egg survival. Western Washington University, Anacortes, Washington.

Ryan, P. G., C. J. Moore, J. A. van Franeker, and C. L. Moloney. 2009. Monitoring the abundance of plastic debris in the marine environment. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society 364:1999–2012.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2998–3004.

Scapini, F. 2014. Behaviour of mobile macrofauna is a key factor in beach ecology as response to rapid environmental changes. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 150:36–44.

Scavia, D., J. C. Field, D. F. Boesch, R. W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D. R. Cayam, M. Fogarty, M. A. Harwell, R. W. Howarth, C. Mason, D. J. Reed, T. C. Boyer, A. H. Sallenger, and J. G. Titus. 2002. Climate change impacts on US coastal and marine ecosystems. Estuaries and Coasts 25:149–164.

Scholz, N. L., M. S. Myers, S. G. McCarthy, J. S. Labenia, J. K. McIntyre, G. M. Ylitalo, L. D. Rhodes, C. A. Laetz, C. M. Stehr, B. L. French, B. McMillan, D. Wilson, L. Reed, K. D. Lynch, S. Damm, J. W. Davis, and T. K. Collier. 2011. Recurrent die-offs of adult coho salmon returning to spawn in Puget Sound lowland urban streams. PLOS ONE 6:e28013.

Scholz, N. L., M. S. Myers, S. G. McCarthy, J. S. Labenia, J. K. McIntyre, G. M. Ylitalo, L. D. Rhodes, C. A. Laetz, C. M. Stehr, B. L. French, B. McMillan, D. Wilson, L. Reed, K. D. Lynch, S. Damm, J. W. Davis, and T. K. Collier. 2011. Recurrent die-offs of adult coho salmon returning to spawn in Puget Sound lowland urban streams. PLOS ONE 6(12):e28013.

Seliskar, D. M., and J. L. Gallagher. 1983. The ecology of tidal marshes of the Pacific Northwest coast: A community profile. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Report FWS/OBS-82/32. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

Shafer, D. J. 1999. The effects of dock shading on the seagrass *Holodule wrightii* in Perdido Bay, Alabama. Estuaries 22:936–943.

Shellenbarger, G. G., S. A. Wright, and D. H. Schoellhamer. 2013. A sediment budget for the southern reach in San Francisco Bay, CA: Implications for habitat restoration. Marine Geology 345:281–293.

Shepard, C. C., C. M. Crain, and M. W. Beck. 2011. The protective role of coastal marshes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. PLOS ONE 6:e27374.

Simenstad, C. A. 1983. The ecology of estuarine channels of the Pacific Northwest coast: A community profile. FWS/OBS-83/05. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

Sobocinski, K. L. 2003. The impact of armoring on supratidal beach fauna of Central Puget Sound. University of Washington, Seattle.

Sobocinski, K. L., J. R. Cordell, and C. A. Simenstad. 2010. Effects of shoreline modifications on supratidal macroinvertebrate fauna on Puget Sound, Washington beaches. Estuaries and Coasts 33:699–711.

Sovová, T., D. Boyle, K. A. Sloman, C. Vanegas Perez, and R. D. Handy. 2014. Impaired behavioural response to alarm substance in rainbow trout exposed to copper nanoparticles. Aquatic Toxicology 152:195–204.

Speybroeck, J., D. Bonte, W. Courtens, T. Gheskiere, P. Grootaert, J. P. Maelfait, M. Mathys, S. Provost, K. Sabbe, E. W. M. Stienen, V. Van Lancker, M. Vinex, and S. Degraer. 2006. Beach nourishment: An ecologically sound coastal defense alternative? A review. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 16:419–435.

Stamski, R. 2005. The impacts of coastal protection structures in California's Monterey National Marine Sanctuary. Marine Sanctuaries Conservation Series MSD-05–3. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Talley, T. S., N. Venuti, and R. Whelan. 2020. Natural history matters: Plastics in estuarine fish and sediments at the mouth of an urban watershed. PLOS ONE 15(3):e0229777.

Tanaka, K., and Takada, H. 2016. Microplastic fragments and microbeads in digestive tracts of planktivorous fish from urban coastal waters. Scientific Reports 6:34351.

Taylor, D. S. 2012. Removing the sands (sins?) of our past: Dredge spoil removal and saltmarsh restoration along the Indian River Lagoon, Florida (USA). Wetlands Ecology and Management 20:213–218.

Thiel, M., and L. Gutow. 2005. The ecology of rafting in the marine environment. II. The rafting organisms and community. Oceanography and Marine Biology: An Annual Review 43:279–418.

Thom, R. M. 1987. The biological importance of Pacific Northwest estuaries. Northwest Environmental Journal 3:21–42.

Toft, J. D., J. R. Cordell, C. A. Simenstad, and L. A. Stamatiou. 2007. Fish distribution, abundance, and behavior along city shoreline types in Puget Sound. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:465–480.

Tonnes, D. M. 2008. Ecological functions of marine riparian areas and driftwood along north Puget Sound shorelines. Master's thesis. University of Washington, Seattle.

Turner, T. 1985. Stability of rocky intertidal surfgrass beds: Persistence, preemption and recovery. Ecology 66:83–92.

UNEP (United Nations Environmental Programme). 2011. UNEP year book: Emerging issues in our global environment. United Nations Environmental Programme, Nairobi, Kenya.

UNEP (United Nations Environmental Programme). 2014. UNEP year book: Emerging issues in our global environment. United Nations Environmental Programme, Nairobi, Kenya.

USACE (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers). 2014. Dredged material evaluation and disposal procedures. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2005. National management measures to control nonpoint source pollution from urban areas. EPA-841-B-05-004. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

Valiela, I., D. Rutecki, and S. Fox. 2004. Salt marshes: Biological controls of food webs in a diminishing environment. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 300:131–159.

Vanden Eede, S., J. Van Tomme, C. De Busschere, M. L. Vandegehuchte, K. Sabbe, E. W. M. Stienen, S. Degraer, M. Vincx, and D. Bonte. 2014. Assessing the impact of beach nourishment on the intertidal food web through the development of a mechanistic-envelope model. Journal of Applied Ecology 51:1304–1313.

Verhoeven, J. T. A., B. Arheimer, C. Yin, and M. M. Hefting. 2006. Regional and global concerns over wetlands and water quality. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 21:96–103.

Viola, S. M., D. M. Hubbard, J. E. Dugan, and N. K. Schooler. 2014. Burrowing inhibition by fine textured beach fill: Implications for recovery of beach ecosystems. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 150:142–148.

Warrick, J. A. 2013. Dispersal of fine sediment in nearshore coastal waters. Journal of Coastal Research 29:579–596.

Watzin, M. C., and J. G. Gosselink. 1992. The fragile fringe: Coastal wetlands of the continental United States. Louisiana Sea Grant Program, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, Louisiana. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Rockville, Maryland.

Wehkamp, S., and P. Fischer. 2013. Impact of coastal defence structures (tetrapods) on a demersal hard-bottom fish community in the southern North Sea. Marine Environmental Research 83:82–92.

Wen, C. K. C., M. S. Pratchett, K. T. Shao, K. P. Kan, and B. K. K. Chan. 2010. Effects of habitat modification on coastal fish assemblages. Journal of Fish Biology 77:1674–1687.

Wiegel, R. L. 1994. Ocean beach nourishment on the USA Pacific coast. Shore and Beach 62:11–36.

Wilber, D. H., and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Biological effects of suspended sediments: A review of suspended sediment impacts on fish and shellfish with relation to dredging activities in estuaries. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21:855–875.

Young, A. P., and S. A. Ashford. 2006. Application of airborne LIDAR for seacliff volumetric change and beach sediment budget contributions. Journal of Coastal Research 22:307–318.

Zettler, E. R., T. J. Mincer, and L. A. Amaral-Zettler. 2013. Life in the “plastisphere”: Microbial communities on plastic marine debris. Environmental Science and Technology 47:7137–7146.

Zimmerman, R. C. 2006. Light and photosynthesis in seagrass meadows. Pages 303–321 *in* A. W. D. Larkum, R. J. Orth, and C. M. Duarte, editors. Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology, and Conservation. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

14. Dredging

Potential Adverse Impacts of Dredging

The following factors associated with dredging can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, entrainment, and noise effects. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Dredging causes loss and alteration of important marine and freshwater EFH (Newell et al. 1998, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Thrush and Dayton 2002, Drabble 2012a). Historically, dredged material was used to fill wetland, salt marshes, and tidal flats for development. However, filling wetlands reduces or eliminates their ecological functionality of reducing flooding, filtering nutrients, and providing critical rearing habitat for a variety of aquatic species (Taylor 2012). Thus, dredging and filling of wetlands causes severe impacts to EFH that are not easily mitigated (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Taylor 2012, Reine et al. 2013).

Dredging can reduce aquatic biodiversity (Thrush and Dayton 2002) and eliminate important food sources (Bilkovic 2011), impacting the food web for years (Gilkinson et al. 2005, Mearns et al. 2012). Recovery rates in dredged areas vary temporally, spatially, and by organism (Kennish 1997) based on differences in life stage, physiology, and behavior of organisms (Gilkinson et al. 2005); size of substrate (Reish 1961, McCauley et al. 1977, Oliver et al. 1977, Thrush et al. 1995, Currie and Parry 1996, Tuck et al. 1998, Watling et al. 2001, Gilkinson et al. 2005, Fischer et al. 2012); and currents (Oliver et al. 1977).

Dredging can eliminate vegetated habitat features, such as eelgrass beds, that provide critical rearing habitat for a variety of fish species (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005). Eelgrass beds are particularly vulnerable to dredging because they are difficult to map, and recolonization could be limited if the bottom sediments become destabilized or composition is altered (Thayer et al. 1984). However, even after bottom sediments stabilize, channel deepening could reduce light needed for recolonization of eelgrass and other aquatic macrophytes (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Dredging has impacts on hydrology and geomorphology in freshwater (Kondolf 1994, Poole et al. 2006, Bellmore et al. 2012) and marine EFH (Meire et al. 2005). Specifically, dredging can impact water circulation, currents, and flow velocity, all of which impact geomorphological processes that form EFH (Lisle et al. 1993, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Pereyra et al. 2014).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

Excessive transport or deposition of fine sediment can impact organisms inhabiting EFH. For fish, increased fine sediment can reduce reproductive success (Suedel et al. 2008), fill interstitial spaces in spawning gravels (Bjornn and Reiser 1991), and damage or clog gill membranes (Lake and Hinch 1999), ultimately reducing EFH (Cederholm and Reid 1987, Hicks et al. 1991, Smith and Wegner 2001). Increased sediment can also alter distribution (Culp et al. 1986), abundance, and composition of invertebrates (Waters 1995), and can lead to reduced feeding (Bricelj and Malouf 1984), respiration (Grant and Thorpe 1991), condition, survival, reproduction (Cake 1983), and development rate of higher trophic levels (Mullholland 1984).

Turbidity, which is partly influenced by suspended sediment loads, reduces light availability, thereby altering visibility and habitat conditions, impacting aquatic food webs in EFH. Many fish are visual predators, and visibility is thus important for foraging (Able et al. 1998) and avoiding predators (Helfman 1981, Tabor et al. 2011). Increased turbidity can impair predator avoidance of fish (Sigler et al. 1988). Conversely, feeding on invertebrates and other prey may increase (Gregory 1993), while predation by piscivores could decrease (Gregory and Levings 1998) in moderately turbid water. It is important to note that the duration and timing of exposure to increased suspended sediments could significantly alter the degree of impact on fish inhabiting EFH (Newcombe and MacDonald 1991).

Light availability influences depth distribution, density, and productivity of eelgrass and other aquatic macrophytes, an important structural feature in nearshore EFH (Dennison and Alberte 1982, Dennison and Alberte 1985, Dennison and Alberte 1986, Zimmerman 2006). Large sediment plumes caused by dredging (Suedel et al. 2008) can reduce light penetration, causing reduced growth and survival of eelgrass (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996, Schiel et al. 2006, Mumford 2007, Moore et al. 2012). Slight reductions in light availability can also result in lower rates of photosynthesis for phytoplankton (Cloern 1987), ultimately resulting in less energy supporting food webs comprising EFH.

Release of contaminants

Sediments act as a sink for contaminants in the aquatic environments. When resuspended, particulate-bound contaminants may be remobilized into the water column where they impact EFH and exhibit toxicological effects on invertebrate and fish species. Benthic habitats adjacent to industrial and urban centers can be contaminated with heavy metals, organochlorine compounds, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), petroleum hydrocarbons, and other substances known to have negative effects on aquatic organisms (Kennish 1997, Brown et al. 1998, Kennish 2002, Islam and Tanaka 2004). Sediments in estuaries downstream from agricultural or urban/suburban residential areas may also contain herbicides and pesticides (NMFS 1997). The effects of these compounds can range from sublethal (e.g., reduced growth or feeding) to lethal depending on type of contaminant, route of exposure, ambient conditions, species, life stage, and body size (Poston 2001, Brinkmann et al. 2013). For example, PAHs have been reported to cause cancer, reproductive anomalies, immune dysfunction, impaired growth and development, and other impairments in fish when present in sufficiently high concentrations over long periods of time (Poston 2001, Johnson et al. 2008, Meador 2008, Spearow et al. 2011, Collier et al. 2014).

Current standards are based on toxicity to benthic invertebrates, so while they may protect against impacts to the fish prey base, they are not necessarily protective of fish (e.g., see Johnson et al. 2002 and Meador et al. 2002).

This is especially true for contaminants such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), which are metabolized to mutagenic and carcinogenic intermediates in fish, but to a much lesser extent in invertebrates (see Varanasi 1989 or Meador 2008).

Entrainment

Dredging entrainment can have significant effects on fish populations (McGraw and Armstrong 1990, Boysen and Hoover 2009, Drabble 2012a,b). Dredging entrainment is the uptake and trapping of aquatic organisms by the dredge suction (Reine and Clarke 1998) or clamshell. Depending on the operation, each life stage of fish may be at risk of injury or death by dredge entrainment (Buell 1992). In many cases, important food sources can also be significantly reduced or eliminated by entrainment (Van der Veer et al. 1985, Newell et al. 1998, Boysen and Hoover 2009). Furthermore, by removing or displacing native species and severely disturbing EFH, dredging may provide opportunities for colonization of invasive species (Vitousek et al. 1997, Minchinton and Bertness 2003, Strecker and Olden 2014).

Entrainment rates for invertebrates vary based on machinery, habitat, season, and size of organism (Armstrong et al. 1982, Larson 1989). Where vulnerable, impacts on invertebrates can be significant and may extend at least 100 m from the site of dredging (McCauley et al. 1977).

Noise effects

Dredging equipment and dredging-related activities generate underwater sound pressure waves that may adversely affect EFH. Sources of these underwater sounds originate from vessel propellers, pumps, generators, and from dredge buckets and dragheads coming in contact with the substrate (Clarke et al. 2002, Dickerson et al. 2001). Sound recordings during dredging operations documented increases above background noise levels as far as 1.2 km from the source, and peak sound pressures of 175 decibels (Reine et al. 2014). Injuries associated directly with noise produced by dredging are poorly studied, but effects of similar noises include avoidance of the affected area, increased stress, and temporary shifts in hearing thresholds (Hastings and Popper 2005). Shifts in hearing thresholds may result from exposure to low levels of sound for a relatively long period of time or exposure to high levels of sound for shorter periods (Scholik and Yan 2002, Liu et al. 2013). Threshold shifts can impact a fish's ability to carry out its life functions, such as locating food, mates, or predators.

Potential Conservation Measures for Dredging

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dredging on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help operators avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of dredging on EFH.

General guidelines

- Do not dredge in or near sensitive EFH such as spawning grounds, eelgrass beds, or habitats that support important rearing or spawning habitats and prey sources for fish.

- Perform dredging only during periods that have the least impact on fish and food webs. Establish areal extent and timing guidelines in cooperation with local, state, tribal, and federal fish biologists. Make every effort to dredge only to the authorized depth, using deeper, single-day events rather than shallower, multiple-day events.
- Use only hydraulic dredges and allow no overflow.
- When using a mechanical dredge, increase cycle time and reduce bucket deployment.
- Conduct pre-dredging site sampling and analyses to predict cumulative effects of existing and proposed dredging operations on EFH and organisms. Include all impacts to EFH as part of the permitting process, mitigate for all adverse effects, and monitor mitigation effectiveness.
- Use alternative dredge material disposal options (e.g., upland disposal), and recycle dredged material for beneficial use opportunities.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Do not place pipelines and accessory equipment used in conjunction with dredging operations close to sensitive EFH and Habitat Areas of Particular Concern (HAPC)—e.g., kelp beds, eelgrass beds, estuarine/salt marshes, etc.
- Do not directly remove or bury habitat features. In cases where features are removed or buried, the operator must mitigate these losses to EFH.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Avoid new dredging projects. Activities that would likely require dredging (such as placement of piers, docks, marinas, etc.) should instead be sited in deeper-water areas or designed to alleviate the need for maintenance dredging. New projects should only be permitted for water-dependent purposes, and only when no feasible alternatives are possible.

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

- Use equipment that generates the least amount of sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity (e.g., environmental buckets instead of excavators).
- Use BMPs, such as the establishing riparian area buffers, to help reduce and control sediment input.
- Make every effort to avoid dredging very fine sediments, such as silt. In general, the finest substrate dredged should be sand (>80% sand).
- Implement light monitoring at treatment (within adjacent EFH) and control sites (area outside of dredging influence) during dredging.
- Incorporate adequate control measures to minimize turbidity where the dredging equipment used is expected to create significant turbidity, especially where effects may be long-lasting (>1 day).
- Explore collaborative approaches between material management planners, pollution control agencies, and others involved in watershed planning to identify point and nonpoint sources of sediment and sediment pollution associated with dredging.
- Have a plan for barge dewatering at the dredge site.
- Make a turbidity monitoring plan.

Release of contaminants

- Monitor sediment contamination levels during dredging and report all effects, preferably in real time. If contamination

is acute, re-evaluate dredging methodology and require methods that do not release contaminants.
- Using best available science, develop procedures for disposal of dredged material that protect EFH and organisms from contaminants.

Entrainment

- Design and implement dredging suction mechanisms that minimize or eliminate entrainment or impingement of fish and their prey sources.

Noise effects

- Clearly report predicted noise levels that will occur during dredging activities.
- Sample and monitor noise levels in real time during dredging activities. If noise levels surpass accepted thresholds for aquatic organisms, cease operations and implement alternative methodology.
- Incentivize development of peer-reviewed studies that identify how noise generated from dredging impacts aquatic organisms and EFH.

References

Able, K. W., J. P. Manderson, and A. L. Studholme. 1998. The distribution of shallow water juvenile fishes in an urban estuary: The effects of manmade structures in the lower Hudson River. Estuaries 21:731–744.

Armstrong, D., B. Stevens, and J. Hoeman. 1982. Distribution and abundance of Dungeness crab and cragon shrimp, and dredged-related mortality of invertebrates and fish in Grays Harbor, Washington. University of Washington and U.S. Army Engineer District, Seattle.

Bellmore, J. R., C. V. Baxter, A. M. Ray, L. Denny, K. Tardy, and E. Galloway. 2012. Assessing the potential for salmon recovery via floodplain restoration: A multitrophic level comparison of dredge-mined to reference segments. Environmental Management 49:734–750.

Bilkovic, D. M. 2011. Response of Tidal Creek fish communities to dredging and coastal development pressures in a shallow-water estuary. Estuaries and Coasts 34:129–147.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. W. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Boysen, K. A., and J. J. Hoover. 2009. Swimming performance of juvenile white sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*): Training and the probability of entrainment due to dredging. Journal of Applied Ichthyology 25(Supplement 2):54–59.

Bricelj, V. M., and R. E. Malouf. 1984. Growth of juvenile *Mercenaria mercenaria* and the effect of resuspended bottom sediments. Marine Biology 84:167–173.

Brinkmann, M., S. Hudjetz, U. Kammann, M. Hennig, J. Kuckelkorn, M. Chinoraks, C. Cofalla, S. Wiseman, J. P. Giesy, A. Schaffer, M. Hecker, J. Wolz, H. Schuttrumpf, and H. Hollert. 2013. How flood events affect rainbow trout: Evidence of a biomarker cascade in rainbow trout after exposure to PAH contaminated sediment suspensions. Aquatic Toxicology 128–129:13–14.

Brown, A. V., M. M. Lyttle, and K. B. Brown. 1998. Impacts of gravel mining on gravel bed streams. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:979–994.

Buell, J. W. 1992. Fish entrainment monitoring of the Western–Pacific dredge R. W. Lofgren during operations outside the preferred work period. Western–Pacific Dredging Company, Portland, Oregon.

Cake, E. W., Jr. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Gulf of Mexico American oyster. FWS/OBS-82/10.57. U.S. Department of Interior, Washington, D.C.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Clarke, D., C. Dickerson, and K. Reine. 2002. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by dredges. Proceedings of the Third Specialty Conference on Dredging and Dredged Material Disposal. American Society of Civil Engineers, Orlando, Florida.

Cloern, J. E. 1987. Turbidity as a control on phytoplankton biomass and productivity in estuaries. Continental Shelf Research 7:1367–1381.

Collier, T. K., B. F. Anulacion, M. R. Arkoosh, J. P. Dietrich, J. Incardona, L. L. Johnson, G. M. Ylitalo, and M. S. Myers. 2014. Effects on fish of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and naphthenic acid exposures. Pages 195–255 *in* K. B. Tierney, editor. Organic Chemical Toxicology of Fishes. Elsevier, London.

Culp, J. M., F. J. Wrona, and R. W. Davies. 1986. Response of stream benthos and drift to fine sediment deposition versus transport. Canadian Journal of Zoology 64:1345–1351.

Currie, D., and G. Parry. 1996. Effects of scallop dredging on soft sediment community: A large-scale experimental study. Marine Ecology Progress Series 134:131–150.

Deegan, L. A., and R. N. Buchsbaum. 2005. The effect of habitat loss and degradation on fisheries. Pages 67–96 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The Decline in Fisheries Resources in New England: Evaluating the Impact of Overfishing, Contamination, and Habitat Degradation. Publication MITSG 05-5. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1982. Photosynthetic responses of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) to in situ manipulations of light-intensity. Oecologia 55:137–144.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1985. Role of daily light period in the depth distribution of *Zostera marina* (eelgrass). Marine Ecology Progress Series 25:51–61.

Dennison, W. C., and R. S. Alberte. 1986. Photoadaptation and growth of *Zostera marina* L. (eelgrass) transplants along a depth gradient. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 98:265–282.

Dickerson, C., K. J. Reine, and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by bucket dredging operations. ERDC TN-DOER-E14. Available: media.fisheries.noaa.gov/dam-migration/erdc-dredge-noise-cib2001-akr.pdf (September 2022).

Drabble, R. 2012a. Monitoring of East Channel dredge areas benthic fish population and its implications. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64:363–372.

Drabble, R. 2012b. Projected entrainment of fish resulting from aggregate dredging. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64:373–381.

Fischer, J., C. Paukert, and M. Daniels. 2012. Fish community response to habitat alteration: Impacts of sand dredging in the Kansas River. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 141:1532–1544.

Gilkinson, K. D., D. C. Gordon, Jr., K. G. MacIsaac, D. L. McKeown, E. L. R. Kenchington, C. Bourbonnais, and W. P. Vass. 2005. Immediate impacts and recovery trajectories of macrofaunal communities following hydraulic clam dredging on Banquereau, eastern Canada. ICES Journal of Marine Science 62(5):925–947.

Grant, J., and B. Thorpe. 1991. Effects of suspended-sediment on growth, respiration, and excretion of the soft-shelled clam (*Mya arenaria*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:1285–1292.

Gregory, R. S. 1993. Effect of turbidity on the predator avoidance behavior of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tschwytscha*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:241–246.

Gregory, R. S., and C. D. Levings. 1998. Turbidity reduces predation on migrating juvenile Pacific salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 127:275–285.

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, California.

Helfman, G. S. 1981. The advantage to fishes of hovering in shade. Copeia 1981:392–400.

Hicks, B. J., J. D. Hall, P. A. Bisson, and J. R. Sedell. 1991. Responses of salmonids to habitat changes. Pages 483–518 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitat. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Islam, M. S., and M. Tanaka. 2004. Impacts of pollution on coastal and marine ecosystems including coastal and marine fisheries and approach for management: A review and synthesis. Marine Pollution Bulletin 48:624–649.

Johnson, L. L., T. K. Collier, and J. E. Stein. 2002. An analysis in support of sediment quality thresholds for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) to protect estuarine fish. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 12:517–538.

Johnson, M. R., C. Boelke, L. A. Chiarella, P. D. Colosi, K. Greene, K. Lellis-Dibble, H. Ludemann, M. Ludwig, S. McDermott, J. Ortiz, D. Rusanowsky, M. Scott, and J. Smith. 2008. Impacts to marine fisheries habitat from nonfishing activities in the northeast United States. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-209.

Kennish, M. J. 1997. Practical Handbook of Estuarine and Marine Pollution. CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, Florida.

Kennish, M. J. 2002. Environmental threats and environmental future of estuaries. Environmental Conservation 29:78–107.

Kenworthy, W. J., and M. S. Fonseca. 1996. Light requirements of seagrasses *Halodule wrightii* and *Syringodium filiforme* derived from the relationship between diffuse light attenuation and maximum depth distribution. Estuaries and Coasts 19:740–750.

Kondolf, G. M. 1994. Geomorphic and environmental effects of instream gravel mining. Landscape and Urban Planning 28:225–243.

Lake, R. G., and S. G. Hinch. 1999. Acute effects of suspended sediment angularity on juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56:862–867.

Larson, K. 1989. Entrainment of Dungeness crabs by hopper dredge at the mouth of the Columbia River, OR and WA. Pages 268–285 *in* Dredging: Proceedings of WODCON XII. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Orlando, Florida. Available: usace.contentdm.oclc.org/digital/collection/p16021coll3/id/525/ (September 2022).

Lisle, T. E., F. Iseya, and H. Ikeda. 1993. Response of a channel with alternate bars to a decrease in supply of mixed-sized bed load: A flume experiment. Water Resources Research 29:3623–3629.

Liu, M., Q. W. Wei, H. Du, Z. Y. Fu, and Q. C. Chen. 2013. Ship noise-induced temporary hearing threshold shift in the Chinese sucker *Myxocyprinus asiaticus* (Blekker, 1864). Journal of Applied Ichthyology 29:1416–1422.

McCauley, J. E., R. A. Parr, and D. T. Hancock. 1977. Benthic infauna and maintenance dredging: A case study. Water Research 11:233–242.

McGraw, K., and D. Armstrong. 1990. Fish entrainment by dredges in Grays Harbor, Washington. Pages 113–131 *in* C. A. Simenstad, Jr., editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific coast fishes. Workshop Proceedings, 8–9 September 1988. Washington Sea Grant, University of Washington, Seattle.

Meador, J. P., T. K. Collier, and J. E. Stein. 2002. Use of tissue and sediment-based threshold concentrations of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) to protect juvenile salmonids listed under the U.S. Endangered Species Act. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 12:493–516.

Meador, J. P. 2008. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Pages 2881–2891 *in* Encyclopedia of Ecology. Elsevier, Oxford, United Kingdom.

Mearns, A. J., D. J. Reish, P. S. Oshida, T. Ginn, M. A. Rempel-Heseter, and C. Arthur. 2012. Effects of pollution on marine organisms. Water Environment Research 84:1737–1823.

Meire, P., T. Ysebaert, S. Van Damme, E. Van den Bergh, T. Maris, and E. Struyf. 2005. The Scheldt estuary: A description of a changing ecosystem. Hydrobiologia 540:1–11.

Minchinton, T. E., and M. D. Bertness. 2003. Disturbance-mediated competition and the spread of *Phragmites australis* in a coastal marsh. Ecological Applications 13:1400–1416.

Moore, K. A., E. C. Shields, D. B. Parrish, and R. J. Orth. 2012. Eelgrass survival in two contrasting systems: Role of turbidity and summer water temperatures. Marine Ecology Progress Series 448:247–258.

Mullholland, R. 1984. Habitat suitability index models: Hard clam. FWS/OBS-82/10.77. U.S. Department of Interior, Washington, D.C.

Mumford, T. F., Jr. 2007. Kelp and eelgrass in Puget Sound. Technical Report 2007-05. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle.

Newcombe, C. P., and D. D. MacDonald. 1991. Effects of suspended sediments on aquatic ecosystems. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 11:72–82.

Newell, R. C., L. J. Seiderer, and D. R. Hitchcock. 1998. The impact of dredging works in coastal waters: A review of the sensitivity to disturbance and subsequent recovery of biological resources on the seabed. Oceanography and Marine Biology: Annual Review 36:127–178.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001. Dredging activities: Marine issues. Research project T1803, Task 35. Washington State Transportation Center, Seattle.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 1997. Coastal coho habitat factors for decline and protective efforts in Oregon. National Marine Fisheries Service, Portland, Oregon.

Oliver, J. S., P. N. Slattery, L. W. Hulberg, and J. W. Nybakken. 1977. Patterns of succession in benthic infaunal communities following dredging and dredged material disposal in Monterey Bay. Technical Report D-77-27. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi. Available: aquadocs.org/bitstream/handle/1834/20405/Tech_Report_D-77-27.pdf (September 2022).

Pereyra, M. G., B. M. Marino, R. N. Szupiany, and L. P. Thomas. 2014. Hydrodynamics and sediment transport in an estuary with an abrupt depth step. Journal of Hydraulic Research 52:532–544.

Poole, G. C., J. A. Stanford, S. W. Running, and C. A. Frissell. 2006. Multiscale geomorphic drivers of groundwater flow paths: Subsurface hydrologic dynamics and hyporheic habitat diversity. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 25:288–303.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Reine, K., and D. G. Clarke. 1998. Entrainment by hydraulic dredges—A review of potential impacts. Technical Note DOER-E1. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Reine, K., D. Clarke, G. Ray, and C. Dickerson. 2013. Fishery resource utilization of a restored estuarine borrow pit: A beneficial use of dredged material case study. Marine Pollution Bulletin 73:115–128.

Reine, K. J., D. Clarke, and C. Dickerson. 2014. Characterization of underwater sounds produced by hydraulic and mechanical dredging operations. The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 135:3280–3294.

Reish, D. J. 1961. A study of the benthic fauna in a recently constructed boat harbor in southern California. Ecology 42:84–91.

Schiel, D. R., S. A. Wood, R. A. Dunmore, and D. I. Taylor. 2006. Sediment on rocky intertidal reefs: Effects on early post-settlement stages of habitat-forming seaweeds. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 331:158–172.

Scholik, A. R., and H. Y. Yan. 2002. Effects of boat engine noise on the auditory sensitivity of the fathead minnow, *Pimephales promelas*. Environmental Biology of Fishes 63:203–209.

Sigler, J. W. 1988. Effects of chronic turbidity on anadromous salmonids: Recent studies and assessment techniques perspective. Pages 26–37 in C. A. Simenstad, editor. Effects of dredging on anadromous Pacific coast fishes. Washington Sea Grant, University of Washington, Seattle.

Smith, C. J., and M. Wegner. 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors: Chehalis basin and nearby drainages water resource inventory areas 22 and 23. Washington State Conservation Commission Final Report. Washington State Conservation Commission, Lacey, Washington.

Spearow, J. L., R. S. Kota, and D. J. Ostrach. 2011. Environmental contaminant effects on juvenile striped bass in the San Francisco Estuary, California, USA. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 30:393–402.

Strecker, A. L., and J. D. Olden. 2014. Fish species introductions provide novel insights into the patterns and drivers of phylogenetic structure in freshwaters. Proceedings of the Royal Society B 281:20133003.

Suedel, B. C., J. Kim, D. G. Clarke, and I. Linkov. 2008. A risk-informed decision framework for setting environmental windows for dredging projects. Science of the Total Environment 403:1–11.

Tabor, R. A., K. L. Fresh, R. M. Piaskowski, H. A. Gearns, and D. B. Hayes. 2011. Habitat use by juvenile Chinook salmon in the nearshore areas of Lake Washington: Effects of depth, lakeshore development, substrate, and vegetation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 31(4):700–713.

Taylor, D. S. 2012. Removing the sands (sins?) of our past: Dredge spoil removal and saltmarsh restoration along the Indian River Lagoon, Florida (USA). Wetlands Ecology and Management 20:213–218.

Thayer, G. W., W. J. Kenworthy, and M. S. Fonseca. 1984. The ecology of eelgrass meadows of the Atlantic coast: A community profile. FWS/OBS-84/02. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Slidell, Louisiana.

Thrush, S. F., and P. K. Dayton. 2002. Disturbance to marine benthic habitats by trawling and dredging: Implications for marine biodiversity. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 33:449–473.

Thrush, S. F., J. E. Hewitt, V. J. Cummings, and P. K. Dayton. 1995. The impact of habitat disturbance by scallop dredging on marine benthic communities: What can be predicted from the results of experiments? Marine Ecology Progress Series 129:141–150.

Tuck, I. D., S. J. Hall, and M. R. Robertson. 1998. Effects of physical trawling disturbance in a previously unfished sheltered Scottish sea loch. Marine Ecology Progress Series 162:227–242.

Van der Veer, H., M. J. N. Bergman, and J. J. Beukema. 1985. Dredging activities in the Dutch Wadden Sea effects on macrobenthic infauna. Netherlands Journal for Sea Research 19:183–190.

Varanasi, U., editor. 1989. Metabolism of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the aquatic environment. CRC Press, Inc., Boca Raton, Florida.

Vitousek, P. M., C. M. D'Antonio, L. L. Loope, M. Rejmanek, and R. Westbrooks. 1997. Introduced species: A significant component of human-caused global change. New Zealand Journal of Ecology 21:1–16.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams—sources, biological effects and control. American Fisheries Society Monograph 7. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Watling, L., R. H. Findlay, L. M. Lawrence, and D. F. Schick. 2001. Impact of a scallop drag on the sediment chemistry, microbiota, and faunal assemblages of a shallow subtidal marine benthic community. Journal of Sea Research 46:309–324.

Zimmerman, R. C. 2006. Light and photosynthesis in seagrass meadows. Pages 303–321 *in* A. W. D. Larkum, R. J. Orth, and C. M. Duarte, editors. Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology, and Conservation. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

15. Aquaculture

For the purposes of policy development, aquaculture is defined under the National Aquaculture Act of 1980 (16 USC 2801–2810) as the propagation and rearing of aquatic marine organisms for any commercial, recreational, or public purposes. This definition covers all authorized production of marine finfish, shellfish, plants, algae, and other aquatic organisms for: 1) food and other commercial products, 2) wild stock replenishment and enhancement for commercial and recreational fisheries, 3) rebuilding populations of threatened or endangered species under species recovery and conservation plans, and 4) restoration and conservation of aquatic habitat. This chapter summarizes some of the potential impacts of aquaculture on marine and freshwater organisms and the EFH that they inhabit.

Current marine aquaculture facilities in NOAA Fisheries' West Coast Region (WCR) are generally located in nearshore areas. However, one offshore shellfish facility has been permitted and one offshore finfish facility has applied for permits. Shellfish species cultured in the West Coast Region include oysters, clams, mussels, and abalone. Pacific oysters (*Crassostrea gigas*) account for the majority of production. Salmon species (Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, and Pacific salmon and trout, *Oncorhynchus* spp.) are the most commonly produced finfish, but white sea bass (*Atractoscion nobilis*) are also grown. For examples of EFH consultations on aquaculture operations in the West Coast Region, please refer to WCR-2014-1502[7] and WCR-2014-825[8] (for shellfish) and WCRO-2018-00286[9] (for finfish).

Potential Adverse Impacts of Aquaculture

The following factors associated with aquaculture can impact EFH and are described briefly below: release of contaminants, water-quality impacts, introduction of pathogens, establishment and spread of non-native species, benthic impacts, and escapes and releases. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Release of contaminants

Release of contaminants from aquaculture facilities has negative impacts on EFH (Primavera 2006, Burridge et al. 2010), but the degree of impacts depends largely on facility design, operation, and management practices (MacMillan et al. 2003). Chemical contaminants that may be used in aquaculture include antifoulants, herbicides, pesticides, disinfectants, and parasiticides, and drugs such as antibiotics and biologics (for comprehensive reviews see Burridge et al. 2010, AFS 2014). Chemical products can impact EFH in a number of different ways. Antifoulants, herbicides, and pesticides contain metals that can contaminate nearby sediments and are lethal to nontarget organisms (Brooks

---

[7] https://www.nws.usace.army.mil/Portals/27/docs/regulatory/NewsUpdates/NMFSBiOpErrataMemoRevisedITS.pdf

[8] https://www.nwp.usace.army.mil/Portals/24/docs/regulatory/NMFS/20140923_NWP_Shellfish_Aquaculture_Programmatic_consultation.pdf

[9] https://wildfishconservancy.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/04/2022_02-16_FinfishRearingReinit_WCRO-2018-00286-3.pdf

and Mahnken 2003b, Burridge et al. 2010). Information on impacts of disinfectants is sparse; however, surfactants used in disinfectants can disrupt endocrine function, and could have other negative impacts on aquatic organisms. Parasiticides can help manage infestations, but are also lethal and could impact reproductive success in nontarget organisms (Haya et al. 2001, Burridge et al. 2010). Antibiotics can cause short-term (days) or long-term (years) contamination of nearby benthic sediments, impacting the microbial community (Scott 2004, Armstrong et al. 2005, Rigos and Troisi 2005). When administered under regulatory guidelines, biologics such as vaccines are not considered a major risk to EFH or aquatic organisms (AFS 2014).

Water-quality impacts

Aquaculture can increase nutrients and turbidity, cause fluctuations in dissolved oxygen (Price and Morris 2013), and could alter nitrogen and phosphorus cycling in EFH (Bouwman et al. 2013). Impacts of facilities vary among aquatic environments; for example, nearshore facilities may have a greater impact on EFH than those sited in deeper, offshore EFH, where operational byproducts are more easily flushed and diluted (Rust et al. 2014). Furthermore, impacts of reduced water quality caused by aquaculture facilities vary, but could be exacerbated by other environmental factors (Ruiz et al. 2001).

Introduction of pathogens

Farming of aquatic organisms can lead to the spread of pathogens from cultured to wild organisms, posing a significant risk to endemic aquatic organisms inhabiting EFH (Waknitz et al. 2003, Mydlarz et al. 2006, Primavera 2006, Suttle 2007, NAAHP 2008, Walker and Mohan 2009, Terlizzi et al. 2012). Diseases can be caused by infectious (bacterial, viral, fungal, parasitic) and noninfectious (nutritional, environmental, pollution, stress) agents (Taksdal et al. 2007), and could be exacerbated by parasitic infestations related to aquaculture facilities (McKibben and Hay 2004, Morton et al. 2005). The spread of disease in aquaculture facilities is influenced by many factors including immune status, stress level, pathogen load, environmental condition, nutritional health, and feeding management (Wedemeyer 1996). While pathogens normally occur in nature, intensive aquaculture can lead to accelerated, density-dependent horizontal transfer of pathogens among individuals (Krkosek 2010). Furthermore, organisms introduced for culture can become vectors for non-native organisms that can cause disease (Ruesink et al. 2005). The type and level of husbandry practices and disease surveillance will also influence the potential spread of pathogens to wild stocks (Trushenski et al. 2015). Climate change has been implicated in increasing the prevalence and severity of infectious pathogens that may cause disease originating from cultured or transplanted aquaculture stocks (Hoegh-Guldberg and Bruno 2010, Price and Morris 2013, Rust et al. 2014).

Establishment and spread of non-native species

The novel aquaculture structures and/or the cultured species themselves may serve to facilitate establishment and/or proliferation of non-native species and associated fouling pests and diseases. For instance, Forrest et al. (2009) concluded that the introduction and spread of pest species is a potentially important, but often overlooked, consequence of oyster cultivation. Aquaculture infrastructure and gear have been shown to harbor high incidences of non-native species compared to native habitats (Simkanin et al. 2012) and can be a source of marine debris that may transport such species over extensive distances, further contributing to their spread (Astudillo et al. 2009) and creating a biosecurity risk (Campbell et al. 2017). However, Iacarella et al. (2019) indicated that aquaculture gear is an unlikely vector for non-native species in the northeastern Pacific Ocean because of limited movement of shellfish gear and existing cleaning practices.

Benthic impacts

Waste from aquaculture facilities can have negative impacts on benthic EFH (Brooks and Mahnken 2003a, Nash 2005, Naylor 2006, Primavera 2006, Tucker and Hargreaves 2008, Amirkolaie 2011). Both finfish and shellfish facilities can create large amounts of excess waste through uneaten feed and feces (Cranford et al. 2006). Waste accumulation that originates from fish farms could increase potential for disease (Vezzulli et al. 2008) and lead to eutrophication (Reid et al. 2008). Solid waste from aquaculture can increase benthic sedimentation, causing accumulation of organic matter and anoxia, and impacting important vegetation, such as seagrass (Holmer et al. 2008).

Excess feed and feces are the predominant sources of particulate wastes from fish farms. Shellfish operations release feces and pseudofeces, a byproduct of mollusks filtering food from the water column. If allowed to accumulate, particulate waste products may alter biogeochemical processes of decomposition and nutrient assimilation. At sites with poor circulation, waste accumulation can alter the bottom sediment and perturb infaunal communities if wastes are released in excess of the aerobic assimilative capacity of the substrate. Benthic impacts due to particulate waste from marine aquaculture are typically localized and ephemeral in nature (Dumbauld et al. 2009, Rust et al. 2014).

Aquaculture structures, operations, and maintenance can impact the benthic environment by increasing shading and causing displacement of organisms (Dumbauld et al. 2009). Shellfish operations, in particular, may reduce the density or spatial coverage of submerged aquatic vegetation, such as eelgrass.

Escapes and releases

Escape of farmed organisms could pose a threat to wild organisms (McGinnity et al. 2003, Goldburg and Naylor 2005). Technical and operational failures at aquaculture facilities can lead to the escape of farmed organisms into EFH (Schiermeier 2003, Jensen et al. 2010), potentially affecting wild organisms (Ford and Myers 2008, Waples et al. 2012). Escape of farmed fish can lead to reproduction and competition with wild fish, the spread of pathogens (Naylor et al. 2005), and reduced biodiversity in EFH (Wilcove et al. 1998, Bax et al. 2001, D’Antonio et al. 2001, Olenin et al. 2007).

Intentional release of artificially propagated organisms (i.e., for enhancement or restoration) can also pose a threat to EFH and native organisms (Grosholz 2002). Hatchery-raised organisms can have reduced growth (Quinn et al. 2012) and show competitive dominance (Berejikian et al. 2001) and fitness (Reisenbichler and Rubin 1999, Thériault et al. 2011). Furthermore, genetic introgression could alter functional behaviors important for growth and survival (Berejikian et al. 1996, Grant 2011). It is important to note that impacts of released, artificially propagated organisms could range from no effect to the extirpation of native organisms. Other anthropogenic factors in the environment may exacerbate impacts (for review see Pillay 2004).

Potential Conservation Measures for Aquaculture

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of aquaculture on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help aquaculture developers and operators avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of aquaculture on EFH.

General guidelines

- Use modern production technologies, proper siting protocols, standardized operating procedures, and BMPs to reduce the risk of environmental damage and degradation that can be caused by aquaculture development and activities (Shumway 2011, Price and Morris 2013, Rust et al. 2014).

Release of contaminants

- Employ BMPs and use vaccines to reduce the need for antibiotics (Forster 2010, Rico et al. 2012, Rust et al. 2014).
- Employ preventative husbandry practices and proper stocking densities to reduce the need for chemical treatments.
- If needed, use only prescribed antibiotics, parasiticides, and other medicines. Use sparingly and in accordance with approved protocols to minimize environmental contamination.

Water-quality impacts

- Site finfish operations appropriately in well flushed, non-depositional areas (Price and Morris 2013). For example, site cages in water at least twice as deep as the cage, in areas with minimum flows of 7 cm/s, or use models (i.e., Aquamodel or depomod) to determine adequacy of site, to avoid water-quality impacts.
- Use BMPs, including siting aquaculture operations outside of nutrient-sensitive habitats, responsible cleaning practices, integration of feed management strategies, use of optimally formulated diets, and other management measures to minimize nutrient discharge.
- Construct wetlands at or near facilities to filter and help remove solids, phosphorus, and nitrogen compounds from aquaculture effluent (Michael 2003).

Introduction of pathogens

- Prevent introduction of pathogens at aquaculture facilities (LaPatra 2003).
- An accredited aquatic organism health professional should regularly inspect crops and perform detailed diagnostic procedures to determine if disease presents a risk.
- Biosecurity plans to prevent or control the spread of pathogens within a farm site, between aquaculture operations, or to wild populations should be developed by veterinarians with expertise in fish culture, or qualified aquatic animal health experts.
- Document all stocking and transplanting activities to improve tracking ability if an outbreak occurs.
- Ensure compliance with federal and state health-control legislation. Import and export certifications and testing for certain types of diseases fall under the jurisdiction of the USDA Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service

(APHIS). States in the WCR all have specific protocols that must be followed when transplanting cultured species into wild environments to minimize the incidence of disease transfer.

Establishment and spread of non-native species

- Assess project areas for susceptibility to, or presence of, invasive organisms. If invasive organisms are present or the site could be susceptible to invasive hosts, design and implement an eradication management and monitoring plan prior to construction phases to eliminate the spread of such organisms. Submit all information on newly discovered invasions or spreading to local conservation or regulatory agencies (fish and wildlife) and organizations:
    - *Washington*: Washington Invasive Species Council Annual Report.[10]
    - *Oregon*: Oregon Invasive Species Council.[11]
    - *California*: Invasive Species Council of California.[12]
- Develop appropriate early detection and rapid response eradication methods for non-native plant and animal species, consistent with federal guidelines, as specified by the National Invasive Species Management Plan.
- Provide and display educational materials on the potential impacts resulting from the release of invasive species into the natural environment to increase public awareness and engender broad cooperation among user groups and stakeholders.
- To the extent feasible, all culture equipment and gear should be marked in a manner that easily identifies the responsible party's name and contact information.
- Aquaculture gear or equipment should not be released into the aquatic environment.
- An inventory management system should be used that tracks the status and location of all equipment. Any gear or equipment that becomes displaced from the culture areas should be retrieved, and any lost gear that was not retrieved should be documented.

Benthic impacts

- Site aquaculture facilities in well-flushed waters. Belle and Nash (2008) recommend siting cages in water at least twice as deep as the cage, with minimum flows of 7 cm/s.
- Use fallowing to reduce benthic impacts. Fallowing is the temporary relocation or suspension of aquaculture operations to allow sediments and the benthic community to recover from excessive nutrient loading (Tucker and Hargreaves 2008).
- Optimize feeding practices and use low-phosphorus feed (MacMillan et al. 2003). Actions that could reduce benthic impacts of feed include:
    - Reducing the use of solids by using highly digestible feed with high nutritional value.
    - Reducing dissolved nitrogen by using feed that contains proper protein and energy content (Amirkolaie 2011).
    - Setting rations to reduce excessive feed and feces.
- Implement benthic monitoring plans to detect nutrient enrichment and effects on benthic habitat and community

---

[10] http://www.invasivespecies.wa.gov

[11] http://www.oregoninvasivespeciescouncil.org

[12] http://www.iscc.ca.gov

structure. Establish treatment (facility) and control (nonfacility) sites to evaluate aquaculture effects versus natural and seasonal variability.

- Do not site new aquaculture operations in or above sensitive benthic communities such as eelgrass or other SAV, or near fish spawning habitat. If forage fish spawn is detected on aquaculture gear, cease aquaculture activities in the area until such time as the eggs have hatched and spawn is no longer present.

Escapes and releases

- Use only native or naturalized species unless best available science demonstrates use of non-native or other species would not cause undue harm to wild species, habitats, or ecosystems in the event of an escape.
- Ensure that monitoring and maintenance plans and protocols employ BMPs designed to reduce aquaculture escapes. Plans should provide protocols (e.g., recapture, mitigation) for situations where an escape occurs.
- Use risk assessment tools and empirical models (ICF 2012) to identify and evaluate risks of farmed escapes on wild populations (Waples et al. 2012). The Offshore Mariculture Escapes Genetics Assessment model (OMEGA) is one such tool developed for this purpose and is available from the NOAA Aquaculture website.[13]

References

AFS (American Fisheries Society). 2014. Guide to Using Drugs, Biologics, and Other Chemicals in Aquaculture. American Fisheries Society, Washington, D.C.

Amirkolaie, A. 2011. Reduction in the environmental impact of waste discharged by fish farms through feed and feeding. Reviews in Aquaculture 3:19–26.

Armstrong, S. M., B. T. Hargrave, and K. Haya. 2005. Antibiotic use in finfish aquaculture: Modes of action, environmental fate, and microbial resistance. Pages 341–357 *in* B. T. Hargrave, editor. Environmental Effects of Marine Finfish Aquaculture, volume 5M of the Handbook of Environmental Chemistry. Springer, Berlin.

Astudillo, J. C., Bravo, M., Dumont, C. P., and M. Thiel. 2009. Detached aquaculture buoys in the SE Pacific: Potential dispersal vehicle for associated organisms. Aquatic Biology 5:219–231.

Bax, N., J. T. Carlton, A. Matthews-Amos, R. L. Haedrich, F. G. Howarth, J. E. Purcell, A. Rieser, and A. Gray. 2001. The control of biological invasions in the world's oceans. Conservation Biology 15:1234–1246.

Belle, S. M., and C. E. Nash. 2008. Better management practices for net-pen aquaculture. Pages 261–330 *in* C. S. Tucker, and J. Hargreaves, editors. Environmental Best Management Practices for Aquaculture. Blackwell Publishing, Ames, Iowa.

---

[13] http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/aquaculture/science/omega_model_homepage.html

Berejikian, B. A., S. B. Matthews, and T. P. Quinn. 1996. Effects of hatchery and wild ancestry and rearing environments on the development of agonistic behavior in steelhead trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fry. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:2004–2014.

Berejikian, B. A., E. P. Tezak, and S. C. Riley. 2001. Competitive ability and social behavior of juvenile steelhead reared in enriched and conventional hatchery tanks and a stream environment. Journal of Fish Biology 59:1600–1613.

Bouwman, A. F., A. H. W. Beusen, C. C. Overbeek, D. P. Bureau, M. Pawlowski, and P. M. Gilbert. 2013. Hindcasts and future projections of global inland and coastal nitrogen and phosphorus loads due to finfish aquaculture. Reviews in Fisheries Science 21:112–156.

Brooks, K. M., and C. V. W. Mahnken. 2003a. Interactions of Atlantic salmon in the Pacific northwest environment: II. Organic wastes. Fisheries Research 62:255–293.

Brooks, K. M., and C. V. W. Mahnken. 2003b. Interactions of Atlantic salmon in the Pacific northwest environment: III. Zinc and copper. Fisheries Research 62:295–305.

Burridge, L., J. S. Weis, F. Cabello, J. Pizarro, and K. Bostick. 2010. Chemical use in salmon aquaculture: A review of current practices and possible environmental effects. Aquaculture 306:7–23.

Campbell, M. L., S. King, L. D. Heppenstall, E. van Gool, R. Martin, and C. L. Hewitt. 2017. Aquaculture and urban marine structures facilitate native and non-indigenous species transfer through generation and accumulation of marine debris. Marine Pollution Bulletin 123:304–312.

Cranford, P. J., R. Anderson, P. Archambault, T. Balch, S. S. Bates, G. Bugden, M. D. Callier, C. Carver, L. Comeau, and B. Hargrave. 2006. Indicators and thresholds for use in assessing shellfish aquaculture impacts on fish habitat. DFO Canadian Scientific Advisory Secretariat Research Document 2006/034. Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia. Available: webcat.niwa.co.nz/documents/CSASrd2006_034.pdf (September 2022).

D'Antonio, C., J. Levine, and M. Thomsen. 2001. Ecosystem resistance to invasion and the role of propagule supply: A California perspective. Journal of Mediterranean Ecology 2:233–245.

Dumbauld, B. R., J. L. Ruesink, and S. S. Rumrill. 2009. The ecological role of bivalve shellfish aquaculture in the estuarine environment: A review with application to oyster and clam culture in West Coast (USA) estuaries. Aquaculture 290:196–223.

Ford, J. S., and R. A. Myers. 2008. A global assessment of salmon aquaculture impacts on wild salmonids. PLOS ONE 6:e33.

Forrest, B. M., N. B. Keeley, G. A. Hopkins, S. C. Webb, and D. M. Clement. 2009. Bivalve aquaculture in estuaries: Review and synthesis of oyster cultivation effects. Aquaculture 298:1–15.

Forster, J. 2010. What can US open ocean aquaculture learn from salmon farming? Marine Technology Journal 44:68–79.

Goldburg, R., and R. Naylor. 2005. Future seascapes, fishing, and fish farming. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 3:21–28.

Grant, W. S. 2011. Understanding the adaptive consequences of hatchery–wild interactions in Alaska salmon. Environmental Biology of Fishes 94:325–342.

Grosholz, E. 2002. Ecological and evolutionary consequences of coastal invasions. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 17:22–27.

Haya, K., L. E. Burridge, and B. D. Chang. 2001. Environmental impact of chemical wastes produced by the salmon aquaculture industry. ICES Journal of Marine Science 58:492–496.

Hoegh-Guldberg, O., and J. F. Bruno. 2010. The impact of climate change on the world's marine ecosystems. Science 328:1523–1528.

Holmer, M., M. Argyrou, T. Dalsgaard, R. Danovaro, E. Diaz-Almela, C. M. Duarte, M. Frederiksen, A. Grau, I. Karakassis, N. Marbá, S. Mirto, M. Pérez, A. Pusceddu, and M. Tsapakis. 2008. Effects of fish farm waste on *Posidonia oceanica* meadows: Synthesis and provision of monitoring and management tools. Marine Pollution Bulletin 56:1618–1629.

Iacarella, J., I. Davidson, and A. Dunham. 2019. Biotic exchange from movement of 'static' maritime structures. Biological Invasions 21:1131–1141.

ICF (ICF International and Aquatic Resource Consultants). 2012. Offshore mariculture escapes genetic/ecological assessment (OMEGA) model, version 1.0: Model overview and user guide. August 2012 (ICF 00613.10). Northwest Fisheries Science Center, Seattle.

Jensen, Ø., T. Dempster, E. B. Thorstad, I. Uglem, and A. Fredheim. 2010. Escapes of fishes from Norwegian sea-cage aquaculture: Causes, consequences and prevention. Aquaculture Environment Interactions 1:71–83.

Krkosek, M. 2010. Host density thresholds and disease control for fisheries and aquaculture. Aquaculture Environment Interactions 1:21–32.

LaPatra, S. E. 2003. The lack of scientific evidence to support the development of effluent limitations guidelines for aquatic animal pathogens. Aquaculture 226:191–199.

MacMillan, J. R., T. Huddleston, M. Woolley, and K. Fothergill. 2003. Best management practice development to minimize environmental impact from large flow-through trout farms. Aquaculture 226:91–99.

McGinnity, P., P. Prodöhl, A. Ferguson, R. Hynes, N. Ó. Maoiléidigh, N. Baker, D. Cotter, B. O'Hea, D. Cooke, G. Rogan, J. Taggert, and T. Cross. 2003. Fitness reduction and potential extinction of wild populations of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, as a result of interactions with escaped farm salmon. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences 270:2443–2450.

McKibben, M. A., and D. W. Hay. 2004. Distributions of planktonic sea lice larvae, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, in the inter-tidal zone in Loch Torridon, Western Scotland in relation to salmon farm production cycles. Aquaculture Research 35:742–750.

Michael, J. H., Jr. 2003. Nutrients in salmon hatchery wastewater and its removal through the use of a wetland constructed to treat off-line settling pond effluent. Aquaculture 226:213–225.

Morton, A., R. D. Routledge, and R. Williams. 2005. Temporal patterns of sea louse infestation on wild Pacific salmon in relation to the fallowing of Atlantic salmon farms. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 25:811–821.

Mydlarz, L. D., L. E. Jones, and C. D. Harvell. 2006. Innate immunity, environmental drivers, and disease ecology of marine and freshwater invertebrates. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 37:251–288.

NAAHP (National Aquatic Animal Health Plan). 2008. National Aquatic Animal Health Plan. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service. Washington, D.C.

Nash, C. E., P. R. Burbridge, and J. K. Volkman, editors. 2005. Guidelines for ecological risk assessment of marine fish aquaculture. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-71.

Naylor, R. L. 2006. Environmental safeguards for open-ocean aquaculture. Issues in Science and Technology 1:53–58.

Naylor, R., K. Hindar, I. A. Fleming, R. Goldburg, S. Williams, J. Volpe, F. Whoriskey, J. Eagle, D. Kelso, and M. Mangel. 2005. Fugitive salmon: Assessing the risks of escaped fish from net-pen aquaculture. BioScience 55:427–437.

Olenin, S., D. Minchin, and D. Daunys. 2007. Assessment of biopollution in aquatic ecosystems. Marine Pollution Bulletin 55:379–394.

Pillay, T. V. R. 2004. Aquaculture and the Environment, 2nd edition. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, United Kingdom.

Price, C. S., and J. A. Morris, Jr. 2013. Marine Cage Culture and the Environment: Twenty-first Century Science Informing a Sustainable Industry. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS-NCCOS-164.

Primavera, J. H. 2006. Overcoming the impacts of aquaculture on the coastal zone. Ocean & Coastal Management 49:531–545.

Quinn, T., K. Krueger, K. Pierce, D. Penttila, K. Perry, T. Hicks, and D. Lowry. 2012. Patterns of surf smelt, *Hypomesus pretiosus*, intertidal spawning habitat use in Puget Sound, Washington State. Estuaries and Coasts 35:1213–1228.

Reid, G. K., M. Liutkus, S. M. C. Robinson, T. R. Chopin, T. Blair, T. Lander, J. Mullen, F. Page, and R. D. Moccia. 2008. A review of the biophysical properties of salmonid faeces: Implications for aquaculture waste dispersal models and integrated multi-trophic aquaculture. Aquaculture Research 2008:1–17.

Reisenbichler, R. R., and S. P. Rubin. 1999. Genetic changes from artificial propagation of Pacific salmon affect the productivity and viability of supplemented populations. ICES Journal of Marine Sciences 56:459–466.

Rico, A., K. Satapornvanit, M. M. Haque, J. Min, P. T. Nguyen, T. C. Telfer, and P. J. van den Brink. 2012. Use of chemicals and biological products in Asian aquaculture and their potential environmental risks: A critical review. Reviews in Aquaculture 4:75–93.

Rigos, G., and G. M. Troisi. 2005. Antibacterial agents in Mediterranean finfish farming: A synopsis of drug pharmacokinetics in important euryhaline fish species and possible environmental implications. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 15:53–73.

Ruesink, J. L., H. S. Lenihan, A. C. Trimble, K. W. Heiman, F. Micheli, J. E. Byers, and M. C. Kay. 2005. Introduction of non-native oysters: Ecosystem effects and restoration implications. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics 36:643–689.

Ruiz, J. M., M. Pérez, and J. Romero. 2001. Effects of fish farm loadings on seagrass (*Posidonia oceanic*a) distribution, growth and photosynthesis. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42:749–760.

Rust, M. B., K. H. Amos, A. L. Bagwill, W. W. Dickhoff, L. M. Juarez, C. S. Price, J. A. Morris, Jr., and M. C. Rubino. 2014. Environmental performance of marine net-pen aquaculture in the United States. Fisheries 39:508–524.

Schiermeier, Q. 2003. Fish farms' threat to salmon stocks exposed. Nature 425:753.

Scott, R. J. 2004. Environmental fate and effect of chemicals associated with Canadian freshwater aquaculture. Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 2450:67–117.

Shumway, S. E. 2011. Shellfish Aquaculture and the Environment. Blackwell Publishing, Ames, Iowa.

Simkanin, C., I. C. Davidson, J. F. Dower, G. Jamieson, and T. W. Therriault. 2012. Anthropogenic structures and the infiltration of natural benthos by invasive ascidians. Marine Ecology 33(4):499–511.

Suttle, C. A. 2007. Marine viruses—major players in the global ecosystem. Nature Reviews Microbiology 5:801–812.

Taksdal, T., A. B. Olsen, I. Bjerkas, M. J. Hjortaas, B. H. Dannevig, D. A. Graham, and M. F. McLoughlin. 2007. Pancreas disease in farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., and rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), in Norway. Journal of Fish Disease 30:545–558.

Terlizzi, A., P. Tedesco, and P. Patarnello. 2012. Spread of pathogens from marine cage aquaculture—a potential threat for wild fish assemblages under protection regimes? Pages 403–414 *in* E. D. Carvalho, G. S. David, and R. J. Silva, editors. Health and environment in aquaculture. InTech, New York.

Thériault, V., G. R. Moyer, L. S. Jackson, M. S. Blouin, and M. A. Banks. 2011. Reduced reproductive success of hatchery coho salmon in the wild: Insights into most likely mechanisms. Molecular Ecology 20:1860–1869.

Trushenski, J. T., H. L. Blankenship, J. D. Bowker, T. A. Flagg, J. A. Hesse, K. M. Leber, D. D. MacKinlay, D. J. Maynard, C. M. Moffitt, V. A. Mudrak, K. T. Scribner, S. F. Stuewe, J. A. Sweka, G. E. Whelan, and C. Y. Young-Dubovsky. 2015. Introduction to a special section: Hatcheries and management of aquatic resources (HaMAR)—considerations for use of hatcheries and hatchery-origin fish. North American Journal of Aquaculture 77:327–342.

Tucker, C. S., and J. A. Hargreaves, editors. 2008. Environmental Best Management Practices for Aquaculture. Blackwell Publishing, Ames, Iowa.

Vezzulli, L., M. Moreno, V. Marin, E. Pezzati, M. Bartoli, and M. Fabiano. 2008. Organic waste impact of capture-based Atlantic Bluefin tuna aquaculture at an exposed site in the Mediterranean Sea. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 78:369–384.

Waknitz, F. W., R. N. Iwamoto, and M. S. Strom. 2003. Interactions of Atlantic salmon in the Pacific Northwest: IV. Impacts on the local ecosystems. Fisheries Research 62:307–328.

Walker, P. J., and C. V. Mohan. 2009. Viral disease emergence in shrimp aquaculture: Origins, impact and the effectiveness of health management strategies. Reviews in Aquaculture 1:125–154.

Waples, R. S., K. Hindar, and J. J. Hard. 2012. Genetic risks associated with marine aquaculture. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-119.

Wedemeyer, G. A. 1996. The physiology of fish in intensive culture systems. Chapman and Hall, New York.

Wilcove D. S., D. Rothstein, J. Bubow, A. Phillips, and E. Losos. 1998. Quantifying threats to imperiled species in the United States. BioScience 48:607–615.

16. Overwater Structures

Potential Adverse Impacts of Overwater Structures

The following factors associated with overwater structures (i.e., marinas, docks, piers, bridges, roads, oil platforms, wind energy structures, houseboats) can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, release of contaminants, impacts to organisms, invasive organisms, and noise effects. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Overwater structures and associated uses can lead to loss and alteration of habitat in EFH (Simenstad et al. 1998, Carrasquero 2001, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Johannessen and MacLennan 2007). Overwater structures shade benthic habitats and aquatic primary producers such as seagrass, salt marsh plants, and algae, which are susceptible to light limitation (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996, Burdick and Short 1999, Glasby 1999, Shafer 1999, Zimmerman 2006, Thom et al. 2008). Seagrasses have particularly high light requirements (Kenworthy and Fonseca 1996), making them especially vulnerable to shading from overwater structures (Zimmerman 2006). Shading added by overwater structures can adversely affect plant composition and productivity and habitat complexity (Haas et al. 2002, Struck et al. 2004, Whitcraft and Levin 2007), potentially impacting higher trophic levels.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

Overwater structures can alter hydrology and geomorphology in EFH (Carrasquero 2001, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Johannessen and MacLennan 2007). High flows can cause excessive scour and erosion around the base of pilings that often support overwater structures, while low flows may result in increased sedimentation (Kelty and Bliven 2003, Edinger and Martin 2010). The accumulation of debris and shell from barnacles, molluscs, and other marine organisms at the base of pilings may also inhibit seagrass growth in the surrounding area (Fresh et al. 1995, Shafer and Lundin 1999, Thom and Shreffler 1996). The resulting changes in substrate and habitat caused by scour or deposition may directly affect fish and shellfish or their habitat (Bowman and Dolan 1982, Penttila and Doty 1990).

Release of contaminants

Overwater structures can be sources of contaminants in EFH. Steel components in the marine environment (e.g., pilings, boat hulls) are either zinc coated or have a zinc anode to protect from corrosion. The introduction of zinc from these materials can result in adverse effects to organisms that inhabit EFH (Bird et al. 1996, Rousseau et al. 2009, Brinkman and Johnston 2012, Calfee et al. 2014). Creosote-treated wood used for pilings and docks (NOAA 2009) can lead to phototoxicity, disturbance of hormone regulation (van Brummelen et al. 1998), and immunotoxicity (Möller et al. 2014) in aquatic organisms that inhabit EFH (Lalonde et al. 2011). Wood treated with alternative chemicals, such as ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate (ACZA) and chromated copper arsenate (CCA Type C), also leaches contaminants into EFH, but residence time is shorter than creosote (Poston 2001). Copper introduced to the aquatic environment from treated wood products and antifouling hull paints (Neira et al. 2009, NOAA 2009) can cause a range of adverse effects, including altered behavior, impaired olfaction, and mortality (Eisler 2000, Baldwin et al. 2003, Hecht et al. 2007, Sandahl et al. 2007, NOAA 2009). Port and marina structures can impede water movement, potentially concentrating these contaminants in addition to nutrients (Moreno et al. 2009). Contaminants introduced to the marine environments by overwater structures can be taken up by lower trophic levels and transferred up the food chain, impacting growth, survival, reproduction, and ultimately population viability of consumers such as salmon and shellfish (Sethajintanin et al. 2004, Meador et al. 2010, Jenkins et al. 2014, Melwani et al. 2014).

Impacts to organisms

Overwater structures can negatively impact EFH by increasing shade and reducing primary production, growth, density, and diversity of benthic invertebrates (Whitcraft and Levin 2007). Overwater structures can also affect behavior and use of nearshore habitat by pelagic and benthic fish (Able et al. 1998, Simenstad et al. 1999, Carrasquero 2001, Toft et al. 2007, Able et al. 2013, Ono and Simenstad 2014). Ecological conditions during early life-history stages are likely critical determining factors for recruitment and survival, with survival linked to the ability to locate and capture prey and to avoid predation (Britt 2001). The reduced-light conditions found under overwater structures limit the ability of fishes, especially juveniles and larvae, to perform these essential activities and can lead to lower growth rates, fish abundance, and species richness (Able et al. 1998, Able et al. 1999). In addition, the location, width, orientation, and lighting of a structure has been found to impact the migration and movement behavioral patterns of juvenile fishes (Simenstad et al. 1999, Munsch et al. 2014, Ono and Simenstad 2014, Munsch et al. 2017). Prey fish may be more vulnerable to predators that congregate around such structures (Helfman 1981, Petersen and Gadomski 1994, Carrasquero 2001, Willette 2001, Willette et al. 2001, Tabor et al. 2011, Munsch et al. 2017). Permanent moorings and temporary anchorings can damage eelgrass beds and benthic communities (Sargent et al. 1995, Francour et al. 1999, Campbell et al. 2002, Kennish 2002), and grounding of large objects or propeller scarring can smother or destroy shellfish beds and scour aquatic vegetation (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). Several studies have shown that natural recovery of propeller-scarred seagrass may take over 60 years (Rasheed 1999, Fonseca et al. 2004).

Noise effects

The noise generated by vessel operations concentrates in ports, marinas, and heavily used shipping lanes or routes, and may impact fish spawning, migration, and recruitment behaviors (Stocker 2002, Hildebrand 2005, Codarin et al. 2009). Exposure to continuous noise may also impair hearing in aquatic organisms (Jasny et al. 1999, Scholik and Yan 2002). Small craft with high-speed engines and propellers (e.g., recreational boats with outboard engines) typically produce higher-frequency noise than do larger vessels that generate substantial low-frequency noise; however, overall sound levels are higher for larger vessels, and increase with vessel speed (Kipple and Gabriele 2004). Pile driving can generate intense underwater sound pressure waves that may adversely affect the ecological functioning of EFH, including injury or mortality to fishes (Caltrans 2001, Popper and Hastings 2009). For more information and detail on the impacts of pile driving on EFH, see Chapter 18.

Invasive organisms

Overwater structures provide habitat that enables the establishment of invasive organisms (Cohen et al. 2002, Wasson et al. 2005, Glasby et al. 2007, Bulleri and Chapman 2010, Pearl et al. 2013, Strecker and Olden 2014). The establishment and proliferation of invasive organisms has important consequences for native organisms (Beamesderfer and Rieman 1988, Colle et al. 1989, Blossey and Notzold 1995, Byers 1999, Carrasquero 2001, Cohen 2005, Currant et al. 2008) and represents a significant environmental threat to biological diversity (Vitousek et al. 1996, Simberloff et al. 2005). Some researchers have recommended that coastal managers should consider limiting the amount of artificial hard substrates in estuarine environments (Wasson et al. 2005, Tyrell and Byers 2007).

Potential Conservation Measures for Overwater Structures

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, mitigate, or otherwise offset impacts of overwater structures on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help action agencies avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of overwater structures on EFH.

General guidelines

- Decrease shading impacts during the design phase of all overwater structure projects. Factors such as structure orientation (orient length of structure north–south instead of east–west when possible), height above water, structure width, and decking material can significantly affect overwater structure shading impacts on EFH (Burdick and Short 1999, Fresh et al. 2006, Landry et al. 2008, Shafer et al. 2008).
- Use light-transmitting material on all overwater structure projects. Use grated decking (minimum 40% light transmittance, with >60% of the decking open to sunlight) and increased spacing between deck boards to increase the light transmitted through overwater structures (Fresh et al. 2006, Landry et al. 2008, Shafer et al. 2008). These requirements vary by local and state requirements (e.g., WSL 2019).
- For all overwater structure projects, new and existing, increase elevation of all overwater structures (above mean higher high water line [MHHW]), maximize piling spacing, minimize number of piles, design narrower structures, minimize float size and configuration, reduce the amount of pier area that directly contacts the shoreline, and orient structures N–S to improve light transmittance and SAV growth (Shafer et al. 2008).
- Use upland boat storage to minimize the need for overwater structures.
- Use floating breakwaters whenever possible, and remove them during periods of low dock use. Encourage only seasonal use of docks and off-season haul-out of boats and structures.
- Implement projects that mitigate adverse effects on EFH that remain after implementing all other avoidance and minimization measures.
- Consider cumulative past, present, and foreseeable future impacts of development

projects on EFH in the review process for overwater structure projects.
- Incentivize community-use docks to minimize the proliferation of single-family residential docks along shorelines.

Loss and alteration of habitat

- Do not site overwater structures in areas that are occupied by, or determined to be suitable to support, sensitive habitat (e.g., SAV, salt marsh). Mitigate on-site for any and all losses of such important EFH.
- Conduct surveys during the growing season and provide an inventory of presence and location of important marine vegetation (eelgrass, kelp, macroalgae, intertidal wetland vascular plants, etc.) and of relative abundance of and habitat use by important forage fishes such as herring, surf smelt, or sandlance prior to permitting overwater structure projects. All impacts to these organisms and their respective habitats must be mitigated for.
- Site or relocate boathouses to land above the Highest Astronomical Tide line, or offshore of the –5-m MLLW contour, to minimize shading.
- Place floats in deep water to avoid impacts from propeller scour, shading, etc., and reduce the need for navigational dredging.
- Design only nongrounding floats, and require existing floats that ground to be rebuilt.
- Relocate all persistently moored vessels in waters deep enough that the bottom of the vessel remains a minimum of 18 inches off the substrate during extreme low tide events. This will prevent adverse grounding impacts to benthic habitat. If a vessel must be moored over SAV or rocky reef habitats with less than 18 inches between the bottom of the vessel and the substrate at low tides, then float stops should be utilized. This will prevent adverse grounding impacts to benthic habitat.
- Use midline float mooring anchors, if placed within SAV or habitat suitable for SAV, to prevent chain scour to the substrate. This will prevent adverse impacts to SAV and other benthic habitat.

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

- Minimize impacts to hydrology and nearshore processes by avoiding floats that ground at low tide (incorporate stops on piles).
- Any cross or transverse bracing should be placed above mean higher high water to avoid impacts to water flow and circulation.

Release of contaminants

- Do not use treated wood for any structures. Use alternatives such as concrete, steel, or composites (recycled plastic, etc.).
- Take measures to eliminate loss of flotation materials (typically polystyrene foam) through the requirement of full enclosure of flotation materials.
- Require rub strips on treated wood piles or timbers that are abraded by vessels (fender piles) or docks (guide piles) to reduce physical breakup of the piles.
- Encourage removal of treated wood structures (piles and decking) in aquatic areas to decrease overall shading and contamination.

Impacts to organisms

- Conduct in-water work during the time of year when EFH-managed organisms and their prey are least affected.
- Fit all pilings and navigational aids, such as moorings and channel markers,

with devices to prevent perching by piscivorous birds and mammals.

- Orient night lighting such that illumination of the surrounding waters is reduced or eliminated.
- Site all anchored moorings and moored vessels in areas devoid of SAV. This will prevent adverse shading impacts to SAV and subsequent mitigation needs.

Invasive organisms

- Assess project areas for susceptibility to, or presence of, invasive organisms. If invasive organisms are present or the site could be susceptible to invasive hosts, design and implement an eradication management and monitoring plan prior to construction phases to eliminate the spread of such organisms. Submit all information on newly discovered invasions or spreading to local conservation or regulatory agencies (fish and wildlife) and organizations:
    - *Washington*: Washington Invasive Species Council Annual Report.[14]
    - *Oregon*: Oregon Invasive Species Council.[15]
    - *California*: Invasive Species Council of California.[16]
- Develop appropriate early detection and rapid response eradication methods for non-native plant and animal species, consistent with federal guidelines as specified by the National Invasive Species Management Plan.
- Provide and display educational materials on the potential impacts resulting from the release of invasive species into the natural environment to increase public awareness and engender broad cooperation among user groups and stakeholders.

Noise effects

- Incentivize ship designs that include technologies capable of reducing noise generated and transmitted to the water column, such as the use of muffling devices already required for land-based machinery that may help reduce the impacts of vessel noise.
- Evaluate the effects of proposed and existing vessel traffic and associated underwater noise for potential impacts to sensitive areas (e.g., migration routes, spawning areas) so that minimization efforts can be made.
- Exclude vessels or limit specific vessel activities, such as high intensity, low-frequency sonar, to known sensitive EFH if evidence indicates that these activities could have an effect on aquatic organisms.
- Drive piles during low tide periods when substrates are exposed in intertidal areas. This minimizes the direct impacts to fish from sound waves and minimizes the amount of sediments resuspended in the water column.
- Use a vibratory hammer to install piles, when possible. Under those conditions where an impact hammer is required (i.e., substrate type and seismic stability), the pile should be driven as deep as possible with a vibratory hammer prior to the use of the impact hammer. This will minimize noise impacts.

---

[14] http://www.invasivespecies.wa.gov
[15] http://www.oregoninvasivespeciescouncil.org
[16] http://www.iscc.ca.gov

References

Able, K. W., T. M. Grothues, and I. M. Kemp. 2013. Fine-scale distribution of pelagic fishes relative to a large urban pier. Marine Ecology Progress Series 476:185–198.

Able, K. W., J. P. Manderson, and A. L. Studholme. 1999. Habitat quality for shallow water fishes in an urban estuary: The effects of manmade structures on growth. Marine Ecology Progress Series 187:227–235.

Able, K. W., J. P. Manderson, and A. L. Studholme. 1998. The distribution of shallow water juvenile fishes in an urban estuary: The effects of manmade structures in the lower Hudson River. Estuaries 21:731–744.

Baldwin, D. H., J. F. Sandahl, J. S. Labenia, and N. L. Scholz. 2003. Sublethal effects of copper on coho salmon: Impacts on nonoverlapping receptor pathways in the peripheral olfactory nervous system. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 22:2266–2274.

Beamesderfer, R. C., and B. E. Rieman. 1988. Predation by resident fish on juvenile salmonids in a mainstem Columbia reservoir: Part III, abundance and distribution of northern squawfish, walleye, and smallmouth bass. Pages 211–248 *in* T. P. Poe and B. E. Rieman, editors. Predation by Resident Fish on Juvenile Salmonids in John Day Reservoir, 1983–86. Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon.

Bird, P., S. D. W. Comber, M. J. Gardner, and J. E. Ravenscroft. 1996. Zinc inputs to coastal waters from sacrificial anodes. Science of the Total Environment 181:257–264.

Blossey, B., and R. Notzold. 1995. Evolution of increased competitive ability in invasive nonindigenous plants—a hypothesis. Journal of Ecology 83:887–889.

Bowman, M., and R. Dolan. 1982. The influence of a research pier on beach morphology and the distribution of *Emerita talpoida*. Coastal Engineering 6:179–194.

Brinkman, S. F., and W. D. Johnston. 2012. Acute toxicity of zinc to several aquatic species native to the Rocky Mountains. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 62:272–281.

Britt, L. L. 2001. Aspects of the vision and feeding ecology of larval lingcod (*Ophiodon elongatus*) and kelp greenling (*Hexagrammos decagrammus*). Master's thesis, University of Washington, Seattle.

Bulleri, F., and M. G. Chapman. 2010. The introduction of coastal infrastructure as a driver of change in marine environments. Journal of Applied Ecology 47:26–35.

Burdick, D. M., and F. T. Short. 1999. The effects of boat docks on eelgrass beds in coastal waters of Massachusetts. Environmental Management 23:231–240.

Byers, J. W. 1999. The distribution of an introduced mollusk and its role in the long-term demise of a native confamilial species. Biological Invasions 1:339–353.

Calfee, R. D., E. E. Little, H. J. Puglis, E. Scott, W. G. Brumbaugh, and C. A. Mebane. 2014. Acute sensitivity of white sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*) and rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) to copper, cadmium, or zinc in water-only laboratory exposures. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 33:2259–2272.

Caltrans. 2001. Pile installation demonstration project, fisheries impact assessment. PIDP EA 012081. San Francisco–Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Seismic Safety Project, Contract 04A0148. Caltrans, San Francisco.

Campbell, S., C. Roder, L. McKenzie, and W. L. Long. 2002. Seagrass resources in the Whitsunday region, 1999 and 2000. DPI Information Series Q102043. Marine Plant Ecology Group, Cairns, Australia. Available: www.seagrasswatch.org/wp-content/uploads/Resources/Publications/Misc/Report/EastCoast-GBR/Whitsundays_Seagrass_Survey_Final.pdf (September 2022).

Carrasquero, J. 2001. Overwater structures: Freshwater issues. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Codarin, A., L. E. Wysocki, F. Ladich, and M. Picciulin. 2009. Effects of ambient and boat noise on hearing and communication in three fish species living in a marine protected area (Miramare, Italy). Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1880–1887.

Cohen, A. N. 2005. Guide to the exotic species of San Francisco Bay. San Francisco Estuary Institute, Oakland, California

Cohen, A. N., L. H. Harris, B. L. Bingham, J. T. Carlton, J. W. Chapman, C. C. Lambert, G. Lambert, J. C. Ljubenkov, S. N. Murray, L. C. Rao, K. Reardon, and E. Schwindt. 2002. Project report for the southern California exotics expedition 2000: A rapid assessment survey of exotic species in sheltered coastal waters. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, California.

Colle, D. E., R. L. Cailteux, and J. V. Shireman. 1989. Distribution of Florida largemouth bass in a lake after elimination of all submersed aquatic vegetation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 9:213–218.

Currant, M., M. Ruedi, R. J. Petit, and L. Excoffier. 2008. The hidden side of invasions: Massive introgression by local genes. Evolution 62(8):1908–1920.

Edinger, J. E., and J. L. Martin. 2010. Effects of the addition of multi-slip docks on reservoir flushing and water quality: Hydrodynamic modeling; aquatic impact; regulatory limits. The Journal of Transdisciplinary Environmental Studies 9:15.

Eisler, R. 2000. Handbook of Chemical Risk Assessment: Health hazards to humans, plants and animals, Volume 1: Metals. CRC Press, LLC, Boca Raton, Florida.

Fonseca, M. S., P. E. Whitfield, W. J. Kenworth, D. R. Colby, and B. E. Julius. 2004. Use of two spatially explicit models to determine the effect of injury geometry on natural resource recovery. Aquatic Conservation 14(3):281–298.

Francour, P., A. Ganteaume, and M. Poulain. 1999. Effects of boat anchoring in *Posidonia oceanica* seagrass beds in the Port-Cros National Park (north-western Mediterranean Sea). Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 9:391–400.

Fresh, K. L., B. Williams, and D. Penttila. 1995. Overwater structures and impacts on eelgrass in Puget Sound, WA. Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Seattle.

Fresh, K. L., T. Wyllie-Echeverria, S. Wyllie-Echeverria, and B. W. Williams. 2006. Using light permeable grating to mitigate impacts of residential floats on eelgrass *Zostera marina* L. in Puget Sound, Washington. Ecological Engineering 28:354–362.

Glasby, T. M. 1999. Effects of shading on subtidal epibiotic assemblages. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 234:275–290.

Glasby, T. M., S. D. Connell, M. G. Holloway, and C. L. Hewitt. 2007. Nonindigenous biota on artificial structures: Could habitat creation facilitate biological invasions? Marine Biology 151:887–895.

Haas, M. E., C. A. Simenstad, J. R. Cordell, D. A. Beuchamp, and B. S. Miller. 2002. Effects of large overwater structures on epibenthic juvenile salmon prey assemblages in Puget Sound, Washington. Washington State Transportation Commission, U.S. Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Hecht, S. A., D. H. Baldwin, C. A. Mebane, T. Hawkes, S. J. Gross, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. An overview of sensory effects on juvenile salmonids exposed to dissolved copper: Applying a benchmark concentration approach to evaluate sublethal neurobehavioral toxicity. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-83.

Helfman, G. S. 1981. The advantage to fishes hovering in shade. Copeia 1981:392–400.

Hildebrand, J. 2005. Impacts of anthropogenic sound. Pages 101–124 *in* J. E. Reynolds, W. F. Perin, R. R. Reeves, S. Montgomery, and T. J. Ragen, editors. Marine Mammal Research: Conservation Beyond Crisis. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland. Available: https://www.mmc.gov/wp-content/uploads/hildebrand.pdf (September 2022).

Jasny, M., J. Reynolds, C. Horowitz, and A. Wetzler. 1999. Sounding the depths: Supertankers, sonar and rise of undersea noise. Natural Resources Defense Council, Los Angeles, California.

Jenkins, J. A., H. M. Olivier, R. O. Draugelis-Dale, B. E. Eilts, L. Torres, R. Patino, E. Nilsen, and S. L. Goodbred. 2014. Assessing reproductive and endocrine parameters in male largescale suckers (*Catostomus macrocheilus*) along a contaminant gradient in the lower Columbia River, USA. Science of the Total Environment 484:365–378.

Johannessen, J., and A. MacLennan. 2007. Beaches and bluffs of Puget Sound and the northern straits. Report TR-2007-04. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle.

Kelty, R. A., and S. Bliven. 2003. Environmental and aesthetic impacts of small docks and piers, workshop report: Developing a science-based decision support tool for small dock management, phase 1: Status of the science. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series 22. National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Kennish, M. J. 2002. Environmental threats and environmental future of estuaries. Environmental Conservation 29:78–107.

Kenworthy, W. J., and M. S. Fonseca. 1996. Light requirements of seagrasses *Halodule wrightii* and *Syringodium filiforme* derived from the relationship between diffuse light attenuation and maximum depth distribution. Estuaries and Coasts 19:740–750.

Kipple, B., and C. Gabriele. 2004. Glacier Bay watercraft noise—noise characterization for tour, charter, private, and government vessels. Technical Report NSWCCD-71-TR-2004/545. Naval Surface Warfare Center, Bremerton, Washington.

Lalonde, B. A., W. Ernst, and F. Comeau. 2011. Trace metal concentrations in sediments and fish in the vicinity of Ash Lagoon discharges from coal-combustion plants in New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, Canada. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 61:472–481.

Landry, J. B., W. J. Kenworthy, and G. Di Carlo. 2008. The effects of docks on seagrasses with particular emphasis on the threatened seagrass, *Halophila johnsonii*. National Marine Fisheries Service, Beaufort, North Carolina.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Melwani, A. R., D. Gregorio, Y. Jin, M. Stephenson, G. Ichikawa, E. Siegel, D. Crane, G. Lauenstein, and J. A. Davis. 2014. Mussel watch update: Long-term trends in selected contaminants from coastal California, 1977–2010. Marine Pollution Bulletin 81:291–302.

Möller, A.-M., C. Hermsen, T. Floehr, M. H. Lamoree, and H. Segner. 2014. Tissue-Specific Metabolism of Benzo[a]pyrene in Rainbow Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*): A Comparison between the Liver and Immune Organs. Drug Metabolism and Disposition 42(1):111.

Moreno, M., G. Albertelli, and M. Fabiano. 2009. Nematode response to metal, PAHs and organic enrichment in tourist marinas of the Mediterranean Sea. Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1192–1201.

Munsch, S. H., J. R. Cordell, and J. D. Toft. 2017. Effects of shoreline armouring and overwater structures on coastal and estuarine fish: Opportunities for habitat improvement. Journal of Applied Ecology 54(5):1373–1384.

Munsch, S. H., J. R. Cordell, J. D. Toft, and E. E. Morgan. 2014. Effects of seawalls and piers on fish assemblages and juvenile salmon feeding behavior. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 34:814–827.

Neira C., F. Delgadillo-Hinojosa, A. Zirino, G. Mendoza, L. A. Levin, M. Porrachia, and D. D. Deheyn. 2009. Spatial distribution of copper in relation to recreational boating in a California shallow-water basin. Chemistry and Ecology 25(6):417–433.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001. Overwater structures: Marine issues. Research project T1803, Task 35. Washington State Transportation Center, Seattle.

NOAA (National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration). 2009. The Use of Treated Wood Products in Aquatic Environments: Guidelines to West Coast NOAA Fisheries Staff for Endangered Species Act and Essential Fish Habitat Consultations in the Alaska, Northwest and Southwest Regions. National Marine Fisheries Service, Long Beach, California. Available: preservedwood.org/portals/0/documents/NOAA_guidelines.pdf (September 2022).

Ono, K., and C. A. Simenstad. 2014. Reducing the effect of overwater structures on migrating juvenile salmon: An experiment with light. Ecological Engineering 71:180–189.

Pearl, C. A., M. J. Adams, and B. McCreary. 2013. Habitat and co-occurrence of native and invasive crayfish in the Pacific Northwest, USA. Aquatic Invasions 8:171–184.

Penttila, D., and D. Doty. 1990. Results of 1989 eelgrass shading studies in Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Petersen, J. H., and D. M. Gadomski. 1994. Light-mediated predation by Northern Squawfish on juvenile Chinook salmon. Journal of Fish Biology 45:227–242.

Popper, A. N., and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of anthropogenic sources of sound on fishes. Journal of Fish Biology 75:455–488.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Rasheed, M. A. 1999. Recovery of experimentally created gaps with a tropical *Zostera capricorni* (Aschers.) seagrass meadow, Queensland Australia. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 235(2):183–200.

Rousseau, C., F. Baraud, L. Leleyter, and O. Gil. 2009. Cathodic protection by zinc sacrificial anodes: Impact on marine sediment metallic contamination. Journal of Hazardous Materials 167:953–958.

Sandahl, J. F., D. H. Baldwin, J. J. Jenkins, and N. L. Scholz. 2007. A sensory system at the interface between urban stormwater runoff and salmon survival. Environmental Science and Technology 41:2998–3004.

Sargent, F. J., T. Leary, and D. W. Crewz. 1995. Scarring of Florida's seagrass: Assessment and management options. Technical Report TR-1. Florida Department of Environmental Protection, St. Petersburg, Florida.

Scholik, A. R., and H. Y. Yan. 2002. Effects of boat engine noise on the auditory sensitivity of the fathead minnow, *Pimephales promelas*. Environmental Biology of Fishes 63:203–209.

Sethajintanin, D., E. R. Johnson, B. R. Loper, and K. A. Anderson. 2004. Bioaccumulation profiles of chemical contaminants in fish from the lower Willamette River, Portland Harbor, Oregon. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 46:114–123.

Shafer, D. J. 1999. The effects of dock shading on the seagrass *Holodule wrightii* in Perdido Bay, Alabama. Estuaries 22:936–943.

Shafer, D. J., J. Karazsia, L. Carrubba, and C. Martin. 2008. Evaluation of regulatory guidelines to minimize impacts on seagrasses from single-family residential dock structures in Florida and Puerto Rico. ERDC/EL TR-08-X. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Shafer, D. J., and J. Lundin. 1999. Design and construction of docks to minimize seagrass impacts. WRAP Technical Notes Collection. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Simberloff, D., Parker, I., and P. Windle. 2005. Introduced species policy, management, and future research needs. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 3:12–20.

Simenstad, C. A., B. J. Nightingale, R. M. Thom, and D. K. Shreffler. 1999. Impacts of ferry terminals on juvenile salmon migrating along Puget Sound shorelines. Washington State Department of Transportation Research Office, Olympia, Washington.

Simenstad, C. A, A. M. Oson, and R. M. Thom. 1998. Mitigation between regional transportation needs and preservation of eelgrass beds. Washington State Department of Transportation and U.S. Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington. Available: www.wsdot.wa.gov/research/reports/fullreports/421.2.pdf (September 2022).

Stocker, M. 2002. Fish, mollusks and other sea animals' use of sound, and the impact of anthropogenic noise in the marine acoustic environment. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 112:2431.

Strecker, A. L., and J. D. Olden. 2014. Forecasting the vulnerability of lakes to aquatic plant invasions. Invasive Plant Science and Management 7:32–45.

Struck, S. D., C. B. Craft, S. W. Broome, M. D. Sanclements, and J. N. Sacco. 2004. Effects of bridge shading on estuarine marsh benthic invertebrate community structure and function. Environmental Management 34:99–111.

Tabor, R. A., K. L. Fresh, R. M. Piaskowski, H. A. Gearns, and D. B. Hayes. 2011. Habitat use by juvenile Chinook salmon in the nearshore areas of Lake Washington: Effects of depth, lakeshore development, substrate, and vegetation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 31:700–713.

Thom, R. M., and D. K. Shreffler. 1996. Eelgrass meadows near ferry terminals in Puget Sound. Characterization of assemblages and mitigation impacts. Battelle Pacific Northwest Laboratories, Sequim, Washington.

Thom, R. M., S. L. Southard, A. B. Borde, and P. Stoltz. 2008. Light requirements for growth and survival of eelgrass (*Zostera marina* L.) in Pacific Northwest (USA) estuaries. Estuaries and Coasts 31:969–980.

Toft, J. D., J. R. Cordell, C. A. Simenstad, and L. A. Stamatiou. 2007. Fish distribution, abundance, and behavior along city shoreline types in Puget Sound. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:465–480.

Tyrell, M. C., and J. E. Byers. 2007. Do artificial substrates favor nonindigenous fouling species over native species? Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 342:54–60.

van Brummelen, T. C., B. van Hattum, T. Crommentuijn, and D. F. Kalf. 1998. Bioavailability and ecotoxicity of PAH. Pages 203–263 *in* A. H. Neilson, editor. PAH and Related Compounds—Biology (Volume 3-J, the Handbook of Environmental Chemistry). Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Vitousek, P. M., C. M. D'Antonio, L. L. Loope, and R. Westbrooks. 1996. Biological invasion as global environmental change. American Scientist 84:468–478.

Wasson, K., K. Fenn, and J. S. Pearse. 2005. Habitat differences in marine invasions of central California. Biological Invasions 7:935–948.

Whitcraft, C. R., and L. A. Levin. 2007. Regulation of benthic algal and animal communities by salt marsh plants: Impact of shading. Ecology 88:904–917.

Willette, T. M. 2001. Foraging behaviour of juvenile pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and size-dependent predation risk. Fisheries Oceanography 10:110–131.

Willette, T. M., R. T. Cooney, V. Patrick, D. M. Mason, G. L. Thomas, and D. Scheel. 2001. Ecological processes influencing mortality of juvenile pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography 10:14–41.

WSL (Washington State Legislature). 2019. Residential and public recreational docks, piers, ramps, floats, watercraft lifts, and buoys in saltwater areas. WAS 220-660-380. Available: apps.leg.wa.gov/wac/default.aspx?cite=220-660-380 (January 2022).

Zimmerman, R. C. 2006. Light and photosynthesis in seagrass meadows. Pages 303–321 *in* A. W. D. Larkum, R. J. Orth, and C. M. Duarte, editors. Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology, and Conservation. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

17. Water Intake and Discharge Facilities

Human population growth continues to increase demands on water resources for water supply (Li and Wang 2010, Elimelech and Phillip 2011) and human, urban, and industrial waste disposal (USEPA 1984, Grady et al. 1998, Epstein 2002, Parnell 2003, Kress et al. 2004). Increasingly, saltwater is desalinated for use as potable water (Lattemann and Höpner 2008), impacting marine EFH (Roberts et al. 2010). Wastewater systems treat water contaminated by human and urban uses and discharge this treated effluent directly into EFH, potentially with negative impacts on organisms (Porter and Janz 2003, Barber et al. 2012). Cooling-water withdrawals can entrain organisms, impacting food web structure in EFH (Newbold and Iovanna 2007a,b), and industrial facilities produce contaminated effluent that is released directly into EFH (Eljarrat et al. 2007). Furthermore, reduction and contamination of water resources could be exacerbated by climate change in some areas (Mesa et al. 2002, Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005, Caron et al. 2009, Elimelech and Phillip 2011).

This chapter is divided into five sections that outline some of the adverse impacts of water intake and discharge facilities that adversely impact EFH, including Desalination Facilities, Cooling-Water Intake Facilities, Sewage Discharge Facilities, Combined Sewage Overflow, and Industrial Discharge Facilities. Suggestions for avoidance, minimization, and mitigation of these impacts on EFH are provided for each section.

Desalination Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of desalination facilities

(Adapted from Roberts et al. 2010.)

The following factors associated with desalination facilities can impact EFH and are described briefly below: release of contaminants, entrainment and impingement, and alterations to water quality. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Release of contaminants

Chemicals used during pre-treatment and membrane-cleaning of desalination intakes can be toxic to organisms inhabiting EFH (Elimelech and Phillip 2011). Susceptibility to these contaminants varies by species and life stage; however, juvenile stages of fish may be especially susceptible to these chemicals, even at low levels of contamination (Gould et al. 1994).

Entrainment and impingement

Water intakes located in or connected to EFH can entrain and impinge fish (Zydlewski and Johnson 2002, Ellsworth et al. 2010). Entrainment can subject juvenile fish to physical abrasion and rapid pressure changes (Mussen et al. 2014, Zeug and Cavallo 2014). Intake pipes at diversions can stress or disorient fish through entrainment or impingement and can also create conditions that favor predators such as larger fish and birds (Moyle and Israel 2005). Entrainment and impingement often result in the death of fish, and may have cumulative adverse impacts on fish populations (Swanson et al. 2005, Kimmerer 2008, Grimaldo et al. 2009). Seawater intake at desalination facilities can entrain and impinge marine organisms, leading to direct mortality (Newbold and Iovanna 2007b). Nonlethal entrainment or impingement can stress or disorient fish, creating conditions that favor predators such as larger fish and birds (NOAA 1994).

Alterations to water quality

Desalination operations can have negative impacts on water quality in EFH (Zhou et al. 2013). Brine effluent is highly saline and is denser than surrounding water, which could impact benthic communities (Tularam and Ilahee 2007, Del-Pilar-Russo et al. 2008, Roberts et al. 2010, Phillips et al. 2012). Corals, mangroves, aquatic vegetation, and seagrasses have all shown negative responses to increased salinity associated with brine discharge (Raventós et al. 2006, Garcia et al. 2007). Water temperature in brine discharge plumes can be significantly higher than surrounding waters, affecting behavior and physiology of aquatic organisms (Blaxter 1969). In addition, increased water temperatures in the upper strata of the water column can increase water column stratification, which inhibits the diffusion of oxygen into deeper water. This can lead to reduced (hypoxic) or depleted (anoxic) dissolved oxygen concentrations in EFH, especially those that contain excess nutrients (Kennedy et al. 2002).

Potential conservation measures for desalination facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of desalination facilities on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of desalination facilities on EFH.

General guidelines

- Develop and implement BMPs to avoid and minimize impacts to EFH during facility construction (e.g., minimizing noise, prohibiting construction below the mean high water line, developing a stormwater pollution prevention plan).
- Conduct evaluations of facility development effects on EFH, followed by a minimum of three years of monitoring operational effects on EFH.
- Mitigate for any and all impacts to EFH and the biota it supports that cannot be avoided through BMP project design or operations (for examples, see Guidelines for Desalination Plants in the Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary).[17]
- Only consider desalination when existing alternatives (e.g., wastewater recycling) are not feasible.
- Design, site, and operate desalination plants with the lowest possible carbon footprint to avoid or minimize cumulative impacts, including contributions to emissions (e.g., CO_2, CH_4) that accelerate global warming.
- Do not locate desalination plants, intakes, or discharges in or near Habitat Areas of Particular Concern (HAPCs). Do not locate desalination facilities in or near areas of high biological productivity, such as upwelling centers.

Release of contaminants

- Design the facility to minimize impacts of effluent on EFH and organisms or ecological processes therein.

---

[17] https://nmsmontereybay.blob.core.windows.net/montereybay-prod/media/resourcepro/resmanissues/pdf/050610desal.pdf

- Provide a complete list of all chemicals used during construction and operation of the desalination facility. Include quantities for routine use (e.g., cleaning of filter membranes), deleterious effects on aquatic biota, and vetted protocols for storage and disposal. Include a detailed HazMat spill prevention and response plan for chemicals, as needed.
- Evaluate and report on the feasibility of using alternative pretreatment techniques such as ozone pretreatment, subsurface intakes, and membrane filtration. Such alternatives can reduce the need for the use of chemicals.

Entrainment or impingement

- Do not site desalination facilities in or near biologically productive areas (e.g., kelp forests or other dense beds of submerged aquatic vegetation) since entrainment and impingement impacts are in large part dictated by the biological productivity at the site.
- Facility designs must attempt to reduce or eliminate entrainment and impingement. Design subsurface intakes as opposed to traditional open-water intakes, if at all feasible. Other options to reduce entrainment and impingement include:
    - Vertical and radial beach wells.
    - Horizontal directionally drilled (HDD) and slant-drilled wells.
    - Seabed filtration systems or other subseafloor structures.
- Subsurface intakes must be used rather than traditional open-water intakes, where feasible. However, subsurface intakes must not:
    - Cause saltwater intrusion into aquifers.
    - Exacerbate coastal erosion.
    - Negatively impact coastal wetlands that may be connected to the same aquifer.
- If facility uses an open-water intake, developer plans must show plans to minimize entrainment and impingement, such as:
    - Placing the intake structure to avoid sensitive or highly productive habitat.
    - Screening the intake ports.
    - Increasing the number of intake ports or decreasing the intake velocity.

  The project proponent must provide appropriate and applicable estimates of entrainment/impingement rates and the impacts associated with various intake velocities and screen mesh sizes. Evaluations should use local data, including diurnal and seasonal variations in planktonic abundance and location.
- In cases where a subsurface intake is not feasible, use existing pipelines to minimize impacts to the seafloor. If a new pipeline is necessary, developers must evaluate seafloor or subseafloor placement to minimize disturbances to EFH.
- Any impacts to EFH and the biota it supports that cannot be avoided through project design or operations require appropriate mitigation. The necessary level of mitigation will be determined through the use of a biologically based model, such as the habitat production foregone method, in order to account for all “non-use” impacts to affected biota. Mitigation projects should attempt to directly offset the impacted species or habitat (in-place, in-kind mitigation).

Altered water quality

- Determine the feasibility of diluting brine effluent by blending it with other existing discharges.
- Evaluate potential for an integrated regional water-supply project with other water suppliers and agencies considering water-supply projects in the area.

- Discharge brine in an area with high circulation and not located in or near ecologically sensitive areas (e.g., HAPCs).
- Desalination plants proposing to co-locate with power plant once-through cooling systems must include an assessment of the impacts, along with alternative intake and outfall structures that would avoid or minimize these impacts. Evaluate the continued availability and reliability of the feedwater source and assess the impacts that would occur from operating the intake and outfall structures without the use of the power plant once-through cooling structures.
- Evaluate measures that minimize impacts from desalination plant discharge, including:
    - Discharging effluent to an area with greater circulation or greater depth.
    - Increasing the number of diffusers.
    - Increasing the diffuser velocity while minimizing the volume at each outlet.
    - Diluting brine with seawater or another discharge, or using a subsurface discharge structure.
- The project proponent should provide a detailed evaluation of the projected short- and long-term impacts of the brine plume on marine organisms, based on a variety of operational scenarios and oceanographic conditions. Modeling should address different types of seasonal ocean circulation patterns, including consideration of "worst case scenarios".
- Avoid areas with limited water circulation that can "trap" the brine discharge, such as enclosed bays or estuaries. Instead, discharge brines in areas with strong tidal currents to achieve more rapid dilution of the brine by the receiving waters.
- Include results of accepted plume models to illustrate how the plume will behave during variable oceanographic conditions. The plume model should estimate salinity concentrations at the discharge point, as well as where and when it would reach ambient ocean concentrations. The extent, location, and duration of the plume where the salinity is 10% above ambient salinity should also be provided.
- The project proponent should provide information on the physical and chemical parameters of the brine plume, including salinity, temperature, metal concentrations, pH, and oxygen levels. These water-quality characteristics of the discharge should conform to California Ocean Plan requirements and should be as close to ambient conditions of the receiving water as feasible.
- Implement a continuous monitoring program to verify the actual extent of the brine plume, and to determine if the plume is impacting EFH. If it is, mitigation for the EFH impact should be required.

Cooling-Water Intake Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of cooling-water intake facilities

The following factors associated with cooling-water intake facilities can impact EFH and are described briefly below: altered hydrology, entrainment and impingement, and construction and maintenance. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Altered hydrology

Instream and riparian habitat morphology (Tabacchi et al. 1998) and survival of embryonic and larval life stages of fish (Cederholm and Reid 1987, DeVries 1997, Quinn 2005) can be negatively affected by anthropogenic changes in volume and timing of stream discharge. Commercial and domestic water uses associated with cooling-water intake facilities can alter hydrologic processes in EFH. Upstream water use can decrease river flows (Caldwell et al. 2012), alter the transport of sediments (Christie et al. 1993, Fajen and Layzer 1993) and organic matter, reduce water depths, alter water chemistry (NPPC 1986), and exacerbate extreme diel temperature patterns (Zale et al. 1993). Alterations to instream habitat and sediment transport caused by upstream water use can lead to decreases in survival of fish embryos (Lohse et al. 2008, Deitch et al. 2009), impediments to fish migration (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005), and reduction of invertebrate populations (McKay and King 2006) that support fish production (Deitch et al. 2009).

The volume and timing of freshwater delivery to estuary EFH is also impacted by upstream water use at intakes, affecting water residence time, temperature, salinity, water quality, and stratification of the water column (Kimmerer 2002, Flemer and Champ 2006). Thermal effluents can alter the benthic community or kill marine organisms, especially larval fish (Blaxter 1969), and impacts can be severe in nearshore EFH (Schiel et al. 2004, Foster 2005).

Entrainment and impingement

Entrainment and impingement at cooling-water intake facilities can be a significant source of mortality in fish populations (Newbold and Iovanna 2007a,b, White et al. 2010). Water intakes located in or connected to EFH can entrain and impinge fish (Zydlewski and Johnson 2002, Ellsworth et al. 2010). Entrainment can subject juvenile fish to physical abrasion and rapid pressure changes (Mussen et al. 2014, Zeug and Cavallo 2014). Intake pipes at diversions can stress or disorient fish through entrainment or impingement, and can also create conditions that favor predators such as larger fish and birds (Moyle and Israel 2005). Entrainment and impingement often result in the death of fish, and may have cumulative adverse impacts on fish populations (Swanson et al. 2005, Kimmerer 2008, Grimaldo et al. 2009). Nonlethal entrainment or impingement can stress or disorient fish, creating conditions that favor predators such as larger fish and birds (NOAA 1994).

Construction and maintenance

Impacts to aquatic habitats can result from construction-related activities and routine operation and maintenance for cooling-water intake facilities. Dredging associated with construction of cooling-water intake facilities can cause turbidity and sedimentation in nearby waters, degraded water quality, and disturbed substrates (Williams and Thom 2001). As benthic material is disturbed, suspended particulate matter is transported from the site to other locations where it would not otherwise occur (Uncles and Stephens 2010). Toxic biocides or heat treatments are routinely used to clean intake and discharge structures at water-cooling intake facilities. These toxic materials are often permitted and released, either intentionally or accidentally, into sensitive EFH (NMFS 2011).

Potential conservation measures for cooling-water intake facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of cooling-water intake facilities on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of cooling-water intake facilities on EFH.

General guidelines

- All unavoidable impacts to EFH must be mitigated for, both in place and in kind, or as determined through the permitting process. Alternatively, a habitat equivalency analysis could be reviewed, to be approved in conjunction with NOAA.
- Avoid constructing new facilities with once-through cooling systems. All new facilities, regardless of size, should utilize dry cooling (air-cooled) or closed-cycle cooling systems to prevent or minimize impacts.
- Utilize air-cooling and wastewater systems in lieu of building new intake pipes and facilities. If intake pipes and facilities must be built, do so during low-flow periods and tidal stage.
- Implement erosion and sediment control BMPs, and have an equipment spill and containment plan and appropriate materials onsite.
- Utilize alternative water resources, such as reclaimed municipal wastewater or brackish groundwater for cooling-water supply, to reduce impacts to EFH.
- Do not locate facilities that rely on surface water in or near critical EFH, such as estuaries, inlets, heads of submarine canyons, rock reefs, or small coastal embayments.

Altered hydrology

- Redesign and operate existing facilities to create flow conditions that provide for passage and proper timing of life-history stages.
- Monitor facility operations to assess impacts on water temperatures, dissolved oxygen, and other applicable parameters, and use adaptive management to minimize impacts.

Entrainment or impingement

- Incorporate juvenile and adult fish passage facilities on all water diversion projects (e.g., fish bypass systems) according to the most updated NMFS fish passage policies.
- Design intake structures to minimize entrainment or impingement.
- Screen water diversions on all fish-bearing streams. Screening sizes and materials must follow guidelines outlined in the most updated fish screening criteria reports and memorandums. In marine habitats, screening design must minimize impacts to prey items of EFH managed species.

Construction and maintenance

- Use the least damaging antifouling alternatives, such as screens constructed with anti-fouling coatings or materials and self-cleaning systems, to minimize impacts to EFH. Do not use biocides (e.g., chlorine) to prevent fouling.

Sewage Discharge Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of sewage discharge facilities

The following factors associated with sewage discharge facilities can impact EFH and are described briefly below: release of contaminants, construction and maintenance, and loss and alteration of aquatic vegetation. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Release of contaminants

Municipal sewage treatment facilities can discharge large volumes of nutrient-enriched effluent into EFH. Impacts can include eutrophication and harmful algal blooms (O'Reilly 1994, Buck et al. 1997, Goldburg and Triplett 1997, Shumway and Kraeuter 2000, Anderson et al. 2002, Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005), reduced primary production (Parker et al. 2012), and alteration to aquatic vegetation (Levinton 1982, Touchette and Burkholder 2000, Cloern 2001, Cardoni et al. 2010) and fish food web structure (Kennish 1998).

Municipal sewage treatment facilities can also discharge large volumes of effluent containing domestic and industrial contaminants (Islam and Tanaka 2004, Christensen et al. 2009) that may impact fish physiology and community structure in freshwater and marine EFH (Porter and Janz 2003). Wastewater contains pharmaceuticals and other contaminants that can disrupt endocrine function (Brodeur et al. 1997), cause larval deformities (Bodammer 1981), increase larval mortality (Klein-MacPhee et al. 1984, Nelson et al. 1991), impair reproduction (Thurberg and Gould 2005), and harm internal organs and reduce growth in fish (Johnson et al. 2002). Microorganisms entering aquatic habitats through sewage effluents can pose a threat to aquatic organisms (Oliveri 1982, Bossart et al. 1990, Islam and Tanaka 2004).

Construction and maintenance

Impacts to aquatic habitats can result from construction-related activities and routine operation and maintenance of sewage discharge facilities. Dredging associated with construction of water intake or outlet facilities can cause turbidity and sedimentation in nearby waters, degraded water quality, and disturbed substrates (e.g., Williams and Thom 2001). As benthic material is disturbed, suspended particulate matter is transported from the site to other locations where it would not otherwise occur (Uncles and Stephens 2010). Toxic biocides or heat treatments may be used to clean discharge structures at sewage facilities (NMFS 2011).

Loss and alteration of aquatic vegetation

Submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) is an important component to EFH (Rozas and Odum 1988) and requires relatively clear water in order to allow adequate light transmittance for metabolism and growth. Sewage effluent, which is high in N, C, and P compounds, can cause or enhance algal blooms and, in some cases, cause eutrophic conditions in EFH, depressing oxygen, diminishing light transmittance through the water, and reducing SAV (Goldsborough 1997). Eutrophication can also alter the physical structure of SAV (Short et al. 1993) and may increase susceptibility of eelgrass to diseases (Deegan and Buchsbaum 2005).

Potential conservation measures for sewage discharge facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of sewage discharge facilities on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of sewage discharge facilities on EFH.

General guidelines

- Develop programs and projects to reuse treated municipal wastewater and minimize the volume discharged to EFH. Common uses include cooling-water uses, agricultural irrigation, landscaping, and large grassy areas such as golf courses and recreational fields.
- Upgrade wastewater treatment facilities from the standard secondary treatment level. Tertiary treatments can include denitrification, increased pathogen removal, or other customization depending upon end use and need.
- Develop and enforce strong pretreatment programs for industrial and institutional users in the wastewater system (e.g., plating operations for metals, dentists for mercury, hospitals for medications) to reduce the amount of these contaminants entering the system. Many municipalities have these programs already and need to increase participation and enforcement of existing programs.
- Develop, incentivize, and enforce collection programs for personal care products and medications that otherwise end up in the wastewater treatment system and subsequently in EFH.

Release of contaminants

- Pretreat industrial and institutional flows.
- Incentivize collection of unused personal care products and medications.

Construction and maintenance

- Use the least damaging antifouling alternatives, such as screens constructed with anti-fouling coatings or materials and self-cleaning systems, to minimize impacts to EFH. Do not use biocides (e.g., chlorine) to prevent fouling.
- Schedule maintenance so that organisms inhabiting EFH are not affected.

Loss and alteration of aquatic vegetation

- Develop, implement, and increase treated sewage reuse opportunities.
- Denitrify wastewater if nitrogen enrichment is impacting SAV.
- Use constructed wetlands to remove nutrients from wastewater flows prior to discharge.
- Adjust temperature of discharge by using cooling ponds or towers.

Combined Sewage Overflow

Potential adverse impacts of combined sewage overflow

Combined sewage overflow (CSO) can lead to the release of contaminants into EFH. Impacts to EFH caused by the release of contaminants from CSO are described below. Suggested conservation measures related to this factor are provided in the following section.

Release of contaminants

Under normal conditions, combined sewer systems (CSS) transfer untreated sewage and runoff to wastewater treatment plants (WWTPs). However, this may not be the case during significant storm flows, and large amounts of untreated nutrients and chemicals may bypass WWTPs and their holding facilities and flow directly into EFH (Phillips et al. 2012). CSO can be an important point source for pesticides, herbicides, fertilizers, and urban pollutants such as pharmaceuticals that are contained in overflow sewage (Gasperi et al. 2008, Johnson and Sumpter 2014). Many of these contaminants can bioaccumulate in fish (Anderson and MacRae 2006), and increased impervious surfaces and climate change-induced flooding could increase CSO-derived pollutants in EFH (Gamerith et al. 2012).

Potential conservation measures for combined sewage overflow

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of CSO on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of CSO on EFH.

General guidelines

- Conduct routine maintenance and inspection to prevent blockages of combined sewer systems.
- Develop, implement, and increase outreach or inspections of facilities and areas likely to contribute to or cause CSO (e.g., restaurants improperly disposing of grease, homeowners or landscapers disposing of greenwaste into a CSS).
- Increase capacity or separate the municipal and storm sewers in frequently overwhelmed areas.
- Add capacity to WWTP holding ponds, especially if new developments are being built with a CSS.
- Implement new development, and retrofit existing development with numerous infiltration-based BMPs (e.g., vegetate swales, infiltration basins) to accommodate all flows, even those during storms.
- Institute and enforce programs such as stenciling storm sewers, outreach to identified problem areas and neighborhoods, etc., to reduce and prevent the release of contaminants into EFH.

Industrial Discharge Facilities

Potential adverse impacts of industrial discharge facilities

Industrial discharge facilities (IDF) can cause the release of contaminants into EFH. Impacts to EFH caused by the release of contaminants from IDF are described below. Suggested conservation measures related to this factor are provided in the following section.

Release of contaminants

IDF may release contaminants that can have deleterious effects on EFH and organisms (Johnson and Sumpter 2014). A variety of toxic synthetic organic compounds are released from IDFs into EFH (Longwell et al. 1992, Kennish 1998). These toxic chemicals can have various impacts on fish, including reduced egg quality, disrupted development, and reduced survival (Islam and Tanaka 2004, Orrego et al. 2005).

Metals and other trace elements are commonly found in industrial effluent that flows into EFH (Kennish 1998). Metals impact coastal (Arifin et al. 2012) and estuarine EFH (Du Laing et al. 2009), and can have numerous negative impacts on aquatic organisms (Bodammer 1981, Klein-MacPhee et al. 1984, Lang and Dethlefsen 1987, Gould et al. 1994).

Petroleum products originating from IDF can be a major stressor on aquatic vegetation (Lin and Mendelssohn 1996, Culbertson et al. 2008) and organisms in EFH (Kennish 1998).

Potential conservation measures for industrial discharge facilities

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency on a site-specific basis to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of IDF on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The guidelines represent a short menu of actions that could help developers avoid, minimize, and mitigate for impacts of IDF on EFH.

General guidelines

- Do not site discharge points near shellfish beds, submerged aquatic vegetation, reefs, fish spawning grounds, and similar fragile and productive EFH.
- Determine predevelopment benthic productivity by sampling the benthos prior to any construction activity related to installation of new or modified facilities. Implement BMPs to maintain habitat quality during construction. Include seasonal restrictions on development or maintenance activities, use cofferdams, and conduct work at low tide to reduce impacts to EFH. Seasonal restrictions during construction and maintenance operations will help avoid impacts to EFH during species' critical life-history stages (e.g., spawning and egg development periods). Seasonal work windows must be based on documented, accurate periodicity of species of concern.

Release of contaminants

- Improve wastewater treatment systems to minimize contaminant discharge.
- Improve water-use efficiency at the facility to generate less wastewater.

- Develop appropriate modeling studies for plume effects and other parameters of concern in cooperation with resource agencies before finalizing outfall design. Recommendations that involve agencies and were developed as a consequence of the study results must be incorporated in the construction and operation plans for these facilities as enforceable permit conditions.
- Ensure that maximum permissible discharges are appropriate for the given project setting, and specify any and all operational procedures, performance standards, and BMPs that must be observed to address all reasonably foreseeable contingencies over the life of the project.
- Develop an adaptive management plan. Plans must include representatives from appropriate agencies, as they will participate in future consultations for administering the management plan. The management plan must include monitoring protocols designed to measure discharge and potential impacts to EFH.
- Install diffusers on outlets to maximize the rate of dispersion and dilution.
- Use the most effective technology to treat discharge. Implement measures that reduce discharge of biocides and other toxic substances.
- Mitigate the ecological damage arising from outfall maintenance activities.
- If biocides must be used, they must be specifically designed for their intended use, they must be applied as directed by the manufacturer, and the minimal effective dose must not be exceeded.
- Use land treatment and upland disposal or storage for any sludge or other remaining wastes after wastewater processing is concluded. Use of vegetated wetlands as biofilters and pollutant assimilators for large-scale discharges should be limited only to circumstances where other less-damaging alternatives are not available, and the overall environmental impacts to EFH of such an action have been evaluated and vetted by appropriate agency personnel.
- Do not locate pipelines and treatment facilities in or near wetlands and streams.
- Do not site discharges near eroding waterfronts or where receiving waters cannot assimilate the amount of anticipated discharge.
- The design capacity for all facilities must satisfy present and foreseeable needs, and best available technologies must be implemented to reduce impacts to EFH.

References

Anderson, D. M., P. M. Glibert, and J. M. Burkholder. 2002. Harmful algal blooms and eutrophication: Nutrient sources, composition, and consequences. Estuaries 25:704–726.

Anderson, T. d., and J. D. MacRae. 2006. Polybrominated diphenyl ethers in fish and wastewater samples from an area of the Penobscot River in Central Maine. Chemosphere 62(7):1153–1160.

Arifin, Z., R. Puspitasari, and N. Miyazaki. 2012. Heavy metal contamination in Indonesian coastal marine ecosystems: A historical perspective. Coastal Marine Science 35:227–233.

Barber, L. B., A. M. Vajda, C. Douville, D. O. Norris, and J. H. Writer. 2012. Fish endocrine disruption responses to a major wastewater treatment facility upgrade. Environmental Science & Technology 46:2121–2131.

Blaxter, J. H. S. 1969. Development: Eggs and larvae. Pages 177–252 *in* W. S. Hoar and D. J. Randall, editors. Fish Physiology. Academic Press, Inc., New York.

Bodammer, J. E. 1981. The cytopathological effects of copper on the olfactory organs of larval fish (*Pseudopleuronectes americanus* and *Melanogrammus aeglefinus*). ICES CM-1981/E:46. International Council for the Exploration of the Sea, Copenhagen, Denmark.

Bossart, G., T. Brawner, C. Cabal, M. Kuhns, E. Eimstad, J. Caron, M. Trimm, and P. Bradley. 1990. Hepatitis B-like infection in a Pacific whitesided dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus obliquidens*). American Veterinary Medical Association 196:127–130.

Brodeur, J. C., G. Sherwood, J. B. Rasmussen, and A. Hontela. 1997. Impaired cortisol secretion in yellow perch (*Perca flavescens*) from lakes contaminated by heavy metals: In vivo and in vitro assessment. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:2752–2758.

Buck, E. H., C. Copeland, J. A. Zinn, and D. U. Vogt. 1997. *Pfiesteria* and related harmful blooms: Natural resource and human health concerns. Congressional Research Service Report for Congress 97-1047 ENR. National Council for Science and the Environment, Washington, D.C.

Caldwell, P. V., G. Sun, S. G. McNulty, E. C. Cohen, and J. A. Moore Myers. 2012. Impacts of impervious cover, water withdrawals, and climate change on river flows in the conterminous U.S. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 16:2839–2857.

Cardoni, D. A., J. P. Isacch, M. E. Fanjul, M. Escapa, and O. O. Iribarne. 2010. Relationships between anthropogenic sewage discharge, marsh structure and bird assemblages in a SW Atlantic saltmarsh. Marine Environmental Research 71:122–130.

Caron, D. A., M. E. Garneau, E. Seubert, M. D. A. Howard, L. Darjany, A. Schnetzer, I. Cetinic, G. Filteau, P. Lauri, B. Jones, and S. Trussell. 2009. Harmful algae and their potential impacts on desalination operations off southern California. Water Research 44:385–416.

Cederholm, C. J., and L. M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) populations of the Clearwater River, Washington: A project summary. Pages 373–398 *in* E. O. Salo and T. W. Cundy, editors. Streamside Management: Forestry and Fishery Interactions. University of Washington, Seattle.

Christensen, A. M., B. Markussen, A. Baun, and B. Halling-Sørensen. 2009. Probabilistic environmental risk characterization of pharmaceuticals in sewage treatment plant discharges. Chemosphere 77:351–358.

Christie, D., E. Allen, and G. J. Jobsis. 1993. Diversions. Pages 181–186 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Cloern, J. E. 2001. Our evolving conceptual model of the coastal eutrophication problem. Marine Ecology Progress Series 210:223–253.

Culbertson, J. B., I. Valiela, M. Pickart, E. E. Peacock, and C. M. Reddy. 2008. Long-term consequences of residual petroleum on salt marsh grass. Journal of Applied Ecology 45:1284–1292.

Deegan, L. A., and R. N. Buchsbaum. 2005. The effect of habitat loss and degradation on fisheries. Pages 67–96 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The Decline in Fisheries Resources in New England: Evaluating the Impact of Overfishing, Contamination, and Habitat Degradation. Publication MITSG 05-5. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Deitch, M. J., G. M. Kondolf, and A. M. Merenlender. 2009. Hydrologic impacts of small-scale instream diversions for frost and heat prevention in the California wine country. River Research and Applications 25:118–134.

Del-Pilar-Ruso, Y., J. A. De-la-Ossa-Carretero, F. Giménez-Casalduero, and J. L. Sánchez-Lizaso. 2008. Effects of a brine discharge over soft bottom Polychaeta assemblage. Environmental Pollution 156:240–250.

DeVries, P. 1997. Riverine salmonid egg burial depths: A review of published data and implications for scour studies. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:1685–1698.

Du Laing, G., A. M. K. Van de Moortel, W. Moors, P. De Grauwe, E. Meers, F. M. G. Tack, and M. G. Verloo. 2009. Factors affecting metal concentrations in reed plants (*Phragmites australis*) of intertidal marshes in the Scheldt estuary. Ecological Engineering 35:310–318.

Elimelech, M., and W. A. Phillip. 2011. The future of seawater desalination: Energy, technology, and the environment. Science 333:712–717.

Eljarrat, E., A. Labandeira, G. Marsh, D. Raldúa, and D. Barceló. 2007. Decabrominated diphenyl ether in river fish and sediment samples collected downstream an industrial park. Chemosphere 69:1278–1286.

Ellsworth, C. M., T. J. Tyler, and S. P. VanderKooi. 2010. Using spatial, seasonal, and diel drift patterns of larval Lost River suckers *Deltistes luxatus* (Cypriniformes: Catostomidae) and shortnose suckers *Chasmistes brevirostris* (Cypriniformes: Catostomidae) to help identify a site for water withdrawal structure on the Williamson River, Oregon. Environmental Biology of Fishes 89:47–57.

Epstein, E. 2002. Land applications of sewage sludge and biosolids. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Fajen, O. F., and J. B. Layzer. 1993. Agricultural practices. Pages 257–267 *in* C. F. Bryanand D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Flemer, D. A., and M. A. Champ. 2006. What is the future fate of estuaries given nutrient over-enrichment, freshwater diversion and low flows? Marine Pollution Bulletin 52:247–258.

Foster, M. 2005. An assessment of the studies used to detect impacts to marine environments by California's coastal power plants using once-through cooling: A plant by plant review. California Energy Commission, Sacramento, California. Available: www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/ocean/cwa316/docs/workshop_laguna2005/comments/cec_staffreport.pdf (September 2022).

Garcia, E., O. Invers, M. Manzanera, E. Ballesteros, and J. Romero. 2007. Impact of the brine from a desalination plant on a shallow seagrass (*Posidonia oceanica*) meadow. Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science 72:579–590.

Gamerith, V., J. Olsson, D. Camhy, M. Hochedlinger, P. Kutschera, S. Schlobinski, and G. Gruber. 2012. Assessment of combined sewer overflows under climate change—urban drainage pilot study Linz. Pages 1–9 *in* Proceedings of IWA World Congress on Water, Climate and Energy. Available: www.smhi.se/polopoly_fs/1.24829.1347460676!/Paper_WCE_Dublin_Gamerith_etal.pdf (September 2022).

Gasperi, J., S. Garnaud, V. Rocher, and R. Moilleron. 2008. Priority pollutants in wastewater and combined sewer overflow. Science of the Total Environment 407:263–272.

Goldburg, R. J., and T. Triplet. 1997. Murky waters: Environmental effects of aquaculture in the United States. Environmental Defense Fund, Washington, D.C.

Goldsborough, W. J. 1997. Human impacts on SAV—a Chesapeake Bay case study. Pages 36–39 *in* C. D. Stephan and T. E. Bigford, editors. Atlantic coastal submerged aquatic vegetation: A review of its ecological role, anthropogenic impacts, state regulation, and value to Atlantic coastal fisheries. ASMFC Habitat Management Series #1. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Gould, E., P. E. Clark, and F. P. Thurberg. 1994. Pollutant effects on demersal fishes. Pages 30–41 *in* R. W. Langton, J. B. Pearce, and J. A. Gibson, editors. Selected living resources, habitat conditions, and human perturbations of the Gulf of Maine: Environmental and ecological considerations for fishery management. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-106.

Grady, C. P. L., G. T. Daigger, and H. C. Lim. 1998. Biological wastewater treatment. Marcel Dekker, New York.

Grimaldo, L. F., T. Sommer, N. Van Ark, G. Jones, E. Holland, P. B. Moyle, B. Herbold, and P. Smith. 2009. Factors affecting fish entrainment into massive water diversions in a tidal freshwater estuary: Can fish losses be managed? North American Journal of Fisheries Management 29:1253–1270.

Islam, M. S., and M. Tanaka. 2004. Impacts of pollution on coastal and marine ecosystems including coastal and marine fisheries and approach for management: A review and synthesis. Marine Pollution Bulletin 48:624–649.

Johnson, L. L., T. K. Collier, and J. E. Stein. 2002. An analysis in support of sediment quality thresholds for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) to protect estuarine fish. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 12:517–538.

Johnson, A. C., and J. P. Sumpter. 2014. Putting pharmaceuticals into the wider context of challenges to fish populations in rivers. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B 369:20130581.

Kennedy, V. S., R. R. Twilley, J. A. Kleypas, J. H. Cowan, and S. R. Hare. 2002. Coastal and marine ecosystems and global climate change: Potential effects on U.S. resources. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, Arlington, Virginia.

Kennish, M. J. 1998. Pollution impacts on marine biotic communities. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2002. Effects of freshwater flow on abundance of estuarine organisms: Physical effects or trophic linkages? Marine Ecology Progress Series 243:39–55.

Kimmerer, W. J. 2008. Losses of Sacramento River Chinook salmon and delta smelt to entrainment in water diversions in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science 6: Article 2.

Klein-MacPhee, G., J. A. Cardin, and W. J. Berry. 1984. Effects of silver on eggs and larvae of the winter flounder. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 113:247–251.

Kress, N., B. Herut, and B. S. Galil. 2004. Sewage sludge impact on sediment quality and benthic assemblages off the Mediterranean coast of Israel—a long-term study. Marine Environmental Research 57:213–233.

Lang, T., and V. Dethlefsen. 1987. Cadmium in skeletally deformed and normally developed Baltic cod (*Gadus morhua* L.). ICES CM-1987/E:30. International Council for the Exploration of the Sea, Copenhagen, Denmark.

Lattemann, S., and T. Höpner. 2008. Environmental impact and impact assessment of seawater desalination. Desalination 220:1–15.

Levinton, J. 1982. Marine ecology. Prentice-Hall, New York.

Li, D., and H. Wang. 2010. Development of reverse osmosis membranes in desalination: A review. Chemeca 2010: Engineering at the Edge, 26–29 September. Adelaide, Australia.

Lin, Q., and I. A. Mendelssohn. 1996. A comparative investigation of the effects of south Louisiana crude oil on the vegetation of fresh, brackish, and salt marshes. Marine Pollution Bulletin 32:202–209.

Lohse, K. A., D. A. Newburn, J. J. Opperman, and A. M. Merenlender. 2008. Forecasting relative impacts of land use on anadromous fish habitat to guide conservation planning. Ecological Applications 18:467–482.

Longwell, A. C., S. Chang, A. Hebert, J. Hughes, and D. Perry. 1992. Pollution and development abnormalities of Atlantic fishes. Environmental Biology of Fishes 35:1–21.

McKay, S., and A. J. King. 2006. Potential ecological effects of water extraction in small, unregulated streams. River Research and Applications 22:1023–1037.

Mesa, M. G., L. K. Weiland, and P. Wagner. 2002. Effects of acute thermal stress on the survival, predator avoidance, and physiology of juvenile fall Chinook salmon. Northwest Science 76:118–128.

Moyle, P. B., and J. A. Israel. 2005. Untested assumptions: Effectiveness of screening diversions for conservation of fish populations. Fisheries 30:20–28.

Mussen, T. D., D. Cocherell, J. B. Poletto, J. S. Reardon, Z. Hockett, A. Ercan, H. Bandeh, M. L. Kavvas, J. J. Chech, Jr., and N. A. Fangue. 2014. Unscreened water-diversion pipes pose an entrainment risk to the threatened green sturgeon, *Acipenser medirostris*. PLOS ONE 9:e86321.

Nelson, R. L., M. McHenry, and W. S. Platts. 1991. Mining. Pages 425–458 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. Special Publication 19. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Newbold, S. C., and R. Iovanna. 2007a. Ecological effects of density-independent mortality: Application to cooling-water withdrawals. Ecological Applications 17:390–406.

Newbold, S. C., and R. Iovanna. 2007b. Population level impacts of cooling water withdrawals on harvested fish stocks. Environmental Science & Technology 41:2108–2114.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2011. Impacts to Essential Fish Habitat from Non-Fishing Activities in Alaska. Update to Appendix G of the 2005 Environmental Impact Statement for Essential Fish Habitat Identification and Conservation in Alaska. National Marine Fisheries Service, Juneau, Alaska.

NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration). 1994. Experimental fish guidance devices. Position statement. National Marine Fisheries Service, Long Beach, California.

NPPC (Northwest Power Planning Council). 1986. Compilation of information on salmon and steelhead losses in the Columbia River Basin. Columbia River Basin and Wildlife Program, Portland, Oregon.

O'Reilly, J. E. 1994. Nutrient loading and eutrophication. Pages 25–30 *in* R. W. Langton, J. B. Pearce, and J. A. Gibson, editors. Selected living resources, habitat conditions, and human perturbations of the Gulf of Maine: Environmental and ecological considerations for fishery management. U.S. Department of Commerce, NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-106.

Olivieri, V. 1982. Bacterial indicators of pollution. Pages 21–41 *in* W. Pipes, editor. Bacterial indicators of pollution. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Orrego, R., G. Moraga-Cid, M. González, R. Barra, A. Valenzuela, A. Burgos, and J. F. Gavilán. 2005. Reproductive, physiological, and biochemical responses in juvenile female rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) exposed to sediment from pulp and paper mill industrial discharge areas. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 24:1935–1943.

Parker, A. E., R. C. Dugdale, and F. P. Wilkerson. 2012. Elevated ammonium concentrations from wastewater discharge depress primary productivity in the Sacramento River and the Northern San Francisco Estuary. Marine Pollution Bulletin 64:574–586.

Parnell, P. 2003. The effects of sewage discharge on water quality and phytoplankton of Hawaiian coastal waters. Marine Environmental Research 55:293–311.

Phillips, B. M., B. S. Anderson, K. Seigler, J. P. Voorhees, S. Katz, L. Jennings, and R. S. Tjeerdema. 2012. Hyper-salinity thresholds for nine California Ocean Plan toxicity test protocols. Final Report 11-133-250. California State Water Resources Control Board, Sacramento, California.

Porter, C. M., and D. M. Janz. 2003. Treated municipal sewage discharge affects multiple levels of biological organization in fish. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety 54:199–206.

Quinn, T. P. 2005. The behavior and ecology of Pacific salmon and trout. University of Washington, Seattle.

Raventós, N., E. Macpherson, and A. García-Rubies. 2006. Effect of brine discharge from a desalination plant on macrobenthic communities in the NW Mediterranean. Marine Environmental Research 62(1):1–14.

Roberts, D. A., E. L. Johnston, and N. A. Knott. 2010. Impacts of desalination plant discharges on the marine environment: A critical review of published studies. Water Research 44:5117–5128.

Rozas, L. P., and W. E. Odum. 1988. Occupation of submerged aquatic vegetation by fishes: Testing the roles of food and refuge. Oecologia 77:101–106.

Schiel, D. R., J. R. Steinbeck, and M. S. Foster. 2004. Ten years of induced ocean warming causes comprehensive changes in marine benthic communities. Ecology 85:1833–1839.

Short, F. T., D. M. Burdick, J. S. Wolf, and G. E. Jones. 1993. Eelgrass in estuarine research reserves along the East Coast, U S.A. Part I: Declines from pollution and disease and Part II: Management of eelgrass meadows. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Shumway, S. E., and J. N. Kraeuter. 2000. Molluscan shellfish research and management: Charting a course for the future. Final Proceedings from the Workshop; 2000 Jan; Charleston, SC. U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Swanson, C., P. S. Young, and J. J. Cech. 2005. Close encounters with a fish screen: Integrating physiological and behavioral results to protect endangered species in exploited ecosystems. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 134:1111–1123.

Tabacchi, E., D. L. Correll, R. Hauer, G. Pinay, A. M. Planty-Tabacchi, and R. C. Wissmar. 1998. Development, maintenance and role of riparian vegetation in the river landscape. Freshwater Biology 40:497–516.

Thurberg, F. P., and E. Gould. 2005. Pollutant effects upon cod, haddock, pollock, and flounder of the inshore fisheries of Massachusetts and Cape Cod Bays. Pages 43–66 *in* R. Buchsbaum, J. Pederson, and W. E. Robinson, editors. The decline of fisheries resources in New England: Evaluating the impact of overfishing, contamination, and habitat degradation. Publication MITSG 05-5. MIT Sea Grant, Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Touchette, B. W., and J. M. Burkholder. 2000. Review of nitrogen and phosphorus metabolism in seagrasses. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 250:133–67.

Tularam, G. A., and M. Ilahee. 2007. Environmental concerns of desalinating seawater using reverse osmosis. Journal of Environmental Monitoring 9:805–813.

Uncles, R. J., and J. A. Stephens. 2010. Turbidity and sediment transport in a muddy sub-estuary. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 87:213–224.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 1984. Best management practices for agricultural nonpoint source control: IV. Pesticides. ES-NWQEP-84/02. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

White, J. W., K. J. Nichols, L. Clarke, and J. L. Largier. 2010. Larval entrainment in cooling water intakes: Spatially explicit models reveal effects on benthic metapopulations and shortcomings of traditional assessments. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 67:2014–2031.

Williams, G. D., and R. M. Thom. 2001. Marine and estuarine shoreline modification issues. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Sequim, Washington.

Zale, A. V., O. E. Maughan, D. J. Orth, and W. Layher. 1993. Withdrawals. Pages 271–281 *in* C. F. Bryan and D. A. Rutherford, editors. Impacts on warmwater streams: Guidelines for evaluation. American Fisheries Society, Little Rock, Arkansas.

Zeug, S. C., and B. J. Cavallo. 2014. Controls on the entrainment of juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) into large water diversions and estimates of population-level loss. PLOS ONE 9:e101479.

Zhou, J., V. W. C. Chang, and A. G. Fane. 2013. An improved life cycle impact assessment (LCIA) approach for assessing aquatic eco-toxic impact of brine disposal from seawater desalination plants. Desalination 308:233–241.

Zydlewski, G. B., and J. R. Johnson. 2002. Response of bull trout fry to four types of water diversion screens. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 22:1276–1282.

18. Pile Driving and Removal

Potential Adverse Impacts of Pile Driving and Removal

The following factors associated with pile driving and removal can impact EFH and are described briefly below: loss and alteration of habitat, altered hydrology and geomorphology, sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity, release of contaminants, and noise effects. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Loss and alteration of habitat

Depending on the substrate, piling material, the number of piles, and their spacing, the impacts of piling placement on EFH may be significant (Williams 1988, Thom et al. 1994, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). Locating pilings in seagrass beds resulted in direct removal of seagrass during dock construction; however, different installation and removal techniques may influence the extent and magnitude of piling impact on EFH. Jetting—a technique where water is jetted through a pipe to erode earth while installing a piling—tends to cause greater disruption to seagrass than driving piles with a vibratory or impact hammer. Moreover, jetting may disrupt adjacent vegetation, resulting in bare areas around pilings that are subject to scour. Conversely, pile driving uses a low-pressure pump to produce a starter hole, followed by driving piling sharpened on one end with a vibratory or an impact hammer into the substrate. This technique reduces the physical removal and disturbance of seagrasses in the area of the piling.

Regardless of the technique, these activities directly impact the substrate and associated biota. Bare areas around the base of pilings placed in seagrass beds ranged between 0.89 m to 2 m in diameter in St. Andrew Bay, Florida (Shafer and Robinson 2001). The accumulation of debris and shells from barnacles, mollusks, and other marine organisms at the base of the pilings may inhibit the ability of seagrasses to recolonize the area surrounding the pilings (Shafer and Lundin 1999), and may shift the community from biota normally associated with sand, gravel, mud, or eelgrass substrates to communities associated with shells (Penttila and Doty 1990). The presence of pilings can alter sediment distribution and bottom topography, creating small depressions that preclude eelgrass growth. For example, impressions approximately 1 m deep formed around individual pilings associated with a large pier in North Carolina (Miller et al. 1983). Although these changes in hydrology and sediment deposition vary with substrate type, habitat changes associated with pilings may alter the local plant and animal communities (Penttila and Doty 1990, Thom et al. 1994).

Altered hydrology and geomorphology

The long-term presence of pilings, with or without associated overwater decking, may impact adjacent benthic communities, including seagrass, by altering currents. Pilings can have adverse effects to EFH by the altering of wave energy and substrate composition (Kahler et al. 2000, Carrasquero 2001, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, WDFW 2006). When placed in moving water, pilings may disrupt the flow of water, which can either cause scour and erosion around the base of the pilings or increased sedimentation across a larger area, depending on pier orientation, water movement, and how pilings affect water movement (Kelty and Bliven 2003). For example, in an analysis of 20 large piers in the Southern California Bight, no appreciable effect of pier and piling placement was found on adjacent shorelines (Noble 1978); however, a similarly large pier in North Carolina produced a permanent trough over 3 m deep under the pier, with scouring around individual pilings over 1 m deep (Miller et al. 1983). In the Tim Ford Reservoir, Tennessee, a modeling experiment showed a reduction in reservoir flushing associated with multi-slip docking facilities, which led to degraded water quality by increasing coliform bacteria, decreasing dissolved oxygen, and increasing algal densities and sedimentation (Edinger and Martin 2010). The resulting changes in sediment composition caused by scour or deposition related to pilings may affect fish and shellfish that prefer or depend on specific substrate and sediment types (Bowman and Dolan 1982, Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, WDFW 2006).

Sedimentation, siltation, and turbidity

The long-term presence of pilings, with or without associated overwater decking, may impact adjacent benthic communities, including seagrass, by increasing sediment accumulation and bioturbators (organisms that disturb benthic habitats through their activities). Pile installation and removal activities related to construction of overwater structures may result in elevated levels of suspended sediment and organic particles in the water column, which can reduce light penetration and lower photosynthetic rates (Dennison 1987). If suspended sediment loads remain high for an extended period of time, fish may suffer gill injury and potentially mortality (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001, Wilber and Clarke 2001) and reduced feeding ability (Benfield and Minello 1996). The persistence of high suspended sediment levels and associated impacts are dependent upon type of sediment (i.e., denser sand particles settle more quickly than silt), duration of activity, hydrology, and other physical factors of the site. Additionally, the contents of suspended material may result in short-term oxygen depletion, which may impact higher trophic levels (Nightingale and Simenstad 2001). For more information and detail on the impacts of sedimentation on EFH, see Chapter 2.

Release of contaminants

The long-term presence of pilings, with or without associated overwater decking, may impact adjacent benthic communities, including seagrass, by leaching contaminants from chemically treated timber. Overwater structures such as marinas, wharves, and piers use treated wood to reduce biological decay, which is accomplished by applying chemicals to the wood to stop biofouling. Contaminants in wood regularly leach into the surrounding environment and have an adverse effect on EFH.

Research has demonstrated that contaminants introduced into marine environments are adsorbed or absorbed by marine organisms and potentially transferred up the food chain, ultimately affecting animal reproduction and population viability (Poston 2001, Sethajintanin et al. 2004, Meador et al. 2010, Jenkins et al. 2014, Melwani et al. 2014). Outmigrating juvenile Chinook salmon (*Onorhynchus tshawytscha*) in an urban estuary in Seattle, Washington, accumulated 3–5× more polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) when migrating through the developed east side of the estuary rather than the more natural, west side (Meador et al. 2010). Fish from the Willamette River in Portland Harbor, Oregon, tested positive for 25 PCBs, 15 organochlorine (OC) pesticides, and levels of mercury up to 0.52 µg/g (Sethajintanin et al. 2004). Many states regulate the use of contaminants, including OCs, PCBs, butylins, lead, and silver, following studies showing severe effects on fish and wildlife. Mussels have been used to assess bioaccumulation of contaminants in California waters for over forty years (Graham 1972, Melwani et al. 2014). An investigation of contaminant levels in mussels along the California coast found a vast improvement, with OC and PCB levels 75% lower than during the 1980s. Some of the steepest declines were exhibited in the San Francisco Bay (Melwani et al. 2014), potentially due to declines in petroleum refineries, use of creosote, motor vehicle use, and wood-burning.

Creosote, ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate (ACZA), and chromated copper arsenate (CCA Type C) are the most common chemicals used to treat wood used in pilings. In treated wood products, the main active ingredients of concern affecting fishery resources are polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in creosote, and copper. PAHs are released from creosote-treated wood; PAHs have been reported to cause cancer, reproductive anomalies, immune dysfunction, impaired growth and development, and other impairments in fish, depending on concentration and duration of exposure (Poston 2001, Johnson et al. 2007, Spearow et al. 2011). Adult and juvenile Chinook and coho (*O. kisutch*) salmon were tested for concentrations of PCBs, dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT), PAHs, and OC pesticides from estuaries in Washington and Oregon (Johnson et al. 2007). The most widespread contaminants included PCBs, DDT, and PAHs, with greater levels in Chinook salmon, which spend more time than coho in estuaries foraging on contaminated organisms (Johnson et al. 2007). Concentrations of PAHs were especially high in estuaries closer to developed areas, such as Duwamish Estuary, Willapa Bay, Grays Harbor, and Yaquina Bay (Johnson et al. 2007). Copper has been found to have significant effects on fish behavior and olfaction (Baldwin et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014). When exposed to levels of copper as low as 5 µg/L, salmonids exhibited an impaired sense of smell and decreased startle response, caused by a pronounced depletion of ciliated sensory and nonsensory cells in the olfactory rosette (Baldwin et al. 2011, McIntyre et al. 2012, Sovová et al. 2014). The decreased startle response has adverse implications for predator avoidance, and may indirectly cause increased mortalities through predation (McIntyre et al. 2012).

A common mitigation for activities and development in the nearshore includes the removal of existing creosote-treated pilings. In some cases, the long-term benefits to EFH from removing a consistent source of contamination may outweigh the temporary adverse effects of turbidity. Pile installation and removal can disturb aquatic habitats by resuspending bottom sediments and recirculating toxic metals, hydrocarbons, hydrophobic organics, pesticides, pathogens, and nutrients into the water column (USEPA 2000). Any toxic metals, organics, pathogens, or viruses absorbed or adsorbed to fine-grained particulates in the sediment may become biologically available to organisms.

Noise effects

Pile driving generates intense underwater sound pressure waves that may adversely affect the ecological functioning of EFH. These pressure waves can cause physiological and behavioral impacts. Injuries in fish associated directly with pile driving include rupture of the swim bladder, internal hemorrhaging, and behavior alterations (Popper and Hastings 2009). Of the reported fish kills associated with pile driving, all have occurred during use of an impact hammer on hollow steel piles (Popper and Hastings 2009, Halvorsen et al. 2011).These effects can occur even when piles are driven on land adjacent to water. Injury is expected when fish are exposed to either a peak pressure that exceeds 206 dB (decibel) re: 1 µPa (Pascal), or a size-dependent cumulative sound exposure level (SEL) that exceeds 187 dB for fishes larger than 2 g, or 183 dB for fishes smaller than 2 g (Halvorsen et al. 2011). Observed behavioral changes in response to underwater sound include increased startle responses, changes in swimming activity, and increases in stress hormones (Hastings and Popper 2005); however, more studies are needed to measure the behavior response to pile driving.

The sounds produced during pile driving depend on a variety of factors, including the type and size of the pile, the firmness of the substrate into which the pile is being driven, the depth of water, and the type and size of the pile-driving hammer (Halvorsen et al. 2011). Larger piles can cause injury or death because greater energy is required and higher sound levels are produced (Feist et al. 1996). Wood and concrete piles may produce lower sound pressures than hollow steel piles of a similar size, and firmer substrates require more energy to drive piles so more intense sound pressures can be produced (Feist et al. 1996). For more information and detail on the impacts of pile driving-related underwater noise, see Chapter 19.

Potential Conservation Measures for Pile Driving and Removal

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency on a site-specific basis to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of pile driving and removal on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The options represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of pile driving and removal on EFH.

General guidelines

- Drive and remove piles when water current is reduced (i.e., centered on slack current) in areas of strong current, to minimize the number of fish exposed to adverse levels of underwater sound.
- Drive and remove piles during low tide periods when substrates are exposed in intertidal areas. This minimizes the direct impacts to fish from sound waves and minimizes the amount of sediments resuspended in the water column.
- Encircle the pile with a silt curtain that extends from the surface of the water to the substrate, where appropriate and feasible, if within suitable SAV habitat or contaminated sediments.
- Address the cumulative impacts of past, present, and foreseeable future development activities on aquatic habitats by considering them in the review process for pile-driving projects.

Pile driving

- Avoid driving piles with an impact hammer when fish are present. Alternatives include vibratory hammers or press-in pile drivers.
- Use a vibratory hammer to install piles, when possible. Under those conditions where impact hammers are required

  (i.e., substrate type and seismic stability), the pile should be driven as deep as possible with a vibratory hammer prior to the use of the impact hammer, to minimize noise impacts.
- Implement measures to attenuate the sound or minimize impacts to aquatic resources during piling installation. Methods to mitigate sound impacts include, but are not limited to:
  - Using noise attenuation devices such as wood blocks, bubble curtains, or a dewatered cofferdam.
  - Driving piles during low-water conditions for intertidal areas.
  - Utilizing appropriate work windows that avoid impacts during sensitive times of the year (e.g., anadromous fish runs and spawning, larval and juvenile development periods).
  - Monitoring sound levels and halting pile driving before cumulative SEL injury thresholds are reached. Resume pile driving after 12 hours.

Pile removal

- Minimize the suspension of sediments and disturbance of the substrate when removing piles. Methods include, but are not limited to:
  - Removing piles with a vibratory hammer rather than a direct pull or clamshell method, when pile length and quality permits.
  - Removing piles slowly to allow sediment to slough off at or near the mudline.
  - Hitting or vibrating the pile first, to break the bond between the sediment and the pile. This minimizes the likelihood of the pile breaking and reduces the amount of sediment slough.
  - Encircling the pile or piles with a silt curtain that extends from the surface of the water to the substrate.
- Remove creosote-coated piles completely, rather than cutting or breaking off, if the piles are structurally sound.
- Cap all holes left by piles with clean, native sediments.

References

Baldwin, D. H., C. P. Tatara, and N. L. Scholz. 2011. Copper-induced olfactory toxicity in salmon and steelhead: Extrapolation across species and rearing environments. Aquatic Toxicology 101:295–297.

Benfield, M. C., and T. J. Minello. 1996. Relative effects of turbidity and light intensity on reactive distance and feeding of an estuarine fish. Environmental Biology of Fish 46:211–216.

Bowman, M., and R. Dolan. 1982. The influence of a research pier on beach morphology and the distribution of *Emerita talpoida*. Coastal Engineering 6:179–194.

Carrasquero, J. 2001. Overwater structures: Freshwater issues. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Dennison, W. C. 1987. Effect of light on seagrass photosynthesis, growth and depth distribution. Aquatic Botany 27:15–26.

Edinger, J. E., and J. L. Martin. 2010. Effects of the addition of multi-slip docks on reservoir flushing and water quality: Hydrodynamic modeling; aquatic impact; regulatory limits. The Journal of Transdisciplinary Environmental Studies 9:1–15.

Feist, B. E., J. J. Anderson, and R. Miyamoto. 1996. Potential impacts of pile driving on juvenile pink (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and chum (*O. keta*) salmon behavior and distribution. University of Washington, Seattle.

Graham, D. L. 1972. Trace metal levels in intertidal mollusks of California. Veliger 14:365–372.

Halvorsen, M. B., B. M. Casper, C. M. Woodley, T. J. Carlson, and A. N. Popper. 2011. Predicting and mitigating hydroacoustic impacts on fish from pile installations. NCHRP Research Results Digest 363, Project 25–28. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, California.

Jenkins, J. A., H. M. Olivier, R. O. Draugelis-Dale, B. E. Eilts, L. Torres, R. Patino, E. Nilsen, and S. L. Goodbred. 2014. Assessing reproductive and endocrine parameters in male largescale suckers (*Catostomus macrocheilus*) along a contaminant gradient in the lower Columbia River, USA. Science of the Total Environment 484:365–378.

Johnson, L. L., G. M. Ylitalo, M. R. Arkoosh, A. N. Kagley, C. Stafford, J. L. Bolton, J. Buzitis, B. F. Anulacion, and T. K. Collier. 2007. Contaminant exposure in outmigrant juvenile salmon from Pacific Northwest estuaries of the United States. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 127:167–194.

Kahler, T., M. Grassley, and D. Beauchamp. 2000. A summary of the effect of bulkheads, piers, and other artificial structures and shorezone development on ESA-listed salmonids in lakes. City of Bellevue, Bellevue, Washington.

Kelty, R. A., and S. Bliven. 2003. Environmental and aesthetic impacts of small docks and piers, workshop report: Developing a science-based decision support tool for small dock management, phase 1: Status of the science. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series 22. National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, Silver Spring, Maryland.

McIntyre, J. K., D. H. Baldwin, D. A. Beauchamp, and N. L. Scholz. 2012. Low-level copper exposures increase visibility and vulnerability of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout predators. Ecological Applications 22:1460–1471.

Meador, J. P., G. M. Ylitalo, F. C. Sommers, and D. T. Boyd. 2010. Bioaccumulation of polychlorinated biphenyls in juvenile Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) outmigrating through a contaminated urban estuary: Dynamics and application. Ecotoxicology 19:141–152.

Melwani, A. R., D. Gregorio, Y. Jin, M. Stephenson, G. Ichikawa, E. Siegel, D. Crane, G. Lauenstein, and J. A. Davis. 2014. Mussel watch update: Long-term trends in selected contaminants from coastal California, 1977–2010. Marine Pollution Bulletin 81:291–302.

Miller, H. C., W. A. Birekmeir, and A. E. DeWall. 1983. Effects of CERC research pier on nearshore processes. Pages 765–782 in Proceedings of the International Conference on Coastal Structures ‘83. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York.

Nightingale, B., and C. A. Simenstad. 2001. Overwater structures: Marine issues. Washington State Transportation Commission and U.S. Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Noble, R. M. 1978. Coastal structures’ effects on shorelines. Coastal Engineering Proceedings 1(16):125.

Penttila, D., and D. Doty. 1990. Results of 1989 eelgrass shading studies in Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fisheries, Olympia, Washington.

Popper, A. N., and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of anthropogenic sources of sound on fishes. Journal of Fish Biology 75:455–489.

Poston, T. 2001. Treated wood issues associated with overwater structures in marine and freshwater environments. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Ecology, and Washington Department of Transportation, Olympia, Washington.

Sethajintanin, D., E. R. Johnson, B. R. Loper, and K. A. Anderson. 2004. Bioaccumulation profiles of chemical contaminants in fish from the lower Willamette River, Portland Harbor, Oregon. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 46:114–123.

Shafer, D. J., and J. Lundin. 1999. Design and construction of docks to minimize seagrass impacts. WRP Technical Notes Collection, TN WRP-VN-RS-3.1. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Shafer, D. J., and J. Robinson. 2001. An evaluation of the use of grid platforms to minimize shading impacts to seagrasses. WRAP Technical Notes Collection, ERDC TN-WRAP-01-02. U.S. Army Engineer Research and Development Center, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

Sovová, T., D. Boyle, K. A. Sloman, C. Vanegas Perez, and R. D. Handy. 2014. Impaired behavioural response to alarm substance in rainbow trout exposed to copper nanoparticles. Aquatic Toxicology 152:195–204.

Spearow, J. L., R. S. Kota, and D. J. Ostrach. 2011. Environmental contaminant effects on juvenile striped bass in the San Francisco Estuary, California, USA. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 30:393–402.

Thom, R. M., D. K. Shreffler, and K. Macdonald. 1994. Shoreline armoring effects on coastal ecology and biological resources in Puget Sound, Washington. Report 94-80. Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington.

USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2000. Environmental screening checklist and workbook for water transportation industry. EPA-305-B-00-004. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2006. Overwater structures and non-structural piling white paper. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.

Wilber, D. H., and D. G. Clarke. 2001. Biological effects of suspended sediments: A review of suspended sediment impacts on fish and shellfish with relation to dredging activities in estuaries. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 21:855–875.

Williams, S. L. 1988. *Thalassia testudium* productivity and grazing by green turtles in a highly disturbed seagrass bed. Marine Biology 98:447–455.

19. Noise Pollution

Potential Adverse Impacts of Noise Pollution

Noise pollution can have several negative impacts on EFH. The following factors associated with noise pollution can impact organisms inhabiting EFH and are described briefly below: physiological impacts to fish, auditory impacts to fish, and behavioral impacts to fish. Suggested conservation measures related to each of these factors are provided in the following section.

Physiological impacts to fish

Vessel activity, sonar, seismic surveys, and industrial activity cause noise pollution that can negatively impact organisms inhabiting EFH (Linton et al. 1985, Stocker 2002, Hastings and Popper 2005, Jasny et al. 2005, Wysocki et al. 2006). Impacts to fish depend on frequency and magnitude of noises (Hildebrand 2005, Popper and Hastings 2009, Halvorsen et al. 2011, Halvorsen et al. 2012), which can vary widely among and within activities (Feist et al. 1996) and among different environments (Rogers and Cox 1988). Smaller fish species can be more sensitive to underwater noise than larger ones (Yelverton et al. 1975), but all life stages, from embryos, larvae, and fry (Booman et al. 1996) to adult stages, can be negatively impacted by noise (Bendell 2011). Similar to fish, noise pollution can also impact marine invertebrates physically (Andre et al. 2011) and behaviorally (WDFW 2006, Wale et al. 2013).

Auditory impacts to fish

Noise pollution can damage auditory tissue leading to hearing impairment and loss (Heathershaw et al. 2001, Hastings and Popper 2005). Temporary hearing loss may result from exposure to low levels of sound for a relatively long period of time, or exposure to high levels of sound for shorter periods (Scholik and Yan 2002, Liu et al. 2013). Temporary hearing loss can affect auditory-dependent life functions, such as locating food, mates, or predators, and fish exposed to noise may not regain hearing even after termination of the noise exposure (Scholik and Yan 2002, McCauley et al. 2003, Wang et al. 2020).

Behavioral impacts to fish

Behavior of fish can be impacted by noise pollution; however, impacts vary among species (Popper 2011, Popper and Fay 2011) and by source and intensity of sound (Hastings and Popper 2005). Noise can interfere with feeding (Wale et al. 2013, Voellmy et al. 2014), communication (Wahlberg and Westerberg 2005, Codarin et al. 2009, Slabbekoorn et al. 2010), and reproduction (Popper 2011). Audible communication in fish is used during territorial disputes (Sebastianutto et al. 2011) and competition for food (Voellmy et al. 2014), and in warning others of predators (Slabbekoorn et al. 2010). Anthropogenic sounds that falsely trigger these responses can induce expenditures of energy that is then unavailable for other processes, such as growth and reproduction (Stocker 2002). Schools of fish have been shown to disperse when noise sources approach (e.g., fishing boats; De Robertis and Handegard 2013). Noise can also hinder territorial dominance (Sebastianutto et al. 2011), reduce foraging, and increase inactivity and social behavior, indicating stress- or fear-related defense (Voellmy et al. 2014). Noise can also affect behaviors that influence distribution of fish (Skalski et al. 1992, Engås et al. 1996, Engås and Løkkeborg 2002, Slotte et al. 2004, Hastings and Popper 2005).

Potential Conservation Measures for Noise Pollution

The following measures can be undertaken by the action agency to avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of noise pollution on EFH. Not all of these suggested measures are necessarily applicable to any one project or activity that may adversely affect EFH. More specific or different measures based on the best and most current scientific information may be developed prior to, or during, the EFH consultation process, and then communicated to the appropriate agency. The options represent a short menu of actions that could help land managers avoid, minimize, and mitigate impacts of noise pollution on EFH.

General guidelines

- Develop minimization strategies for noise impacts that consider the frequency, intensity, and duration of exposure, and evaluate possible reductions of each of these three factors.
- Assess the "acoustic footprint" of a given sound source and develop standoff ranges (i.e., safe distances) for various impact levels.
    - Standoff ranges can be calculated by using damage risk criteria for species exposure, source levels, sound propagation conditions, and acoustic attenuation models. Development of a standoff range implies that sound sources will be relocated or reduced, since the fish are more difficult to control. Because the potential number of species affected and their location is most likely unknown, development of a generic approach for mitigation by using the species with the most sensitive hearing would produce a precautionary approach to reducing impacts on all animals (Heathershaw et al. 2001).
- Recommend an assessment and designation of "acoustic hotspots" that are particularly susceptible to acoustic impacts, and reduce sound sources around them. These hotspots may include seasonal areas for particularly susceptible life-history activities like spawning or breeding (Jasny et al. 2005).
- Recognize that reducing noise intensity at the source primarily relies on technological solutions, and use "quiet" technology in marine engines.
- Encourage the use of sound-dampening technologies for vessels and port/marine infrastructure to reduce ocean noise impacts to aquatic organisms.

Explosives

- Evaluate the need to use explosives and use practical alternatives, if available.
- Bubble curtains, created by injecting compressed air into the water column, were highly effective at reducing the mortality of caged bluegills (*Lepomis macrochirus*) during detonation of a 2-kg high-explosive charge. The bubble curtain reduced peak pressure, impulse, and energy flux density by 88–99%.
- Surround the explosion with a bubble curtain or other sound attenuation device to minimize the extent of the habitat area where sensitive, priority, or endangered species could be injured.
- As they do for explosions, bubble curtains ameliorate adverse effects of pile driving (Wursig et al. 2000).
- Rather than a single large charge, use a series of smaller charges that are separated by delays that are longer than the duration of the blast wave. Using blasting caps with timing delays reduces each detonation to a series of small explosions (Keevin 1998). The

effectiveness of delays and defining a delay period that provides maximum protection requires further examination.
- Plan the blasting program to minimize the size of explosive charges per delay and the number of days that explosives are used.
- Avoid using underwater explosives in areas supporting productive fishery habitats. Encourage the use of less destructive methods whenever possible. In some cases, the use of mechanical devices (e.g., ram hoe, clamshell dredge) may reduce impacts associated with rock and ledge removal.

Surveys

- Avoid areas and times of year when sensitive priority and endangered species, such as smaller juveniles or spawning adults, are present. If surveys must be conducted in the presence of these species and life stages, do so when abundances are relatively low.
- Use marine vibroseis instead of airguns, when possible.
- Use the least-powerful airguns that will meet the needs of the survey.
- Survey the smallest area possible to meet the needs of the survey.
- Avoid times of year when sensitive, priority, and endangered species are present. If it is not practical to conduct the activity when species are absent, avoid doing so when the smallest, and therefore most vulnerable, life stages are present.
- Do not conduct the activity where it could affect spawning adult species.

Pile driving

- When possible, avoid driving piles when fish are present, especially the younger salmon life stages and spawning adults.
- Where tidal currents can be strong, drive the piles when the current is reduced (i.e., centered on slack current) to minimize the number of fish exposed to adverse levels of underwater sound. Strong currents can bring more fish into close proximity to the pile than weak currents.
- When driving piles in intertidal or shallow subtidal areas, do so during periods of low tide; sound does not propagate as well in shallow water as it does in deep water.
- Avoid driving piles with an impact hammer when fish are present. Alternatives include vibratory hammers or press-in pile drivers.
- In cases where an impact hammer must be used, drive the piles as far as possible with a vibratory hammer or other method that produces lower levels of sound before using an impact hammer.
- Select piles that are made of alternate materials that produce less-harmful sounds than those from hollow steel piles, such as concrete or untreated wood instead of steel.
- Implement measures to attenuate the sound. Such measures include the use of a bubble curtain, a dewatered pile sleeve, or a cofferdam. Monitor the sound levels during pile driving to ensure that the attenuation measures are functioning as expected.
- Monitor, and report back to NMFS, the sound levels during pile driving to verify that the assumptions in the analysis were correct and to ensure that any attenuation device is properly functioning. Develop monitoring and reporting protocols according to guidance provided by the Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group (Caltrans 2020). The report should be provided to NMFS according to the individual project requirements, but no later than 90 days after completion of the pile driving.
- Monitor sound levels and halt pile driving before cumulative SEL injury thresholds are reached. Resume pile driving after 12 hours.

References

Andre, M., M. Sole, M. Lenoir, M. Durfort, C. Quero, A. Mas, A. Lombarte, M. van der Schaar, M. Lopez-Bejar, M. Morell, S. Zaugg, and L. Houegnigan. 2011. Low-frequency sounds induce acoustic trauma in cephalopods. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment 9:489–493.

Bendell, A. 2011. Shafag Asiman offshore block 3D seismic exploration survey EIA. Azerbaijan Environment and Technology Center Quality Assurance Check Report, Reference #P140167. Azerbaijan Environment and Technology Centre Ltd., Cheshire, United Kingdom.

Booman, C., J. Dalen, H. Leivestad, A. Levsen, T. van der Meeren, and K. Toklum. 1996. Effects of seismic air-gun shooting on fish eggs, larvae and fry. Fisken og Havet 3. University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway.

Caltrans. 2020. Technical Guidance for the Assessment of Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish. Available: dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/environmental-analysis/documents/env/hydroacoustic-manual-a11y.pdf (November 2022).

Codarin, A., L. E. Wysocki, F. Ladich, and M. Picciulin. 2009. Effects of ambient and boat noise on hearing and communication in three fish species living in a marine protected area (Miramare, Italy). Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1880–1887.

De Robertis, A., and N. O. Handegard. 2013. Fish avoidance of research vessels and the efficacy of noise-reduced vessels: A review. ICES Journal of Marine Science 70:34–45.

Engås, A., and S. Løkkeborg. 2002. Effects of seismic shooting and vessel-generated noise on fish behaviour and catch rates. Bioacoustics 12:313–315.

Engås, A., S. Løkkeborg, E. Ona, and A. V. Soldal. 1996. Effects of seismic shooting on local abundance and catch rates of cod (*Gadus morhua*) and haddock (*Melanogrammus aeglefinus*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science 53:2238–2249.

Feist, B. E., J. J. Anderson, and R. Miyamoto. 1996. Potential impacts of pile driving on juvenile pink (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and chum (*O. keta*) salmon behavior and distribution. University of Washington, Seattle.

Halvorsen, M. B., B. M. Casper, C. M. Woodley, T. J. Carlson, and A. N. Popper. 2011. Predicting and mitigating hydroacoustic impacts on fish from pile installations. NCHRP Research Results Digest 363, Project 25-28. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Halvorsen, M. B., B. M. Casper, C. M. Woodley, T. J. Carlson, and A. N. Popper. 2012. Threshold for Onset of Injury in Chinook Salmon from Exposure to Impulsive Pile Driving Sounds. PLOS ONE 7:e38968. DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0038968

Hastings, M. C., and A. N. Popper. 2005. Effects of sound on fish. California Department of Transportation, Sacramento, California.

Heathershaw, A. D., P. D. Ward, and A. M. David. 2001. The environmental impact of underwater sound. Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics 23(4).

Hildebrand, J. 2005. Impacts of anthropogenic sound. Pages 101–124 *in* J. E. Reynolds, W. F. Perin, R. R. Reeves, S. Montgomery, and T. J. Ragen, editors. Marine Mammal Research: Conservation Beyond Crisis. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland. Available: www.mmc.gov/wp-content/uploads/hildebrand.pdf (September 2022).

Jasny, M., J. Reynolds, C. Horowitz, and A. Wetzler. 2005. Sounding the depths II: The rising toll of sonar, shipping and industrial ocean noise on marine life. Natural Resources Defense Council, Washington, D.C.

Keevin, T. M. 1998. A review of natural resource agency recommendations for mitigating the impacts of underwater blasting. Reviews in Fisheries Science 6:281–313.

Linton, T. L., A. M. Landry, Jr., J. E. Buckner, Jr., and R. L. Berry. 1985. Effects upon selected marine organisms of explosives used for sound production in geophysical exploration. The Texas Journal of Science 37:341–353.

Liu, M., Q. W. Wei, H. Du, Z. Y. Fu, and Q. C. Chen. 2013. Ship noise-induced temporary hearing threshold shift in the Chinese sucker *Myxocyprinus asiaticus* (Blekker, 1864). Journal of Applied Ichthyology 29:1416–1422.

McCauley, R. D., J. Fewtrell, and A. N. Popper. 2003. High intensity anthropogenic sound damages fish ears. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 113:638–642.

Popper, A. N. 2011. Auditory system morphology. Pages 252–261 *in* A. P. Farrell, editor. Encyclopedia of Fish Physiology: From Genome to Environment, Volume 1. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Popper, A. N., and M. C. Hastings. 2009. The effects of anthropogenic sources of sound on fishes. Journal of Fish Biology 75:455–489.

Popper, A. N., and R. R. Fay. 2011. Rethinking sound detection by fishes. Hearing Research 273:25–36.

Rogers, T. H., and M. Cox. 1988. Underwater sound as a biological stimulus. Pages 131–149 *in* J. Atema, R. R. Fay, A. N. Popper, and W. N. Tavolga, editors. Sensory biology of aquatic animals. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Scholik, A. R., and H. Y. Yan. 2002. The effects of noise on the auditory sensitivity of the bluegill sunfish, *Lepomis macrochirus*. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A 133:43–52.

Sebastianutto, L., M. Picciuliin, M. Costantini, and E. A. Ferrero. 2011. How boat noise affects an ecologically crucial behavior: The case of territoriality in *Gobius cruentatus* (Gobiidae). Environmental Biology of Fishes 92:207–215.

Skalski, J. R., W. H. Pearson, and C. I. Malme. 1992. Effects of sounds from a geophysical survey device on catch-per-unit-effort in a hook-and-line fishery for rockfish (*Sebastes* spp.). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49:1357–1365.

Slabbekoorn, H., H. Bouton, I. van Opzeeland, A. Coers, C. ten Cate, and A. N. Popper. 2010. A noisy spring: The impact of globally rising underwater sound levels on fish. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 25:419–427.

Slotte, A., K. Hansen, J. Dalen, and E. Ona. 2004. Acoustic mapping of pelagic fish distribution and abundance in relation to a seismic shooting area off the Norwegian west coast. Fisheries Research 67:143–150.

Stocker, M. 2002. Fish, mollusks and other sea animals' use of sound, and the impact of anthropogenic noise in the marine acoustic environment. Journal of Acoustical Society of America 112:24–31.

Voellmy, I. K., J. Purser, D. Flynn, P. Kennedy, S. D. Simpson, and A. N. Radford. 2014. Acoustic noise reduces foraging success in two sympatric fish species via different mechanisms. Animal Behaviour 89:191–198.

Wahlberg, M., and H. Westerberg. 2005. Hearing in fish and their reactions to sounds from offshore wind farms. Marine Ecology Progress Series 288:295–309.

Wale, M. A., S. D. Simpson, and A. N. Radford. 2013. Noise negatively affects foraging and antipredator behavior in shore crabs. Animal Behaviour 86:111–118.

Wang, Z.-T., T. Akamatsu, P.-X. Duan, L. Zhou, J. Yuan, J. Li, P.-Y. Lei, Y.-W. Chen, Y.-N. Yang, K.-X. Wang, and D. Wang. 2020. Underwater noise pollution in China's Yangtze River critically endangers Yangtze finless porpoises (*Neophocaena asiaeorientalis asiaeorientalis*). Environmental Pollution 262:114310.

WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2006. Overwater structures and non-structural piling. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Redmond, Washington.

Wursig, B., C. R. Greene, Jr., and T. A. Jefferson. 2000. Development of an air bubble curtain to reduce underwater noise of percussive piling. Marine Environmental Research 49:79–93.

Wysocki, L. E., J. P. Dittami, and F. Ladich. 2006. Ship noise and cortisol secretion in European freshwater fishes. Biological Conservation 128:501–508.

Yelverton, J. T., D. R. Richmond, W. Hicks, K. Saunders, and E. R. Fletcher. 1975. The relationship between fish size and their response to underwater blast. Report DNA 3677T. Defense Nuclear Agency, Washington, D.C.

U.S. Secretary of Commerce
Gina M. Raimondo

Under Secretary of Commerce for
Oceans and Atmosphere
Dr. Richard W. Spinrad

Assistant Administrator for Fisheries
Janet Coit

December 2022

fisheries.noaa.gov

OFFICIAL BUSINESS

National Marine
Fisheries Service
Northwest Fisheries Science Center
2725 Montlake Boulevard East
Seattle, Washington 98112